Biblical Treasury of the Catechism

BIBLIOTHECA
FF. PRÆDICATORUM
CONVENTUS
CIVIT. BENITIÆ
Lit. 216
Pl. 238

BIBLICAL TREASURY

OF THE

CATECHISM.

COMPILED AND ARRANGED

BY

REV. THOMAS E. COX.

Thy word is a lamp to my feet, and a light to my paths.—Ps. 118: 105.
The declaration of thy words giveth light: and giveth understanding to little ones.
Ps. 118: 130.

NEW YORK:
WILLIAM H. YOUNG & COMPANY,
27 BARCLAY STREET.
1900.

Nihil Obstat: J. L. Spalding
Episcopus

Imprimatur
P. A. Feehan
Abp. Chicago

COPYRIGHT, 1899,
BY
THOMAS E. COX.

Words of the Catechism,
COPYRIGHT, 1885, BY J. L. SPALDING.

All rights reserved.

ST. ALBERT'S COLLEGE LIBRARY

Commendatory Letter.

University of Notre Dame.

Notre Dame, Ind., November 6, 1899.

My Dear Father Cox:—

I have read very carefully the advanced sheets of the "Biblical Treasury of the Catechism," and I am sure that your work will be useful to the Catechist and the Priest. Too much importance can not be given to the Scriptural texts upon which are based the principles of our holy religion, and the sooner children are made familiar with the passages of Scripture that have a direct bearing on the questions they are studying, the more interested will they become in their Catechism lessons. There is need of such a work and its usefulness to priests and people can not be overestimated.

I hope your book will have a large circulation among those to whom is entrusted the important work of instilling into the minds of the young the true principles of Catholic teaching.

Sincerely yours,

A. Morrissey

Acc 1126

PREFACE.

This book is divided into thirty-seven lessons, four hundred twenty-one questions, numbered and ordered according to the lessons and questions of the Baltimore Catechism. It is an attempt to put in a comprehensive yet concise form the Scriptural proofs of Catholic doctrine, and is the result of much painstaking research.

Through the kind permission of the Bishop of Peoria, the text of the Catechism is introduced without abridgment. The questions and answers of the Catechism appear in bold-face type as headings. The passages of Sacred Scripture that confirm the doctrine of the Catechism, or in some way bear upon the question, are placed underneath and are printed in a pleasing "old style" type. For the references Arabic figures of "modern style," made prominent enough to arrest the attention, have been selected. The references are printed in the guise of fractions, and, if read as such, will be easily memorized.

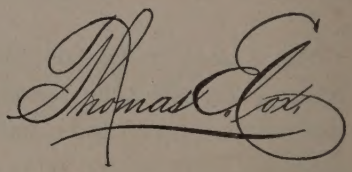
The Bible text used in this compilation is that of Potter's Approved Standard Douay Edition.

In itself this book is a thesis proving how ample is the Scriptural basis of Catholic belief.

The work is given to the public with the hope that it may be of very great value, not only to Catechumens and Converts and those outside of the fold who desire to see the Scriptural support

of the old Faith, but also to all students and teachers of Catholic doctrine—especially to Priests, Seminarians and Catechists, who have taken to heart the words of St. Paul: "Carefully study to present thyself approved unto God, a workman that needeth not to be ashamed, rightly handling the word of truth."

FEAST OF THE HOLY NAME,
JANUARY 14, 1900.



CONTENTS.

LESSON		PAGE
1.	MAN, HIS ORIGIN AND END	9
	THE APOSTLES' CREED	21
2.	GOD, HIS ESSENCE AND PERFECTIONS	36
3.	GOD. UNITY AND TRINITY. MYSTERY	45
4.	CREATION. ANGELS	53
5.	ADAM AND EVE. THE FALL AND CONSEQUENCES	59
6.	SIN AND ITS KINDS. CAPITAL SINS	66
7.	INCARNATION, REDEMPTION; NATURES OF CHRIST	78
8.	PASSION, DEATH, RESURRECTION AND ASCENSION	96
9.	HOLY GHOST; PROCESSION, DESCENT	109
10.	EFFECTS OF REDEMPTION. GRACE. FAITH, HOPE, ETC.	114
11.	THE CHURCH; HEAD, OBLIGATION TO ENTER	129
12.	ATTRIBUTES AND MARKS OF THE CHURCH	138
	OFFICE OF HOLY GHOST	165
13.	SACRAMENTS IN GENERAL	168
	SACRAMENTAL GRACE. CHARACTER	174
14.	BAPTISM. MINISTER. KINDS. SPONSORS. NAMES	178
15.	CONFIRMATION. MINISTER. MODE. CONDITIONS	187
16.	GIFTS AND FRUITS OF HOLY GHOST	192
	THE BEATITUDES	201
17.	PENANCE. CONDITIONS. EXAMINATION OF CONSCIENCE	218
18.	CONTRITION. PURPOSE OF AMENDMENT. OCCASION OF SIN	229
19.	CONFESSION, QUALITIES	238
	THE PENANCE	246
	SPIRITUAL AND CORPORAL WORKS	250
20.	MANNER OF MAKING CONFESSION	253
21.	INDULGENCES	256

CONTENTS.

LESSON		PAGE
22.	Holy Eucharist. Transubstantiation	259
23.	Ends of Institution of Eucharist	265
	Holy Communion	268
24.	Sacrifice of the Mass	274
25.	Extreme Unction. Remains of Sin	279
	Holy Orders	283
26.	Matrimony	289
27.	Sacramentals. Sign of Cross, Etc.	296
28.	Prayer	302
	Lord's Prayer. Hail Mary	308
	Confiteor. Acts	316
29.	Commandments of God	318
30.	First Commandment	323
	Fortune Telling, Etc	326
	Sins against Faith, Hope and Charity	328
31.	Honor and Invocation of Saints	336
32.	Second Commandment. Oath. Vow	346
	Third Commandment. Servile Works	352
33.	Fourth Commandment	357
	Fifth Commandment	363
	Sixth Commandment	366
34.	Seventh Commandment	369
	Eighth Commandment. Slander. Lying	374
	Ninth Commandment	378
	Tenth Commandment	380
35.	Commandments of the Church	384
	Hearing Mass. Holydays. Fast Days, Etc	385
36.	Yearly Confession	390
	Easter Communion	391
	Church Support	392
	Marriage. Nuptial Mass	394
37.	Judgment, Resurrection	396
	Hell	405
	Purgatory	407
	Heaven	413

Biblical Treasury of the Catechism.

Lesson First.

ON THE END OF MAN.

Q. 1.

Who made the world?
God made the world.

(See 2, 32, 33; 12, Art. 1.)

In the beginning God created heaven and earth. Gen. 1/1.

God . . . made the world, and all things therein. Acts 17/24.

He that created all things is God. Heb. 3/4.

The world was framed by the word of God. Heb. 11/3.

He that liveth for ever created all things together. Eccus. 18/1.

Of him, and by him, and in him, are all things. Rom. 11/36.

The world was made by him. John 1/10.

For he spoke, and they were made: he commanded, and they were created. Ps. 32/9.

All things that are under heaven are mine. Job 41/2.

For the sea is his, and he made it: and his hands formed the dry land. Ps. 94/5.

For he made the little and the great, and he hath equally care of all. Wis. 6/8.

How terrible are thy works, O Lord! Ps. 65/3.

Come and see the works of God. Ps. 65/5.

For I will behold thy heavens, the works of thy fingers: the moon and the stars which thou hast founded. Ps. 8/4.

The first author of beauty made all those things. Wis. 13/3.

Q. 2.

Who is God?

God is the Creator of heaven and earth, and of all things.

(See 1, 32, 33; 12, Art. 1.)

Thou hast made heaven and earth. Isai. 37/16.

I am the Lord, that make all things, that alone stretch out the heavens, that establish the earth. Isai. 44/24.

Blessed be the Lord, who made heaven and earth. Judith 13/24.

The living God, who made the heaven, and the earth, and the sea, and all things that are in them. Acts 14/14 & 17/24.

Seeing it is he who giveth to all life, and breath, and all things: and hath made of one all mankind, to dwell upon the whole face of the earth. Acts 17/25, 26.

All things were made by him: and without him was made nothing that was made. John 1/3.

Thou hast made the morning light and the sun. Thou hast made all the borders of the earth. Ps. 73/16, 17.

The heavens shew forth the glory of God, and the firmament declareth the work of his hands. Ps. 18/2.

Blessed be Abram by the most high God, who created heaven and earth. Gen. 14/19.

O Lord God of our fathers, thou art God in heaven, and rulest over all the kingdoms and nations; in thy hand is strength and power, and no one can resist thee. 2 Paral. 20/6.

The Lord your God he is God in heaven above, and in the earth beneath. Josue 2/11.

The fool hath said in his heart: There is no God. Ps. 13/1 & 52/1.

You shall seek me, and shall find me: when you shall seek me with all your heart. Jer. 29/13.

I am Alpha and Omega. Apoc. 1/8, Isai. 41/4 & 44/6 & 48/12; Apoc. 21/6 & 22/13.

I AM WHO AM. Exod. 3/14.

He that created all things is God. Heb. 3/4.

Q. 3.

What is man?

Man is a creature composed of body and soul, and made to the image and likeness of God.

(See 34, 39.)

Let us make man to our image and likeness. Gen. 1/26.

And God created man to his own image. Gen. 1/27.

Man was made to the image of God. Gen. 9/6.

And the Lord God formed man of the slime of the earth: and breathed into his face the breath of life, and man became a living soul. Gen. 2/7.

In the day that God created man, he made him to the likeness of God. Gen. 5/1.

God created man upon the earth. Deut. 4/32.

God created man of the earth, and made him after his own image. Eccus. 17/1.

The spirit of God made me, and the breath of the Almighty gave me life. Job 33/4.

I made the earth: and I created man upon it. Isai. 45/12.

All men are from the ground, and out of the earth, from whence Adam was created. Eccus. 33/10.

All men are earth and ashes. Eccus. 17/31.

Dust thou art, and into dust thou shalt return. Gen. 3/19; Job 10/9.

The dust return into its earth, . . . and the spirit return to God, who gave it. Eccles. 12/7.

For God created man incorruptible, and to the image of his own likeness he made him. Wis. 2/23.

Fear ye not them that kill the body, and are not able to kill the soul. Matt. 10/28.

The body without the spirit is dead. James 2/26.

And I was a witty child, and had received a good soul. Wis. 8/19.

And whereas I was more good, I came to a body undefiled. Wis. 8/20.

Know you not, that your members are the temple of the Holy Ghost, who is in you, whom you have from God, and you are not your own? 1 Cor. 6/19 & 3/16, 17; 2 Cor. 6/16.

Q. 4.

Is this likeness in the body or in the soul?
This likeness is chiefly in the soul.

(See 5.)

God is a spirit. John 4/24.
Let us make man to our image. Gen. 1/26.
Man became a living soul. Gen. 2/7.

Q. 5.

How is the soul like to God?
The soul is like God because it is a spirit that will never die, and has understanding and free will.

Man became a living soul. Gen. 2/7.

For God created man incorruptible. Wis. 2/23.

For this corruptible must put on incorruption; and this mortal must put on immortality. 1 Cor. 15/53. (See 12, Art. 12.)

For thou remainest for ever, and shall we perish everlastingly? Baruch 3/3.

Fear ye not them that kill the body, and are not able to kill the soul. Matt. 10/28.

He created in them the science of the spirit. Eccus. 17/6.

He filled them with the knowledge of understanding. Eccus. 17/5.

And putting on the new, him who is renewed unto knowledge, according to the image of him that created him. Col. 3/10.

Consider that I have set before thee this day, life and good; and, on the other hand, death and evil. . . . Choose, therefore, life. Deut. 30/15, 19.

God made man from the beginning, and left him in the hand of his own counsel. Eccus. 15/14.

Before man is life and death, good and evil; that which he shall choose shall be given him. Eccus. 15/18.

He that could have transgressed, and hath not transgressed: and could do evil things, and hath not done them. Eccus. 31/10.

Q. 6.

Why did God make you?

God made me to know Him, to love Him, and to serve Him in this world, and to be happy with Him for ever in the next.

(See 3, 420.)

I have created him for my glory. Isai. 43/7.

The Lord hath made all things for himself. Prov. 16/4.

That they might praise the name which he hath sanctified: and glory in his wondrous acts, that they might declare the glorious things of his works. Eccus. 17/8.

Let him that glorieth glory in this, that he understandeth and knoweth me. Jer. 9/24.

Fear the Lord, and give him honour, . . . and adore ye him, that made heaven and earth, the sea, and the fountains of waters. Apoc. 14/7.

Bless ye the God of heaven, give glory to him in the sight of all that live. Tob. 12/6.

Thou art worthy, O Lord our God, to receive glory, and honour, and power: because thou hast created all things, and for thy will they were, and have been created. Apoc. 4/11.

I count all things to be but loss for the excellent knowledge of Jesus Christ my Lord. Philip. 3/8.

Just Father, the world hath not known thee. John 17/25.

Why then do the wicked live? . . . Who have said to God: Depart from us, we desire not the knowledge of thy ways. Job 21/7, 14.

Give praise to our God, all ye his servants: and you that fear him, little and great. Apoc. 19/5.

Whom having not seen, you love: in whom also now, though you see him not, you believe: and believing, shall rejoice with joy unspeakable and glorified. 1 Pet. 1/8.

Hath not the Lord made the saints to declare all his wonderful works, which the Lord almighty hath firmly settled to be established for his glory? Eccus. 42/17.

For by the greatness of the beauty, and of the creature, the Creator of them may be seen, so as to be known thereby. Wis. 13/5.

But all men are vain, in whom there is not the knowledge of God: and who, by these good things that are seen, could not understand him that is, neither by attending to the works have acknowledged who was the workman. Wis. 13/1.

Because they have not understood the works of the Lord, and the operations of his hands; thou shalt destroy them, and shalt not build them up. Ps. 27/5.

Therefore whether you eat or drink, or whatsoever else you do: do all to the glory of God. 1 Cor. 10/31.

Give me understanding, and I will learn thy commandments. Ps. 118/73.

They should seek God, if happily they may feel after him or find him. Acts 17/27.

And the Lord God took man, and put him into the paradise of pleasure, to dress it, and to keep it. Gen. 2/15.

What doth the Lord thy God require of thee, but that thou fear the Lord thy God, and walk in his ways, and love him, and serve the Lord thy God? Deut. 10/12.

This is eternal life: that they may know thee, the only true God, and Jesus Christ, whom thou hast sent. John 17/3.

Q. 7.

Of which must we take more care, our soul or our body? We must take more care of our soul than of our body.

(See 412.)

What doth it profit a man, if he gain the whole world, and suffer the loss of his own soul? Matt. 16/26; Mark 8/36; Luke 9/25.

Be not afraid of them who kill the body, and after that have no more that they can do. Luke 12/4.

He that will save his life, shall lose it: and he that shall lose his life for my sake, shall find it. Matt. 16/25; Luke 17/33; John 12/25.

It is the spirit that quickeneth: the flesh profiteth nothing. John 6/64.

For the corruptible body is a load upon the soul, and the earthly habitation presseth down the mind that museth upon many things. Wis. 9/15.

O that they would be wise, and would understand, and would provide for their last end. Deut. 32/29.

Q. 8.

Why must we take more care of our soul than of our body?

We must take more care of our soul than of our body, because in losing our soul we lose God and everlasting happiness.

What exchange shall a man give for his soul? Matt. 16/26; Mark 8/37.

One thing is necessary. Luke 10/42.

Keep thyself, therefore, and thy soul carefully. Forget not the words that thy eyes have seen, and let them not go out of thy heart all the days of thy life. Deut. 4/9.

For if you live according to the flesh, you shall die. But if by the spirit you mortify the deeds of the flesh, you shall live. Rom. 8/13.

Wherefore, brethren, labour the more, that by good works, you may make sure your calling and election. 2 Pet. 1/10.

Q. 9.

What must we do to save our souls?

To save our souls we must worship God by faith, hope, and charity; that is, we must believe in Him, hope in Him, and love Him with all our heart.

(See 107-109, 320-330.)

One thing is necessary. Luke 10/42.

Seek ye God, and your soul shall live. Ps. 68/33.

Be holy because I am holy. Levit. 11/44; 1 Pet. 1/16.

Seek ye good, and not evil, that you may live. Amos 5/14.

I will shew thee, O man, what is good, and what the Lord requireth of thee: Verily, to do judgment, and to love mercy, and to walk solicitous with thy God. Micheas 6/8.

In all thy works remember thy last end, and thou shalt never sin. Eccus. 7/40.

He that walketh uprightly shall be saved. Prov. 28/18.

Thou shalt fear the Lord thy God, and shalt serve him only. Deut. 6/13; Matt. 4/10. (See 1 Kings 7/3. See 1st Commandment.)

These, then, are the things which you shall do: Speak ye truth every one to his neighbour: judge ye truth and judgment of peace in your gates. And let none of you imagine evil in your hearts against his friend, and love not a false oath: for all these are the things that I hate, saith the Lord. Zach. 8/16, 17.

Not every one that saith to me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven: but he that doth the will of my Father who is in heaven, he shall enter into the kingdom of heaven. Matt. 7/21.

All things, therefore, whatsoever you would that men should do to you, do you also to them. Matt. 7/12.

With fear and trembling work out your salvation. Philip. 2/12.

In your patience you shall possess your souls. Luke 21/19.

We should live soberly, and justly, and godly in this world. Titus 2/12.

For if you live according to the flesh, you shall die. But if by the spirit you mortify the deeds of the flesh, you shall live. Rom. 8/13.

I beseech you, therefore, brethren, by the mercy of God, that you present your bodies a living sacrifice, holy, pleasing unto God, your reasonable service. And be not conformed to this world. Rom. 12/1, 2.

Strive to enter by the narrow gate: for many, I say to you, shall seek to enter, and shall not be able. Luke 13/24; Matt. 7/13.

Good Master, what shall I do that I may receive life everlasting? . . . Thou knowest the commandments. Mark 10/17, 19; Luke 18/18, 20.

If thou wilt enter into life, keep the commandments. Matt. 19/17; Deut. 10/13; Ezech. 18/5, 9, *et passim*.

Unless your justice abound more than that of the Scribes and Pharisees, you shall not enter into the kingdom of heaven. Matt. 5/20.

Be converted to me, and you shall be saved. Isai. 45/22.

Turn to the Lord, and forsake thy sins: make thy prayer before the face of the Lord, and offend less. Eccus. 17/21, 22.

Do penance, and be baptized, every one of you. Acts 2/38.

Unless a man be born again of water and the Holy Ghost, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God. John 3/5.

Wash yourselves, be clean, take away the evil of your devices from my eyes: cease to do perversely, learn to do well: seek judgment, relieve the oppressed, judge for the fatherless, defend the widow. Isai. 1/16, 17.

He that cometh to God, must believe that he is, and is a rewarder to them that seek him. Heb. 11/6.

Without faith it is impossible to please God. Heb. 11/6.

Believe in the Lord Jesus and thou shalt be saved, and thy house. Acts 16/31.

Believe in the Lord your God, and you shall be secure: believe his prophets and all things shall succeed well. 2 Paral. 20/20.

He that believeth, and is baptized, shall be saved: but he that believeth not, shall be condemned. Mark 16/16.

If thou wilt be perfect, go sell what thou hast, and give to the poor, and thou shalt have treasure in heaven: and come, follow me. Matt. 19/21.

Follow the Lord your God, and fear him, and keep his commandments, and hear his voice: him you shall serve, and to him you shall cleave. Deut. 13/4.

Follow peace with all men, and holiness; without which no man shall see God. Heb. 12/14; Rom. 12/18.

Be ye doers of the word, and not hearers only, deceiving your ownselves. James 1/22.

For not the hearers of the law are just before God: but the doers of the law shall be justified. Rom. 2/13.

Do you see that by works a man is justified; and not by faith only? James 2/24.

Go not on the way with a bold man, lest he burden thee with his evils: for he goeth according to his own will, and thou shalt perish together with his folly. Eccus. 8/18.

How long do you halt between two sides? if the Lord be God, follow him. 3 Kings 18/21.

Arise, then, and be doing, and the Lord will be with thee. 1 Paral. 22/16.

God is not a respecter of persons. But in every nation, he that feareth him, and worketh justice, is acceptable to him. Acts 10/34, 35.

And the Lord said to Moses: Why criest thou to me? Speak to the children of Israel to go forward. Exod. 14/15.

Did you not know, that I must be about my Father's business? Luke 2/49.

Act like a man, and take courage, and do: fear not, and be not dismayed. 1 Paral. 28/20.

He that believeth in the Son, hath life everlasting. John 3/36 & 6/47; 1 John 5/10.

If thou confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and believe in thy heart that God hath raised him up from the dead, thou shalt be saved. Rom. 10/9.

By grace you are saved through faith, and that not of yourselves, for it is the gift of God; not of works, that no man may glory. Ephes. 2/8, 9.

Whosoever shall call upon the name of the Lord, shall be saved. Rom. 10/13; Joel 2/32; Acts 2/21.

Give to the Lord glory to his name, bring up sacrifice, and come ye in his sight: and adore the Lord in holy beauty. 1 Paral. 16/29.

Do nothing more than that which is appointed you. Luke 3/13.

Seek ye, therefore, first the kingdom of God, and his justice. Matt. 6/33; Luke 12/31.

He that shall persevere unto the end, he shall be saved. Matt. 10/22 & 24/13. (See Apoc. 2/10.)

Q. 10.

How shall we know the things which we are to believe?

We shall know the things which we are to believe from the Catholic Church, through which God speaks to us.

(See 12, 120.)

He left not himself without testimony. Acts 14/16.

Who shew the work of the law written in their hearts, their conscience bearing witness to them. Rom. 2/15.

He set up a testimony in Jacob: and made a law in Israel. How great things he commanded our fathers, that they should make the same known to their children. Ps. 77/5.

The Paraclete . . . shall give testimony of me: and you shall give testimony, because you are with me from the beginning. John 15/26, 27.

I will give my law in their bowels, and I will write it in their heart. Jer. 31/33; Heb. 10/16.

Thy word is a lamp to my feet, and a light to my paths. Ps. 118/105.

We have heard, O God, with our ears; our fathers have declared to us. Ps. 43/2.

Thou hast hid these things from the wise and prudent, and hast revealed them to little ones. Matt. 11/25.

If any man will do the will of him: he shall know of the doctrine, whether it be of God or whether I speak of myself. John 7/17.

Birds resort unto their like: so truth will return to them that practise her. Eccus. 27/10.

The soul of a holy man discovereth sometimes true things, more than seven watchmen that sit in a high place to watch. Eccus. 37/18.

The sensual man perceiveth not these things that are of the spirit of God. 1 Cor. 2/14.

The fool hath said in his heart: There is no God. Ps. 13/1 & 52/1.

The heavens shew forth the glory of God, and the firmament declareth the work of his hands. Ps. 18/2.

For the invisible things of him, from the creation of the world, are clearly seen, being understood by the things that are made: his eternal power also, and divinity, so that they are inexcusable. Rom. 1/20; Wis. 13/1-5.

No man hath seen God at any time: the only-begotten Son who is in the bosom of the Father, he hath declared him. John 1/18; 1 Tim. 6/16.

God, who at sundry times and in divers manners spoke, in times past, to the fathers by the prophets, last of all, in these days hath spoken to us by his Son. Heb. 1/1, 2.

We see now through a glass in a dark manner. 1 Cor. 13/12.

For we know in part, and we prophesy in part. 1 Cor. 13/9.

And hardly do we guess aright at things that are upon earth: and with labour do we find the things that are before us. But the things that are in heaven, who shall search out? And who shall know thy thought, except thou give wisdom, and send thy Holy Spirit from above . . . ? Wis. 9/16, 17.

Ask now the beasts, and they shall teach thee: and the birds of the air, and they shall tell thee. Speak to the earth, and it shall answer thee: and the fishes of the sea shall tell. Who is ignorant that the hand of the Lord hath made all these things? Job 12/7-9.

Son of man, stand upon thy feet, and I will speak to thee. Ezech. 2/1.

Peradventure thou wilt comprehend the steps of God, and wilt find out the Almighty perfectly? Job 11/7.

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in the clothing of sheep. Matt. 7/15.

Remember the days of old, think upon every generation: ask thy father, and he will declare to thee: thy elders, and they will tell thee. Deut. 32/7; Job 8/8.

Thus saith the Lord: Stand ye on the ways, and see, and ask for the old paths, which is the good way, and walk ye in it. Jer. 6/16.

He that knoweth God, heareth us. 1 John 4/6.

He that heareth you, heareth me. Luke 10/16.

If he will not hear the church, let him be to thee as the heathen and publican. Matt. 18/17.

They have Moses and the prophets; let them hear them. Luke 16/29.

Know also this, that, in the last days, shall come on dangerous times: Men shall be lovers of themselves . . . having an appearance indeed of godliness, but denying the power thereof, . . . ever learning, and never attaining to the knowledge of the truth. 2 Tim. 3/1-7.

Come, let us go up to the mountain of the Lord, and to the house of the God of Jacob: and he will teach us his ways, and we will walk in his paths. Micheas 4/2.

But above all these things, pray to the Most High, that he may direct thy way in truth. Eccus. 37/19.

Q. 11.

Where shall we find the chief truths which the Church teaches?

We shall find the chief truths which the Church teaches in the Apostles' Creed.

(See 12.)

According as they have delivered them unto us, who from the beginning were eye-witnesses and ministers of the word. Luke 1/2.

You shall give testimony (of me), because you are with me from the beginning. John 15/27.

Go ye into the whole world, and preach the gospel to every creature. He that believeth . . . shall be saved. Mark 16/15, 16.

Going therefore, teach ye all nations. Matt. 28/19.

Q. 12.

Say the Apostles' Creed.

Art. 1. **I believe in God, the Father Almighty, Creator of heaven and earth.**

(See 1, 2, 19, 21, 32, 33.)

He that cometh to God, must believe that he is. Heb. 11/6.

Thou believest that there is one God. Thou dost well. James 2/19.

You believe in God, believe also in me. John 14/1.

With the heart we believe unto justice; but with the mouth confession is made unto salvation. Rom. 10/10.

And the apostles said to the Lord: Increase our faith. Luke 17/5.

One God and Father. Ephes. 4/6.

The fool hath said in his heart: There is no God. Ps. 13/1 & 52/1.

I bow my knees to the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, of whom all paternity in heaven and earth is named. Ephes. 3/14, 15.

And our fellowship may be with the Father, and with his Son Jesus Christ. 1 John 1/3.

Have we not all one father? hath not one God created us? Mal. 2/10.

Is not he thy father, that hath possessed thee, and made thee, and created thee? Deut. 32/6. (See 2 Cor. 6/18.)

. . . . . .

I am the Almighty God. Gen. 17/1.

God said to him: I am the most mighty God of thy father. Gen. 46/3.

O, Adonai, Lord, great art thou, and glorious in thy power, and no one can overcome thee. Judith 16/16.

O Lord, Lord, almighty king, for all things are in thy power, and there is none that can resist thy will. Esther 13/9.

Who is God but the Lord: and who is strong but our God? 2 Kings 22/32.

Almighty is his name. Exod. 15/3. (See 15/11.)

And the Lord spoke to Moses, saying: I am the Lord, that appeared to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob, by the name of God Almighty. Exod. 6/2, 3.

Lord God, thou hast begun to shew unto thy servant thy greatness, and most mighty hand; for there is no other God either in heaven or earth, that is able to do thy works, or to be compared to thy strength. Deut. 3/24.

Power belongeth to God. Ps. 61/12.

No word shall be hard to thee. Jer. 32/17.

There is no one that can resist thy voice. Judith 16/17.

Holy, Holy, Holy, Lord God Almighty, who was, and who is, and who is to come. Apoc. 4/8.

I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end, saith the Lord God, who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty. Apoc. 1/8.

No word shall be impossible with God. Luke 1/37.

. . . . . .

In the beginning God created heaven and earth. Gen. 1/1.

God, who created all things. Ephes. 3/9.

By the word of the Lord the heavens were established. Ps. 32/6.

All things were made by him: and without him was made nothing that was made. John 1/3.

O Lord God, behold, thou hast made heaven and earth by thy great power. Jer. 32/17.

Thus saith the Lord that created the heavens, God himself that formed the earth, and made it, the very maker thereof: he did not create it in vain: he formed it to be inhabited. Isai. 45/18.

Art. 2. **And in Jesus Christ, His only Son, our Lord.**

(See 25, 62.)

You believe in God, believe also in me. John 14/1.

Is not he the Christ? John 4/29.

Yea, Lord, I have believed that thou art Christ, the Son of the living God, who art come into this world. John 11/27.

And thou shalt call his name Jesus. Luke 1/31.

In the name of Jesus every knee should bow. Philip. 2/10. (See Isai. 45/24; Rom. 14/11.)

Who shall declare his generation? Isai. 53/8.

In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God. John 1/1.

He shall be great, and shall be called the Son of the most High. Luke 1/32.

I believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God. Acts 8/37.

Thou art my Son, this day have I begotten thee. Ps. 2/7; Heb. 5/5.

Indeed this was the Son of God. Matt. 27/54.

Whosoever shall confess that Jesus is the Son of God, God abideth in him, and he in God. 1 John 4/15.

And immediately he preached Jesus in the synagogues, that he is the Son of God. Acts 9/20.

All things are delivered to me by my Father, and no one knoweth who the Son is but the Father; and who the Father is but the Son, and to whom the Son will reveal him. Luke 10/22.

You are called unto the fellowship of his Son Jesus Christ our Lord. 1 Cor. 1/9.

Art. 3. **Who was conceived by the Holy Ghost, born of the Virgin Mary.**

(See 64.)

For a CHILD IS BORN to us, and a son is given to us, . . . and his name shall be called . . . God the Mighty, . . . the Prince of Peace. Isai. 9/6.

Behold, a virgin shall conceive, and bear a son, and his name shall be called Emmanuel. Isai. 7/14; Matt. 1/32.

Behold, thou shalt conceive in thy womb, and shalt bring forth a son; and thou shalt call his name Jesus. Luke 1/31.

The Holy Ghost shall come upon thee, and the power of the most High shall overshadow thee. And therefore also the Holy which shall be born of thee, shall be called the Son of God. Luke 1/35.

That which is conceived in her, is of the Holy Ghost. Matt. 1/20.

And the virgin's name was Mary. Luke 1/27.

Mary, of whom was born JESUS, who is called CHRIST. Matt. 1/16.

And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us. John 1/14.

Art. 4. **Suffered under Pontius Pilate, was crucified; died, and was buried.**

(See 78, 83.)

It is written of the Son of Man, that he must suffer many things, and be despised. Mark 9/11. (See Isai. 53/3, 4.)

And they brought him bound, and delivered him to Pontius Pilate, the governor. Matt. 27/2.

His Son Jesus, whom you indeed delivered up, and denied before the face of Pilate. Acts 3/13.

In the morning, the chief priests, holding a consultation with the ancients, and the Scribes, and the whole council, binding Jesus, led him away, and delivered him to Pilate. Mark 15/1.

And the whole multitude of them rising up, led him to Pilate. Luke 23/1 & 23/11.

And Pilate gave sentence that it should be as they required. Luke 23/24.

Pilate took Jesus, and scourged him. John 19/1.

He delivered him to them for to be crucified. John 19/16; Luke 23/25.

And so Pilate, being willing to satisfy the people,

released to them Barabbas, and delivered up Jesus, when he had scourged him, to be crucified. Mark 15/15.

Then he released to them Barabbas; and having scourged Jesus, delivered him unto them to be crucified. Matt. 27/26.

They crucified him. John 19/18; Matt. 27/35.

And when they were come to the place which is called Calvary, they crucified him there. Luke 23/33.

And crucifying him, they divided his garments. Mark 15/24.

And Jesus, having cried out, with a loud voice, gave up the Ghost. Mark 15/37; Matt. 27/50; Luke 23/46.

But after they were come to Jesus, when they saw that he was already dead, they did not break his legs. John 19/33.

We preach Christ crucified. 1 Cor. 1/23.

Christ also died once for our sins, the just for the unjust. 1 Pet. 3/18.

And when they had fulfilled all things that were written of him, taking him down from the tree, they laid him in a sepulchre. Acts 13/29.

That Christ died for our sins, according to the scriptures; and that he was buried. 1 Cor. 15/3, 4.

And Joseph, buying fine linen, and taking him down, wrapped him up in the fine linen, and laid him in a sepulchre. Mark 15/46; John 19/38-42.

This man went to Pilate, and begged the body of Jesus . . and laid him in a sepulchre. Luke 23/52, 53.

And Joseph, taking the body, wrapt it up in a clean linen cloth. And laid it in his own new monument. Matt. 27/59, 60.

And they departing, made the sepulchre sure, sealing the stone, and setting guards. Matt. 27/66.

Art. 5. **He descended into hell: the third day He arose again from the dead.**

(See 85, 87, 89.)

He . . . descended first into the lower parts of the earth. Ephes. 4/9.

This day thou shalt be with me in paradise. Luke 23/43.

He preached to those spirits that were in prison. 1 Pet. 3/19.

Because thou wilt not leave my soul in hell, nor wilt thou give thy holy one to see corruption. Ps. 15/10; Acts 2/27 & 13/35.

He spoke of the resurrection of Christ. For neither was he left in hell, neither did his flesh see corruption. Acts 2/31.

Whom God hath raised up, having loosed the sorrows of hell. Acts 2/24.

The third day he shall rise again. Matt. 20/19.

He rose again the third day, according to the scriptures. 1 Cor. 15/4.

He is not here, for he is risen, as he said. Matt. 28/6.

When it began to dawn towards the first day of the week, came Mary Magdalene, and the other Mary, to see the sepulchre. Matt. 28/1.

But God raised him up from the dead the third day. Acts 13/30 & 10/40.

Very early in the morning, the first day of the week, they come to the sepulchre, the sun being now risen. . . . Be not affrighted; you seek Jesus of Nazareth, who was crucified: he is risen, he is not here. Mark 16/2, 6.

He rising early, the first day of the week. Mark 16/9.

On the first day of the week. John 20/1; Luke 24/1.

Destroy this temple, and in three days I will raise it up. John 2/19.

But he spoke of the temple of his body. John 2/21.

When, therefore, he was risen again from the dead, his disciples remembered that he had said this. John 2/22.

But now Christ is risen from the dead. 1 Cor. 15/20.

If Christ be not risen again, then is our preaching vain, and your faith is also vain. 1 Cor. 15/14 & 15/17.

The Lord is risen indeed, and hath appeared to Simon. Luke 24/34.

If you be risen with Christ, seek the things that are above. Col. 3/1.

I know that my Redeemer liveth. Job 19/25.

This Jesus hath God raised again, whereof all we are witnesses. Acts 2/32. (See Acts 4/33 & 5/30.)

And turning thou hast brought me to life, and hast brought me back again from the depths of the earth. Ps. 70/20.

Who was delivered up for our sins, and rose again for our justification. Rom. 4/25; 1 Cor. 15/3, 4.

I lay down my life, that I may take it again. John 10/17.

It behoved Christ to suffer, and to rise again from the dead the third day. Luke 24/46.

As Christ is risen from the dead by the glory of the Father, so we also may walk in newness of life. Rom. 6/4.

Art. 6. **He ascended into heaven, and sitteth at the right hand of God, the Father Almighty.**

(See 91-93.)

And when he had said these things, while they looked on, he was raised up. Acts 1/9. (See 4 Kings 2/1.)

God is ascended with jubilee, and the Lord with the sound of trumpet. Ps. 46/6.

He wrought in Christ, raising him up from the dead, and setting him on his right hand in the heavenly places. Ephes. 1/20.

Thou hast ascended on high, thou hast led captivity captive; thou hast received gifts in men. Ps. 67/19; Ephes. 4/8.

It is expedient to you that I go. John 16/7.

And the Lord Jesus, after he had spoken to them, was taken up into heaven, and sitteth on the right hand of God. Mark 16/19.

And it came to pass, whilst he blessed them, he departed from them, and was carried up to heaven. Luke 24/51.

And no man hath ascended into heaven, but he that descended from heaven, the Son of Man who is in heaven. John 3/13.

The Lord said to my Lord: Sit thou at my right hand. Ps. 109/1; Matt. 22/44; Acts 2/34; Heb. 1/13 & 10/12.

Behold, I see the heavens opened, and the Son of Man standing on the right hand of God. Acts 7/55.

Who . . . sitteth on the right hand of the majesty on high. Heb. 1/3.

He that descended is the same also that ascended above all the heavens, that he might fill all things. Ephes. 4/10.

Seek the things that are above; where Christ is sitting at the right hand of God. Col. 3/1.

Art. 7. **From thence He shall come to judge the living and the dead.**

(See 408-410.)

This Jesus, who is taken up from you into heaven, shall so come as you have seen him going into heaven. Acts 1/11.

For the Lord himself shall come down from heaven with commandment, . . . and the dead who are in Christ, shall rise first. 1 Thess. 4/15.

I will come again, and will take you to myself. John 14/3.

When the Son of Man shall come in his majesty, . . . all nations shall be gathered together before him, and he shall separate them one from another, as the shepherd separateth the sheep from the goats. Matt. 25/31, 32.

The Lord will judge his people. Deut. 32/36; Heb. 10/30. (See Rom. 12/19.)

Jesus Christ, who shall judge the living and the dead, by his coming, and his kingdom. 2 Tim. 4/1.

We must all be manifested before the judgment-seat of Christ. 2 Cor. 5/10; Rom. 14/10.

The Lord shall judge the ends of the earth. 1 Kings 2/10. (See Isai. 2/12-19.)

Behold, the day of the Lord shall come, a cruel day, and full of indignation, and of wrath. Isai. 13/9. (See Ezech. 7/8; Prov. 11/4; Jer. 30/23; Joel 2, *passim.*)

Wonder not at this, for the hour cometh wherein all that are in the graves shall hear the voice of the Son of God. John 5/28.

And he hath given him power to do judgment, because he is the Son of Man. John 5/27.

The Father . . . hath given all judgment to the Son. John 5/22.

And he commanded us to preach to the people, and to testify that it is he who was appointed by God to be judge of the living and of the dead. Acts 10/42.

Art. 8. **I believe in the Holy Ghost.**

(See 26, 94-101, 135, 166.)

There are three that give testimony in heaven: the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost. And these three are one. 1 John 5/7. (See Dub. Rev., Apr., 1882.)

The spirit of wisdom, and of understanding, the spirit of counsel, and of fortitude, the spirit of knowledge, and of godliness, and . . . the spirit of the fear of the Lord. Isai. 11/2, 3.

Ananias, why hath satan tempted thy heart, that thou shouldst lie to the Holy Ghost . . . ? . . . Thou hast not lied to men, but to God. Acts 5/3, 4.

And there appeared to them parted tongues as it were of fire, and it sat upon every one of them: and they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and they began to speak. Acts 2/3, 4.

The Holy Ghost shall teach you . . . what you must say. Luke 12/12.

The Paraclete, the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name, he will teach you all things, and bring all things to your mind whatsoever I shall have said to you. John 14/26.

But when the Paraclete cometh, whom I will send you from the Father, the Spirit of truth, who proceedeth from the Father, he shall give testimony of me. John 15/26.

Have you received the Holy Ghost since ye believed? But they said to him: We have not so much as heard whether there be a Holy Ghost. Acts 19/2.

And when Paul had imposed his hands on them, the Holy Ghost came upon them. Acts 19/6.

Your members are the temple of the Holy Ghost, who is in you. 1 Cor. 6/19.

You shall be baptized with the Holy Ghost. Acts 1/5.

The Holy Ghost being sent down from heaven, on whom the angels desire to look. 1 Pet. 1/12.

The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ, and the charity of God, and the communication of the Holy Ghost, be with you all. 2 Cor. 13/13.

In the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost. Matt. 28/19.

Art. 9. **The Holy Catholic Church, the communion of Saints.**

(See 115, 337-339.)

The church of the living God, the pillar and ground of the truth. 1 Tim. 3/15.

Christ also loved the church, and delivered himself up for it: that he might sanctify it, cleansing it by the laver of water in the word of life; that he might present it to himself a glorious church, not having spot, or wrinkle, or any such thing, but that it should be holy and without blemish. Ephes. 5/25-27.

Thou art Peter; and upon this rock I will build my church. Matt. 16/18.

Built upon the foundation of the apostles. Ephes. 2/20.

There shall be one fold, and one shepherd. John 10/16.

The Holy Ghost hath placed you bishops, to rule the church of God, which he hath purchased with his own blood. Acts 20/28.

If he will not hear them, tell the church. Matt. 18/17.

Thou . . hast redeemed us to God, in thy blood, out of every tribe, and tongue, and people, and nation; and hast made us to our God a kingdom. Apoc. 5/9, 10.

. . . . . .

That you also may have fellowship with us, and our fellowship may be with the Father, and with his Son Jesus Christ. 1 John 1/3.

Giving thanks to God the Father, who hath made us worthy to be partakers of the lot of the saints in light. Col. 1/12.

Our Father . . . *our* daily bread. Matt. 6/9; Luke 11/3.

God, who is glorified in the assembly of the saints. Ps. 88/8.

The heavens shall confess thy wonders, O Lord: and thy truth in the church of the saints. Ps. 88/6.

I am a partaker with all them that fear thee, and that keep thy commandments. Ps. 118/63.

Art. 10. **The forgiveness of sins.**

(See 191.)

That penance and remission of sins should be preached in his name unto all nations. Luke 24/47.

Whose sins you shall forgive, they are forgiven them. John 20/23; Matt. 18/18.

And you, when you were dead in your sins, and the uncircumcision of your flesh; he hath quickened together with him; forgiving you all offences: blotting out the handwriting of the decree that was against us. Col. 2/13, 14.

Blessed is thy name, O God of our fathers: who, when thou hast been angry, wilt shew mercy, and in the time of tribulation forgivest the sins of them that call upon thee . . . For thou art not delighted in our being lost. Tob. 3/13, 22.

Amen I say to you, that all sins shall be forgiven unto the sons of men, and the blasphemies wherewith they shall blaspheme. Mark 3/28; Matt. 12/31; Luke 12/10; 1 John 5/16.

And the priest shall pray for him, and for his sin, before the Lord, and he shall have mercy on him, and the sin shall be forgiven. Levit. 19/22.

And my people, . . . being converted, shall make supplication to me, and seek out my face, and do penance for their most wicked ways: then will I hear from heaven, and will forgive their sins. 2 Paral. 7/14.

Thou hast sealed up my offences. Job 14/17.

Forgive me all my sins. Ps. 24/18.

Thou wilt pardon our transgressions. Ps. 64/4.

He is merciful, and will forgive their sins. Ps. 77/38.

Thou hast forgiven the iniquity of thy people. Ps. 84/3.

I am he that blot out thy iniquities. Isai. 43/25.

With thee there is merciful forgiveness. Ps. 129/4.

He that hideth his sins shall not prosper: but he that shall confess, and forsake them, shall obtain mercy. Prov. 28/13.

In judging thou givest place for repentance for sins. Wis. 12/19.

If your sins be as scarlet, they shall be made as white as snow: and if they be red as crimson, they shall be white as wool. Isai. 1/18.

Let the wicked forsake his way, and the unjust man his thoughts, and let him return to the Lord, and he will have mercy on him, and to our God: for he is bountiful to forgive. Isai. 55/7.

For God is compassionate and merciful, and will forgive sins in the day of tribulation. Eccus. 2/13.

He that loveth God, shall obtain pardon for his sins by prayer, and shall refrain himself from them. Eccus. 3/4.

Be not without fear about sin forgiven, and add not sin upon sin. Eccus. 5/5.

Delay not to be converted to the Lord, and defer it not from day to day. Eccus. 5/8.

For mercy and wrath are with him. He is mighty to forgive, and to pour out indignation. Eccus. 16/12.

A throne shall be prepared in mercy. Isai. 16/5.

But yet acknowledge thy iniquity, that thou hast transgressed against the Lord thy God. Jer. 3/13.

For I will forgive their iniquity, and I will remember their sin no more. Jer. 31/34; Heb. 8/12.

To him all the prophets give testimony, that by his name all receive remission of sins. Acts 10/43.

He will also have mercy, according to the multitude of his mercies. Lam. 3/32; Ps. 50/1.

As I live, saith the Lord God, I desire not the death of the wicked, but that the wicked turn from his way, and live. Ezech. 33/11 & 18/23 & 18/32.

Rend your hearts, and not your garments, and turn to the Lord your God: for he is gracious and merciful, patient and rich in mercy. Joel 2/13.

Who is a God like to thee, who takest away iniquity . . . ? Micheas 7/18.

If you will forgive men their offences, your heavenly Father will forgive you also your offences. Matt. 6/14. (See Eccus. 28/3-5; Matt. 18/35; Mark 11/25.)

Lord, if thou wilt, thou canst make me clean. Matt. 8/2; Mark 1/40; Luke 5/12.

But that you may know that the Son of Man hath power on earth to forgive sins. Matt. 9/6; Mark 2/10.

The lord of that servant, being moved with pity, let him go, and forgave him the debt. Matt. 18/27.

Son, thy sins are forgiven thee. Mark 2/5; Matt. 9/2; Luke 5/20.

Jerusalem, Jerusalem, thou that killest the prophets, and stonest them that are sent unto thee, how often would I have gathered together thy children, as the hen doth gather her chickens under her wings. Matt. 23/37; Luke 13/34.

Blessed are they whose iniquities are forgiven. Ps. 31/1.

ST. ALBERT'S C...

Art. 11. **The resurrection of the body.**

(See 417-419.)

We shall all indeed rise again. 1 Cor. 15/51. (See 1 Cor. 15, *passim.*)

And the graves were opened: and many bodies of the saints that had slept, arose. Matt. 27/52.

And when they had heard of the resurrection of the dead, some indeed mocked; but others said: We will hear thee again concerning this matter. Acts 17/32.

The Father raiseth up the dead, and giveth life. John 5/21.

If there be no resurrection of the dead, then Christ is not risen again. 1 Cor. 15/13.

If we believe that Jesus died and rose again, even so them who have slept through Jesus will God bring with him. 1 Thess. 4/13.

Thy brother shall rise again. John 11/23.

I know that he shall rise again, in the resurrection, at the last day. John 11/24.

I am the resurrection and the life. John 11/25.

Wonder not at this, for the hour cometh wherein all that are in the graves shall hear the voice of the Son of God. And they that have done good things, shall come forth unto the resurrection of life; but they that have done evil, unto the resurrection of judgment. John 5/28, 29.

Shall man that is dead, thinkest thou, live again? Job 14/14.

He (the wicked man) believeth not that he may return from darkness to light. Job 15/22.

I know that my Redeemer liveth, and in the last day I shall rise out of the earth. And I shall be clothed again with my skin, and in my flesh I shall see my God. Job 19/25, 26.

So man, when he is fallen asleep, shall not rise again; till the heavens be broken, he shall not awake, nor rise out of his sleep. Job 14/12.

Thinking well and religiously concerning the resurrection. 2 Mach. 12/43.

The dead shall rise again. 1 Cor. 15/52.

I will raise him up in the last day. John 6/55 & 6/40.

If Christ be preached that he arose again from the dead,

how do some among you say, that there be no resurrection of the dead? 1 Cor. 15/12.

By a man came death, and by a man the resurrection of the dead. 1 Cor. 15/21.

They determined against me an unjust word: shall he that sleepeth rise again no more? Ps. 40/9.

God will redeem my soul from the hand of hell, when he shall receive me. Ps. 48/16.

Blessed and holy is he that hath part in the first resurrection. Apoc. 20/6.

Wilt thou shew wonders to the dead? Ps. 87/11.

Thus saith the Lord God to these bones: Behold, I will send spirit into you, and you shall live. Ezech. 37/5.

Many of those that sleep in the dust of the earth shall awake: some unto life everlasting, and others unto reproach. Dan. 12/2.

Thou, indeed, O most wicked man, destroyest us out of this present life: but the King of the world will raise us up, . . . in the resurrection of eternal life. 2 Mach. 7/9.

There shall be a resurrection of the just and unjust. Acts 24/15.

He (Christ) should be the first that should rise from the dead. Acts 26/23.

I will deliver them out of the hand of death . . . O death, I will be thy death! Osee 13/14; 1 Cor. 15/54.

Thou wilt bring up my life from corruption, O Lord my God. Jonas 2/7.

For if we have been planted together in the likeness of his death, we shall be also in the likeness of his resurrection. Rom. 6/5. (See Philip. 3/20, 21.)

Knowing that he who raised up Jesus will raise up us also with Jesus. 2 Cor. 4/14.

He that raised up Jesus Christ from the dead shall quicken also your mortal bodies. Rom. 8/11.

Art. 12. **And the life everlasting.**

(See 418-420.)

In the sight of the unwise they seemed to die: and their departure was taken for misery: and their going away from us, for utter destruction: but they are in peace. Wis. 3/2, 3.

The dead shall rise again incorruptible. 1 Cor. 15/52.

The just shall live for evermore. Wis. 5/16.

For this corruptible must put on incorruption; and this mortal must put on immortality. 1 Cor. 15/53.

For they have said, reasoning with themselves, but not right: the time of our life is short and tedious, and in the end of a man there is no remedy, and no man hath been known to have returned from hell. Wis. 2/1.

This is the will of my Father that sent me; that every one who seeth the Son, and believeth in him, may have life everlasting. John 6/40.

Blessed are the dead who die in the Lord. Apoc. 14/13.

For we are the children of saints, and look for that life which God will give to those that never change their faith from him. Tob. 2/18.

They that instruct many to justice (shall shine) as stars for all eternity. Dan. 12/3.

I am the God of Abraham. . . . He is not the God of the dead, but of the living. Matt. 22/32; Mark 12/27; Luke 20/38; Rom. 14/8, 9.

Who shall . . . receive . . . in the world to come, life everlasting. Mark 10/30; Luke 18/30.

He that hateth his life in this world, keepeth it unto life eternal. John 12/25.

Every one that liveth, and believeth in me, shall not die for ever. John 11/26.

Unto the hope of life everlasting, which God, who lieth not, hath promised. Titus 1/2.

He that believeth in me, hath everlasting life. John 6/47.

Lesson Second.

ON GOD AND HIS PERFECTIONS.

Q. 13.

What is God?
God is a spirit infinitely perfect.

(See 12, Art. 1; 21.)

He is from eternity to eternity, and to him nothing may be added, nor can he be diminished. Eccus. 42/21, 22.

God is a spirit. John 4/24.

God is a consuming fire. Heb. 12/29; Deut. 4/24.

God is light, and in him there is no darkness. 1 John 1/5.

The Lord is a Spirit. 2 Cor. 3/17.

I AM WHO AM. Exod. 3/14.

I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end, saith the Lord God, who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty. Apoc. 1/8 & 21/6 & 22/13.

God is not a man, that he should lie, nor as the son of man, that he should be changed. Num. 23/19.

The Lord your God he is the God of gods, and the Lord of lords, a great God, and mighty and terrible. Deut. 10/17.

Behold, God is great, exceeding our knowledge: the number of his years is inestimable. Job 36/26.

We cannot find him worthily: he is great in strength, and in judgment, and in justice, and he is ineffable. Job 37/23.

For the Lord is a great God, and a great King above all gods. Ps. 94/3.

Q. 14.

Had God a beginning?

God had no beginning; He always was and He always will be.

All wisdom is from the Lord God, and hath been always with him, and is before all time. Eccus. 1/1.

Before the mountains were made, or the earth and the world were formed: from eternity and to eternity thou art God. Ps. 89/2.

I was set up from eternity. Prov. 8/23.

I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end, saith the Lord God, who is, and who was, and who is to come. Apoc. 1/8 & 21/6 & 22/13.

Before Abraham was made, I am. John 8/58.

I will lift up my hand to heaven, and I will say: I live for ever. Deut. 32/40.

I AM WHO AM. Exod. 3/14.

Thy years are unto generation and generation. Ps. 101/25.

Thou art always the self-same, and thy years shall not fail. Ps. 101/28.

Behold I am living for ever and ever, and have the keys of death and of hell. Apoc. 1/18.

God is great, exceeding our knowledge: the number of his years is inestimable. Job 36/26.

Before me there was no God formed, and after me there shall be none. Isai. 43/10.

I am the first, and I am the last, and besides me there is no God. Isai. 44/6 & 41/4 & 48/12; Apoc. 1/17.

He that liveth for ever created all things. Eccus. 18/1.

The Lord shall reign for ever and ever. Exod. 15/18

The Lord is the everlasting God. Isai. 40/28.

From everlasting is thy name. Isai. 63/16; Ps. 92/2

Q. 15.

Where is God?

God is everywhere.

If I ascend into heaven, thou art there: if I descend into hell, thou art present. Ps. 138/8. (See Amos 9/2.)

The Lord is in his holy temple, the Lord's throne is in heaven. Ps. 10/5; Habac. 2/20.

He be not far from every one of us: for in him we live, and move, and be. Acts 17/27, 28.

Do not I fill heaven and earth, saith the Lord? Jer. 23/24.

Heaven is my throne, and the earth my footstool. Isai. 66/1; Acts 7/49.

Is it then to be thought that God should indeed dwell upon earth? for if the heaven, and the heavens of heavens cannot contain thee, how much less this house which I have built? 3 Kings 8/27; 2 Paral. 2/6 & 6/18.

Our God is in heaven. Ps. 113/3b; Ecces. 5/1; Ephes. 6/9.

Who is as the Lord our God, who dwelleth on high . . . ? Ps. 112/5; Isai. 33/5.

He being Lord of heaven and earth, dwelleth not in temples made with hands. Acts 17/24 & 7/48.

He is higher than heaven, . . . he is deeper than hell, . . . the measure of him is longer than the earth, and broader than the sea. Job 11/8, 9.

The Lord is nigh unto all them that call upon him. Ps. 144/18.

His dwelling is above. Deut. 33/27.

Q. 16.

If God is everywhere, why do we not see Him?

We do not see God, because He is a pure spirit and cannot be seen with bodily eyes.

Man seeth those things that appear. 1 Kings 16/7.

The things which are seen are temporal: but the things which are not seen are eternal. 2 Cor. 4/18.

God is a Spirit. John 4/24.

No man hath seen God at any time: the only-begotten Son who is in the bosom of the Father, he hath declared him. John 1/18; 1 John 4/12.

To the king of ages, immortal, invisible, the only God, be honour and glory 1 Tim. 1/17.

Whom no man hath seen, nor can see. 1 Tim. 6/16.

Verily, thou art a hidden God, the God of Israel, the saviour. Isai. 45/15.

Q. 17.

Does God see us?
God sees us and watches over us.

He made the little and the great, and he hath equally care of all. Wis. 6/8.

Darkness shall not be dark to thee, and night shall be light as the day: the darkness thereof, and the light thereof are alike to thee. Ps. 138/12.

Neither is there any creature invisible in his sight: but all things are naked and open to his eyes. Heb. 4/13.

The eyes of the Lord are far brighter than the sun, beholding round about all the ways of men, and the bottom of the deep, and looking into the hearts of men, into the most hidden parts. Eccus. 23/28.

His eyes are upon the ways of men, and he considereth all their steps. Job 34/21.

He knoweth my way, and has tried me as gold that passeth through the fire. Job 23/10.

All the ways of a man are open to his eyes: the Lord is the weigher of spirits. Prov. 16/2.

The steps of man are guided by the Lord. Prov. 20/24.

The Lord weigheth the hearts. Prov. 21/2.

Every heart is understood by him. Eccus. 16/20.

The eyes of the Lord are upon the just. Ps. 33/16; 1 Pet. 3/12.

The eyes of the Lord are towards them that fear him, and he knoweth all the work of man. Eccus. 15/20.

The eyes of the Lord in every place behold the good and the evil. Prov. 15/3.

God, who seeth all things. Esther 16/4.

Shall a man be hid in secret places, and I not see him, saith the Lord? Jer. 23/24.

Before that Philip called thee, when thou wast under the fig tree, I saw thee. John 1/48.

Say not: I shall be hidden from God, and who shall remember me from on high? Eccus. 16/16.

Whither shall I flee from thy face? Ps. 138/7.

The works of all flesh are before him, and there is nothing hid from his eyes. He seeth from eternity to eternity. Eccus. 39/24, 25.

All their works are as the sun in the sight of God:

and his eyes are continually upon their ways. Eccus. 17/16.

Wo to you that are deep of heart, to hide your counsel from the Lord: and their works are in the dark, and they say: Who seeth us, and who knoweth us? Isai. 29/15. (See Eccus. 23/26, 27.)

Say not . . . : There is no providence. Ecces. 5/5.

He will keep the feet of his saints, and the wicked shall be silent in darkness, because no man shall prevail by his own strength. 1 Kings 2/9.

The very hairs of your head are all numbered. Matt. 10/30; Luke 12/7; Acts 27/34.

Thy Father who seeth in secret will repay thee. Matt. 6/4.

The Lord ruleth me: and I shall want nothing. Ps. 22/1.

He hath care of you. 1 Pet. 5/7.

I will fix my eyes upon thee. Ps. 31/8.

Blessed is the man that shall continue in wisdom, and that shall meditate in his justice, and in his mind shall think of the all-seeing eye of God. Eccus. 14/22.

For the wisdom of God is great, and he is strong in power, seeing all men without ceasing. Eccus. 15/19.

Q. 18.

Does God know all things?

God knows all things, even our most secret thoughts, words, and actions.

(See 13, 17.)

To the Lord was his own work known from the beginning of the world. Acts 15/18.

If our heart reprehend us, God is greater than our heart, and knoweth all things. 1 John 3/20.

Inquisition shall be made into the thoughts of the ungodly. Wis. 1/9.

For all things were known to the Lord God before they were created: so also, after they were perfected, he beholdeth all things. Eccus. 23/29.

The searcher of hearts and reins is God. Ps. 7/10; Jer. 17/10; Apoc. 2/23; Wis. 1/6.

He that knoweth my conscience is on high. Job 16/20.

He knoweth the secrets of the heart. Ps. 43/22.

Thou knowest all things. Esther 13/12; Baruch 3/32.

O Lord, who hast the knowledge of all things. Esther 14/14.

O eternal God, who knowest hidden things, who knowest all things before they come to pass. Dan. 13/42.

He knoweth the vanity of men. Job 11/11; Ps. 93/11; 1 Cor. 3/20.

The Lord knoweth who are his. 2 Tim. 2/19.

For the Lord knoweth all knowledge, and hath beheld the signs of the world, he declareth the things that are past, and the things that are to come, and revealeth the traces of hidden things. No thought escapeth him, and no word can hide itself from him. Eccus. 42/19, 20.

Jesus seeing their thoughts, said: Why do you think evil in your hearts? Matt. 9/4.

Lord, thou knowest all things. John 21/17.

Now we know that thou (Christ) knowest all things. John 16/30.

And they said: How doth God know? and is there knowledge in the Most High? Ps. 72/11.

Shall any one teach God knowledge . . .? Job 21/22.

He knoweth my way. Job 23/10. (See Prov. 16/2.)

Thou hast understood my thoughts afar off: . . . thou hast foreseen all my ways: . . . thou hast known all things. Ps. 138/3-5.

The Lord is a God of all knowledge. 1 Kings 2/3.

Thy knowledge is become wonderful to me: it is high, and I cannot reach to it. Ps. 138/6.

No thought is hid from thee. Job 42/2.

When he is come, he will tell us all things. John 4/25.

Q. 19.

Can God do all things?

God can do all things, and nothing is hard or impossible to Him.

(See 13; 12, Art. 1.)

Thou canst do all things. Wis. 11/24.

I know that thou canst do all things. Job 42/2.

Whatsoever the Lord pleased he hath done, in heaven, in earth, in the sea, and in all the deeps. Ps. 134/6.

No word shall be impossible with God. Luke 1/37.

With God all things are possible. Matt. 19/26; Mark 10/27.

Lord, if thou wilt, thou canst make me clean. Matt. 8/2; Mark 1/40; Luke 8/12.

All things are in thy power. Esther 13/9.

God is high in his strength. Job 36/22.

Almighty is his name. Exod. 15/3.

For great power always belonged to thee alone. Wis. 11/22.

For thou shewest thy power, when men will not believe thee to be absolute in power, and thou convincest the boldness of them that know thee not. Wis. 12/17.

He hath shewed might in his arm. Luke 1/51.

O Adonai, Lord, great art thou, and glorious in thy power, and no one can overcome thee. Judith 16/16.

Thy power, O Lord, is not in a multitude. Judith 9/16.

It is easy for the Lord to save either by many or by few. 1 Kings 14/6.

Is there any thing hard to God? Gen. 18/14.

Who is strong but our God? 2 Kings 22/32.

Who is like to thee, among the strong, O Lord? Exod. 15/11.

There is none strong like our God. 1 Kings 2/2.

Thou art mighty, O Lord. Ps. 88/9.

He hath done all things whatsoever he would. Ps. 113/3b.

With him is wisdom and strength, he hath counsel and understanding. If he pull down, there is no man that can build up: if he shut up a man, there is none that can open. Job 12/13, 14. (See Isai. 22/22; Apoc. 3/7.)

Q. 20.

Is God just, holy, and merciful?

God is all just, all holy, all merciful, as He is infinitely perfect.

Thou art just, O Lord. Esther 14/7.

O Lord God, Creator of all things, dreadful and strong, just and merciful, who alone art the good king, who alone

art gracious, who alone art just, and almighty, and eternal. 2 Mach. 1/24, 25.

Thou hast loved justice, and hated iniquity. Ps. 44/8.

For the Lord is just, and hath loved justice. Ps. 10/8.

We cannot find him worthily: he is great in strength, and in judgment, and in justice, and he is ineffable. Job 37/23.

O Lord God Almighty, true and just are thy judgments. Apoc. 16/7 & 19/2.

Thou art just, O Lord, and all thy judgments are just, and all thy ways are mercy, and truth, and judgment. Tob. 3/2.

There is no respect of persons with him. Ephes. 6/9, *et passim.*

Justice and judgment are the preparation of thy throne. Mercy and truth shall go before thy face. Ps. 88/15.

Thy right hand is full of justice. Ps. 47/11.

God will not condemn without cause, neither will the Almighty pervert judgment. Job 34/12.

God will not cast away the simple, nor reach out his hand to the evildoer. Job 8/20.

To the Lord our God belongeth justice. Baruch 1/15 & 2/6.

God is faithful, and without any iniquity; he is just and right. Deut. 32/4.

Who can say to him: Thou hast wrought iniquity? Job 36/23.

Which of you shall convince me (Christ) of sin? John 8/46.

There is none holy as the Lord is. 1 Kings 2/2.

Holy is his name. Luke 1/49.

For thou only art holy. Apoc. 15/4.

Holy, holy, holy, the Lord God of hosts, all the earth is full of his glory. Isai. 6/3; Apoc. 4/8.

The Lord our God is holy. Ps. 98/9.

Thou art a merciful God. Baruch 3/2.

Thou, our God, art gracious and true, patient, and ordering all things in mercy. Wis. 15/1.

The Lord is gracious and merciful: patient and plenteous in mercy. Ps. 144/8; Joel 2/13.

The Lord is sweet to all: and his tender mercies are over all his works. Ps. 144/9; Ps. 85/5.

The mercy of God is upon all flesh. Eccus. 18/12.

As I live, saith the Lord God, I desire not the death of the wicked. Ezech. 33/11 & 18/23 & 18/32. (See 2 Pet. 3/9.)

The Lord hath comforted his people, and will have mercy on his poor ones. Isai. 49/13.

God is compassionate and merciful, and will forgive sins in the day of tribulation: and he is a protector to all that seek him in truth. Eccus. 2/13.

I have compassion on the multitude. Mark 8/2; Matt. 15/32.

He loveth mercy and judgment; the earth is full of the mercy of the Lord. Ps. 32/5.

The mercy of the Lord is from eternity and unto eternity. Ps. 102/17.

Behold, thou hast loved truth. Ps. 50/8.

Thou art good. Ps. 118/68.

He hath mercy on him that receiveth the discipline of mercy, and that maketh haste in his judgments. Eccus. 18/14.

Give glory to the Lord, for he is good, for his mercy endureth for ever. 2 Paral. 5/13.

His mercy endureth for ever. Ps. 135; Ps. 117, *et alibi*.

Thou hast mercy upon all. Wis. 11/24.

The Lord is patient and full of mercy. Num. 14/18.

The Lord is compassionate and merciful: longsuffering and plenteous in mercy. Ps. 102/8.

O the Lord, the Lord God, merciful and gracious, patient and of much compassion, and true. Exod. 34/6.

Because the Lord thy God is a merciful God: he will not leave thee, nor altogether destroy thee. Deut. 4/31.

One is good, God. Matt. 19/17; Luke 18/19.

Be you therefore perfect, as also your heavenly Father is perfect. Matt. 5/48.

Lesson Third.

ON THE UNITY AND TRINITY OF GOD.

Q. 21.

Is there but one God?
Yes; there is but one God.

Who is God but our God? Ps. 17/32.

For there is one God. 1 Tim. 2/5.

Who is the Blessed and only Mighty, the King of kings, and Lord of lords. 1 Tim. 6/15; Apoc. 17/14 & 19/16.

Yet to us there is but one God. 1 Cor. 8/6.

We know . . . that there is no God but one. 1 Cor. 8/4.

Thou believest that there is one God. Thou dost well. James 2/19.

Hear, O Israel, the Lord our God is one Lord. Deut. 6/4; Mark 12/29.

Hath not one God created us? Mal. 2/10.

Know, therefore, this day, and think in thy heart, that the Lord he is God in heaven above, and in the earth beneath, and there is no other. Deut. 4/39.

There is one most high Creator Almighty, and a powerful King, and greatly to be feared, who sitteth upon his throne, and is the God of dominion. Eccus. 1/8.

See ye that I alone am, and there is no other God besides me. Deut. 32/39; Isai. 45/5; Eccus. 36/5.

Before me there was no God formed, and after me there shall be none. Isai. 43/10.

I am the first, and I am the last, and besides me there is no God. Isai. 44/6 & 48/12 & 45/5, 14, 21, 22.

There is no other God but thou. Wis. 12/13.

For there is no other God either in heaven or earth. Deut. 3/24.

One Lord . . . One God and Father of all. Ephes. 4/5, 6.

Thou shalt not have strange gods before me. Exod. 20/3.

They worshipped one God of heaven. Judith 5/9.

And let them know that thou art the Lord, the only God, and glorious over all the world. Dan. 3/45; Zach. 14/9.

There is no other almighty God besides him. Tob. 13/4.

I am the Lord your God, and there is none besides. Joel 2/27; 2 Kings 7/22.

Now to the king of ages, immortal, invisible, the only God, be honour and glory for ever and ever. 1 Tim. 1/17.

Q. 22.

Why can there be but one God?

There can be but one God because God, being supreme and infinite, cannot have an equal.

I alone am. Deut. 32/39.

The Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost. And these three are one. 1 John 5/7.

I am the first, and I am the last, and besides me there is no God. Isai. 44/6 & 45/5, etc.; Eccus. 36/5.

O God, who shall be like to thee? Ps. 82/2.

There is none like to thee, O Lord. Jer. 10/6.

Let them know that the Lord is thy name: thou alone art the Most High over all the earth. Ps. 82/19.

The sum of our words is, He is all. Eccus. 43/29.

Q. 23.

How many persons are there in God?

In God there are three Divine persons, really distinct, and equal in all things—the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost.

There are three that give testimony in heaven: the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost. 1 John 5/7.

Baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost. Matt. 28/19.

The grace of *our Lord Jesus Christ*, and the charity of *God*, and the communication of the *Holy Ghost*, be with you all. 2 Cor. 13/13.

By the *word* of the *Lord* the heavens were established; and all the power of them by the *spirit* of his mouth. Ps. 32/6.

Let *us* make man. Gen. 1/26.

I will ask the *Father*, and he shall give you another *Paraclete*. John 14/16.

He rejoiced in the *Holy Ghost*, and said: I confess to thee, O *Father*, Lord of heaven and earth. Luke 10/21; Matt. 11/25.

The *Holy Ghost* shall come upon thee, and the power of the *most High* shall overshadow thee. And therefore also the Holy which shall be born of thee, shall be called the *Son* of God. Luke 1/35.

And Jesus being baptized, forthwith came out of the water: and lo, the heavens were opened to him: and he saw the Spirit of God descending as a dove, and coming upon him. And, behold, a voice from heaven, saying: This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased. Matt. 3/16, 17; Mark 1/10, 11; Luke 3/22; John 1/32.

Q. 24.

Is the Father God?

The Father is God and the first Person of the Blessed Trinity.

God the Father. Col. 1/12.

Grace be unto you, and peace, from God our Father. Philip 1/2; Gal. 1/3; Titus; 1/4 *et alibi.*

The Father hath life in himself. John 5/26.

I ascend to my Father and to your Father, to my God and your God. John 20/17.

Father, the world hath not known thee. John 17/25.

I bow my knees to the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, of whom all paternity in heaven and earth is named. Ephes. 3/14, 15.

Have we not all one Father? hath not one God created us? Mal. 2/10.

No one knoweth . . . who the Father is but the Son, and to whom the Son will reveal him. Luke 10/22.

O Father, Lord of heaven and earth. Luke 10/21.

Our Father who art in heaven. Matt. 6/9.

Q. 25.

Is the Son God?

The Son is God and the second Person of the Blessed Trinity.

(See 62, 63; 12, Art. 2.)

In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God. John 1/1.

I and the Father are one. John 10/30.

I said, I am the Son of God. John 10/36.

The Father is in me, and I in the Father. John 10/38.

Christ . . . is over all things, God, blessed for ever. Rom. 9/5.

In the name of Jesus every knee should bow, . . . and that every tongue should confess that the Lord Jesus Christ is in the glory of God the Father. Philip. 2/10, 11.

I came forth from the Father. John 16/28.

He was in the world, and the world was made by him, and the world knew him not. John 1/10.

He did not only break the sabbath, but also said God was his Father, making himself equal to God. John 5/18.

He boasteth that he hath the knowledge of God, and calleth himself the Son of God. Wis. 2/13; Matt. 27/43.

He . . . glorieth that he hath God for his Father. Wis. 2/16; John 8/27.

He that seeth me, seeth the Father also. John 14/9.

He that hateth me, hateth my Father also. John 15/23.

Now glorify thou me, O Father, with thyself, with the glory which I had, before the world was, with thee. John 17/5.

That all men may honour the Son, as they honour the Father. John 5/23. (See 1 John 3/16.)

Thomas . . . said to him (Jesus): My Lord, and my God. John 20/28.

His name shall be called Emmanuel. Isai. 7/14.

In him dwelleth all the fulness of the Godhead corporally. Col. 2/9.

Q. 26.

Is the Holy Ghost God?

The Holy Ghost is God and the third Person of the Blessed Trinity.

(See 94, 134, 135; 12, Art. 8.)

The things also that are of God no man knoweth, but the Spirit of God. 1 Cor. 2/11.

Ananias, why hath satan tempted thy heart, that thou shouldst lie to the Holy Ghost . . .? . . . Thou hast not lied to men, but to God. Acts 5/3, 4.

Well did the Holy Ghost speak to our fathers by Isaias the prophet. Acts 28/25.

God . . . spoke . . . by the prophets. Heb. 1/1.

The holy men of God spoke, inspired by the Holy Ghost. 2 Pet. 1/21.

The Paraclete cometh, whom I will send you from the Father, the Spirit of truth. John 15/26 & 14/26.

Whosoever shall speak a word against the Son of Man, it shall be forgiven him: but he that shall speak against the Holy Ghost, it shall not be forgiven him, neither in this world nor in the world to come. Matt. 12/32; Luke 12/10; Mark 3/29.

He saw the heavens opened, and the Spirit, as a dove, descending, and remaining upon him. Mark 1/10; Luke 3/22.

The Spirit of truth. John 14/17.

Your members are the temple of the Holy Ghost. 1 Cor. 6/19.

Glorify and bear God in your body. 1 Cor. 6/20.

Q. 27.

What do you mean by the Blessed Trinity?

By the Blessed Trinity I mean one God in three Divine Persons.

(See 23.)

There are three that give testimony in heaven: the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost. And these three are one. 1 John 5/7.

I am not alone, but I and the Father that sent me. John 8/16.

In the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost. Matt. 28/19.

Let *us* make man to *our* image. Gen. 1/26.

By the *word* of *the Lord* the heavens were established; and all the power of them by the *spirit* of his mouth. Ps. 32/6.

Behold Adam is become as *one* of *us*. Gen. 3/22.

Q. 28.

Are the three Divine Persons equal in all things?

The three Divine Persons are equal in all things.

Christ Jesus: . . . being in the form of God, thought it not robbery to be equal with God. Philip. 2/6.

I and the Father are one. John 10/30.

You believe in God, believe also in me. John 14/1.

He that seeth me, seeth the Father also. John 14/9.

For in him dwelleth all the fulness of the Godhead corporally. Col. 2/9.

The Jews sought the more to kill him, because he did not only break the sabbath, but also said God was his Father, making himself equal to God. John 5/18.

All things whatsoever the Father hath, are mine. John 16/15 & 17/10.

The kingdom of Christ and of God. Ephes. 5/5.

That all men may honour the Son, as they honour the Father. John 5/23.

For as the Father raiseth up the dead, and giveth life: so the Son also giveth life to whom he will. John 5/21.

For as the Father hath life in himself; so he hath given to the Son also to have life in himself. John 5/26.

For the Father is greater than I. John 14/28.

Q. 29.

Are the three Divine Persons one and the same God?

The three Divine Persons are one and the same God, having one and the same Divine nature and substance.

One Lord . . . One God and Father of all. Ephes. 4/5, 6.

The Lord thy God is one God. Mark 12/29; Deut. 6/4.

I and the Father are one. John 10/30.

The Father is in me, and I in the Father. John 10/38.
He that seeth me, seeth the Father also. John 14/9.
All my things are thine, and thine are mine. John 17/10.
That they may be one, as we also are. John 17/11.
Yet to us there is but one God, the Father, of whom are all things, . . . and one Lord Jesus Christ, by whom are all things. 1 Cor. 8/6.
The Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost. And these three are one. 1 John 5/7.

Q. 30.

Can we fully understand how the three Divine Persons are one and the same God?

We cannot fully understand how the three Divine Persons are one and the same God, because this is a mystery.

We cannot find him worthily. Job 37/23.
What we can know is but as a spark! Eccus. 42/23.
And hardly do we guess aright at things that are upon earth: and with labour do we find the things that are before us. But the things that are in heaven, who shall search out? Wis. 9/16.
We know in part, and we prophesy in part. 1 Cor. 13/9
We speak the wisdom of God in a mystery. 1 Cor 2/7.
He that is a searcher of majesty shall be overwhelmed by glory. Prov. 25/27.
Seek not the things that are too high for thee, and search not into things above thy ability: but the things that God hath commanded thee, think on them always, and in many of his works be not curious. Eccus. 3/22.
Great is the mystery of godliness. 1 Tim. 3/16.

Q. 31.

What is a mystery?

A mystery is a truth which we cannot fully understand.

A wisdom which is hidden. 1 Cor. 2/7.
Blessed are they that have not seen, and have believed. John 20/29.
O the depth of the riches of the wisdom and of the

knowledge of God! How incomprehensible are his judgments, and how unsearchable his ways! Rom. 11/33.

Many things are shewn to thee above the understanding of men. Eccus. 3/25.

What needeth a man to seek things that are above him, whereas he knoweth not what is profitable for him in his life . . . ? Ecces. 7/1.

There are many things hidden from us that are greater than these: for we have seen but a few of his works. Eccus. 43/36.

Many of his works are hidden. Eccus. 16/22.

The Lord . . . revealeth the traces of hidden things. Eccus. 42/19.

Peradventure thou wilt comprehend the steps of God, and wilt find out the Almighty perfectly? Job 11/7.

There is a God in heaven that revealeth mysteries. Dan. 2/28.

To you (the disciples) it is given to know the mysteries of the kingdom of heaven. Matt. 13/11.

Lesson Fourth.

ON CREATION.

Q. 32.

Who created heaven and earth, and all things?
God created heaven and earth, and all things.

(See 1, 2, 33; 12, Art. 1.)

The Lord made the heavens. Ps. 95/5.

In the beginning God created heaven and earth. Gen. 1/1.

It is he who giveth to all life, and breath, and all things. Acts 17/25.

(I preach to you) God, who made the world, and all things therein. Acts 17/24. (See 2 Esdras 9/6.)

Who is ignorant that the hand of the Lord hath made all these things? Job 12/9. (See Acts 4/24.)

Thou hast made heaven and earth, and all things that are under the cope of heaven. Esther 13/10.

And God made a firmament. Gen. 1/7.

And God created the great whales. Gen. 1/21.

And God made the beasts of the earth according to their kinds. Gen. 1/25. (See Job 26/13.)

The heavens are the works of thy hands. Ps. 101/26.

The living God, who made the heaven, and the earth, and the sea, and all things that are in them. Acts 14/14; Ps. 145/6; Dan. 14/4; Ps. 120/2.

The Lord God . . . formed out of the ground all the beasts of the earth, and all the fowls of the air. Gen. 2/19.

He that liveth for ever created all things together. Eccus. 18/1; Wis. 1/14.

I made the earth: and I created man upon it: my hand stretched forth the heavens. Isai. 45/12 & 40/28.

Thus saith the Lord that created the heavens, God himself that formed the earth, and made it, the very maker thereof: he did not create it in vain. Isai. 45/18.

My hand also hath founded the earth. Isai. 48/13.

Blessed be the Lord, the God of Israel, who made heaven and earth. 2 Paral. 2/12; Judith 13/24.

God created man upon the earth. Deut. 4/32.

Who makest thy angels spirits. Ps. 103/4; Heb. 1/7.

All the gods of the Gentiles are devils: but the Lord made the heavens. Ps. 95/5; 1 Paral. 16/26.

For, behold, he that formeth the mountains, and createth the wind, and declareth his word to man, he that maketh the morning mist, and walketh upon the high places of the earth: the Lord, the God of hosts, is his name. Amos 4/13.

I fear the Lord, the God of heaven, who made both the sea and the dry land. Jonas 1/9.

Thus saith the Lord, who stretcheth forth the heavens, and layeth the foundations of the earth, and formeth the spirit of man in him. Zach. 12/1; Isai. 42/5.

Q. 33.

How did God create heaven and earth?

God created heaven and earth from nothing by His word only; that is, by a single act of His all-powerful will.

(See 1, 2, 32; 12, Art. 1.)

By the word of the Lord the heavens were established; and all the power of them by the spirit of his mouth. Ps. 32/6.

All things were created by him and in him. Col. 1/16.

Thou hast spoken and they were made: thou didst send forth thy spirit, and they were created. Judith 16/17.

And God said: Be light made. And light was made. Gen. 1/3.

By faith we understand that the world was framed by the word of God. Heb. 11/3; Ps. 32/9 & 148/5.

God of my fathers, and Lord of mercy, who hast made all things with thy word. Wis. 9/1.

The Lord by wisdom hath founded the earth, hath established the heavens by prudence. Prov. 3/19.

He that maketh the earth by his power, that prepareth the world by his wisdom, and stretcheth out the heavens by his knowledge. Jer. 10/12 & 51/15.

O Lord God, behold, thou hast made heaven and earth by thy great power, . . . no word shall be hard to thee. Jer. 32/17.

I beseech thee, my son, look upon heaven and earth, and all that is in them, and consider that God made them out of nothing, and mankind also. 2 Mach. 7/28.

Q. 34.

Which are the chief creatures of God?

The chief creatures of God are angels and men.

Let us make man . . . and let him have dominion over the fishes of the sea, and the fowls of the air, and the beasts, and the whole earth. Gen. 1/26. (See Wis. 9/2.)

The Lord God formed man of the slime of the earth: and breathed into his face the breath of life, and man became a living soul. Gen. 2/7.

Thou hast made him a little less than the angels. Ps. 8/6; Heb. 2/7.

Thou madest Adam of the slime of the earth. Tob. 8/8.

How great art thy works, O Lord! Ps. 103/24.

Who makest thy angels spirits: and thy ministers a burning fire. Ps. 103/4; Heb. 1/7.

The Sadduces say that there is no . . . angel, nor spirit. Acts 23/8.

Q. 35.

What are angels?

Angels are pure spirits without a body, created to adore and enjoy God in heaven.

Adore him, all you his angels. Ps. 96/7; Heb. 1/6.

Bless the Lord, all ye his angels: you that are mighty in strength, and execute his word, hearkening to the voice of his orders. Ps. 102/20.

O ye angels of the Lord, bless the Lord: praise and exalt him above all for ever. Dan. 3/58.

Who makest thy angels spirits: and thy ministers a burning fire. Ps. 103/4; Heb. 1/7.

Thousands of thousands ministered to him, and ten thousand times a hundred thousand stood before him. Dan. 7/10; Apoc. 7/11.

Q. 36.

Were the angels created for any other purpose?

The angels were also created to assist before the throne of God and to minister unto Him; they have often been sent as messengers from God to man; and are also appointed our guardians.

Bless the Lord, all ye his hosts: you ministers of his that do his will. Ps. 102/21.

The angels ministered to him. Mark 1/13; Matt. 4/11.

Are they not all ministering spirits, sent to minister for them who shall receive the inheritance of salvation? Heb. 1/14.

For he hath given his angels charge over thee: to keep thee in all thy ways. Ps. 90/11; Matt. 4/6; Luke 4/10.

I, Jesus, have sent my angel to testify to you these things in the churches. Apoc. 22/16.

Despise not one of these little ones: for I say to you, that their angels in heaven always see the face of my Father. Matt. 18/10.

Behold I will send my angel, who shall go before thee, and keep thee in thy journey. Exod. 23/20; Baruch 6/6.

The angel Gabriel was sent from God into a city of Galilee, . . . to a virgin espoused to a man whose name was Joseph, . . . and the virgin's name was Mary. Luke 1/26, 27.

And the angel said to him: I will conduct him thither, and bring him back to thee. Tob. 5/15.

An angel of the Lord spoke to Philip. Acts 8/26.

There shall be joy before the angels of God upon one sinner doing penance. Luke 15/10.

One of the seraphims flew to me, and in his hand was a live coal. Isai. 6/6.

The angel said to him: Gird thyself, and put on thy sandals. Acts 12/8.

There appeared to him (Moses) in the desert of mount Sina, an angel in a flame of fire in a bush. Acts 7/30; Exod. 3/2.

An angel of God called to Agar from heaven. Gen. 21/17.

And behold, an angel of the Lord from heaven called to him, saying: Abraham, Abraham. Gen. 22/11.

The angel said to them: Fear not; for, behold, I bring you good tidings of great joy. Luke 2/10.

Q. 37.

Were the angels, as God created them, good and happy?
The angels, as God created them, were good and happy.

Thou wast perfect in thy ways from the day of thy creation, until iniquity was found in thee. Ezech. 28/15.

He hath made all things good in their time. Eccles. 3/11.

All the works of the Lord are good. Eccus. 39/39.

Q. 38.

Did all the angels remain good and happy?
All the angels did not remain good and happy; many of them sinned and were cast into hell, and these are called devils or bad angels.

How art thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, who didst rise in the morning? . . . Thou saidst in thy heart: I will ascend into heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God, I will sit in the mountain of the covenant, in the sides of the north. I will ascend above the height of the clouds, I will be like the Most High. . . . But thou . . . art gone down to the bottom of the pit. Isai. 14/12-14, 19.

In his angels he found wickedness. Job 4/18.

I saw satan, like lightning, falling from heaven. Luke 10/18.

God spared not the angels that sinned: but delivered them, drawn down by infernal ropes to the lower hell. 2 Pet. 2/4.

And the angels, who kept not their principality, but for-

sook their own habitation, he hath reserved unto darkness in everlasting chains. Jude 1/6.

There was a great battle in heaven: . . . And that great dragon was cast out, . . . who is called the devil, . . . and his angels were thrown down with him. Apoc. 12/7-9.

Be sober, and watch: because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, goeth about, seeking whom he may devour. 1 Pet. 5/8.

Lesson Fifth.

ON OUR FIRST PARENTS AND THE FALL.

Q. 39.

Who were the first man and woman?
The first man and woman were Adam and Eve.

Adam and his wife. Gen. 2/25.

And Adam called the name of his wife Eve, because she was the mother of all the living. Gen. 3/20.

God created them male and female; and blessed them: and called their name Adam. Gen. 5/2.

God created man of the earth. Eccus. 17/1.

Thou madest Adam of the slime of the earth, and gavest him Eve for a helper. Tob. 8/8; Eccus. 17/5.

Q. 40.

Were Adam and Eve innocent and holy when they came from the hand of God?

Adam and Eve were innocent and holy when they came from the hand of God.

God created man to his own image: . . . male and female he created them. And God blessed them. . . . And God saw all the things that he had made, and they were very good. Gen. 1/27, 28, 31.

God created man incorruptible. Wis. 2/23.

God made man right, and he hath entangled himself with an infinity of questions. Eccles. 7/30.

He gave them counsel, and a tongue, and eyes, and

ears, and a heart to devise: and he filled them with the knowledge of understanding. Eccus. 17/5.

All the works of the Lord are good. Eccus. 39/39.

Q. 41.

Did God give any command to Adam and Eve?

To try their obedience God commanded Adam and Eve not to eat of a certain fruit which grew in the garden of Paradise.

And he commanded him, saying: Of every tree of paradise thou shalt eat: but of the tree of knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat. Gen. 2/16, 17. (See Gen. 3/3.)

He made an everlasting covenant with them, and he shewed them his justice and judgments . . . and he said to them: Beware of all iniquity. Eccus. 17/10, 11.

In what day soever thou shalt eat of it, thou shalt die the death. Gen. 2/17.

Q. 42.

Which were the chief blessings intended for Adam and Eve had they remained faithful to God?

The chief blessings intended for Adam and Eve, had they remained faithful to God, were a constant state of happiness in this life and everlasting glory in the next.

We shall have many good things if we fear God, and depart from all sin, and do that which is good. Tob. 4/23.

God made not death, neither hath he pleasure in the destruction of the living. Wis. 1/13.

He made the nations of the earth for health. Wis. 1/14.

Behold I have given you every herb bearing seed upon the earth . . . to be your meat. Gen. 1/29.

He gave them instructions, and the law of life for an inheritance. Eccus. 17/9.

Q. 43.

Did Adam and Eve remain faithful to God?

Adam and Eve did not remain faithful to God; but broke His command by eating the forbidden fruit.

Pride is the beginning of all sin. Eccus. 10/15.

By the envy of the devil, death came into the world. Wis. 2/24.

And the woman saw that the tree was good to eat, and fair to the eyes, and delightful to behold: and she took of the fruit thereof, and did eat, and gave to her husband who did eat. Gen. 3/6. (See Eccus. 25/33.)

The woman being seduced, was in the transgression. 1 Tim. 2/14.

The first father sinned. Isai. 43/27; Rom. 5/12.

The woman, whom thou gavest me to be my companion, gave me of the tree, and I did eat. Gen. 3/12.

They, like Adam, have transgressed. Osee 6/7.

Q. 44.

What befell Adam and Eve on account of their sin?

Adam and Eve on account of their sin lost innocence and holiness, and were doomed to sickness and death.

The eyes of them both were opened. Gen. 3/7.

Adam is become as one of us, knowing good and evil. Gen. 3/22.

Because thou . . . hast eaten of the tree, . . . In the sweat of thy face shalt thou eat bread till thou return to the earth. Gen. 3/17, 19.

And the Lord God sent him out of the paradise of pleasure, to till the earth. Gen. 3/23.

To the woman also he said: . . . in sorrow shalt thou bring forth children, and thou shalt be under thy husband's power. Gen. 3/16.

For they shall sow wind, and reap a whirlwind. Osee 8/7.

For the wages of sin is death. Rom. 6/23.

Man, when he was in honour, did not understand; he is compared to senseless beasts, and is become like to them. Ps. 48/13.

Q. 45.

What evil befell us on account of the disobedience of our first parents?

On account of the disobedience of our first parents, we all

share in their sin and punishment, as we should have shared in their happiness if they had remained faithful.

By one man sin entered into this world, and by sin death: and so death passed upon all men. Rom. 5/12.

This sentence (of death) is from the Lord upon all flesh. Eccus. 41/5.

By the disobedience of one man, many were made sinners. Rom. 5/19.

From the woman came the beginning of sin, and by her we all die. Eccus. 25/33; 1 Tim. 2/14.

We . . . were by nature children of wrath. Ephes. 2/3.

I was conceived in iniquities; and in sins did my mother conceive me. Ps. 50/7.

Man born of a woman, living for a short time, is filled with many miseries. Job 14/1.

Our fathers have sinned, and are not: and we have borne their iniquities. Lam. 5/7.

The fathers have eaten sour grapes, and the teeth of the children are set on edge. Ezech. 18/2; Jer. 31/29.

Great labour is created for all men, and a heavy yoke is upon the children of Adam. Eccus. 40/1.

Cursed is the earth in thy work; with labour and toil shalt thou eat thereof all the days of thy life. Gen. 3/17.

God hath concluded all in unbelief. Rom. 11/32.

But the scripture hath concluded all under sin. Gal. 3/22; Rom. 3/9.

For all have sinned; and do need the glory of God. Rom. 3/23.

By one man's offence death reigned through one. Rom. 5/17.

Q. 46.

What other effects followed from the sin of our first parents?

Our nature was corrupted by the sin of our first parents, which darkened our understanding, weakened our will, and left in us a strong inclination to evil.

(See 49.)

God created man incorruptible, . . . But by the envy of the devil. death came into the world. Wis. 2/23, 24.

The imagination and thought of man's heart are prone to evil from his youth. Gen. 8/21 & 6/5.

The passions of sins which were by the law, did work in our members. Rom. 7/5.

I see another law in my members, fighting against the law of my mind. Rom. 7/23.

O most mighty, the God of the spirits of all flesh, for one man's sin shall thy wrath rage against all? Num. 16/22.

What is man that he should be without spot . . . ? Job 15/14. (See Job 14/4.)

And they may recover themselves from the snares of the devil, by whom they are held captive at his will. 2 Tim. 2/26.

A man's enemies shall be they of his own household. Matt. 10/36; Micheas 7/6.

The life of man upon earth is a warfare. Job 7/1.

For the flesh lusteth against the Spirit. Gal. 5/17.

I know that there dwelleth not in me, that is to say, in my flesh, that which is good. Rom. 7/18.

Error and darkness are created with sinners. Eccus. 11/16.

We have charged both Jews and Greeks, that they are all under sin. Rom. 3/9.

For all that is in the world, is the concupiscence of the flesh, and the concupiscence of the eyes, and the pride of life. 1 John 2/16.

Q. 47.

What is the sin called which we inherit from our first parents?

The sin which we inherit from our first parents is called original sin.

I was conceived in iniquities; and in sins did my mother conceive me. Ps. 50/7.

Who can say: My heart is clean, I am pure from sin? Prov. 20/9.

From the woman came the beginning of sin. Eccus. 25/33; 1 Tim. 2/14.

Q. 48.

Why is this sin called original?

This sin is called original because it comes down to us from our first parents, and we are brought into the world with its guilt on our soul.

By one man sin entered into this world, . . . in whom all have sinned. Rom. 5/12.

By the disobedience of one man, many were made sinners. Rom. 5/19.

We all . . . were by nature children of wrath. Ephes. 2/3.

Q. 49.

Does this corruption of our nature remain in us after original sin is forgiven?

This corruption of our nature and other punishments remain in us after original sin is forgiven.

(See 46.)

I am delighted with the law of God, according to the inward man: but I see another law in my members, fighting against the law of my mind, and captivating me in the law of sin, that is in my members. Rom. 7/22, 23.

There was given me a sting of my flesh, an angel of satan, to buffet me. 2 Cor. 12/7.

Who can make him clean that is conceived of unclean seed? is it not thou who only art? Job 14/4.

I say then, walk in the Spirit, and you shall not fulfil the lusts of the flesh. Gal. 5/16.

Every man is tempted by his own concupiscence, being drawn away and allured. James 1/14.

I know that there dwelleth not in me, that is to say, in my flesh, that which is good. Rom. 7/18.

For the flesh lusteth against the Spirit. Gal. 5/17.

No man of himself is innocent before thee. Exod. 34/7.

Q. 50.

Was any one ever preserved from original sin?

The Blessed Virgin Mary, through the merits of her Divine

Son, was preserved free from the guilt of original sin, and this privilege is called her Immaculate Conception.

I will put enmities between thee and the woman, . . . she shall crush thy head. Gen. 3/15.

Hail full of grace, the Lord is with thee; Blessed art thou among women. Luke 1/28.

Mary, . . . thou hast found grace with God. Luke 1/30.

Who is she that cometh forth as the morning rising, fair as the moon, bright as the sun? Cant. 6/9.

Thou art the glory of Jerusalem, thou art the joy of Israel, thou art the honour of our people. Judith 15/10.

Blessed art thou, O daughter, by the Lord, the most high God, above all women upon the earth. Judith 13/23.

Thou art all fair, O my love, and there is not a spot in thee. Cant. 4/7.

As the lily among thorns, so is my love among the daughters. Cant. 2/2.

Behold, from henceforth all generations shall call me blessed. Luke 1/48. (See Cant. 6/8.)

The queen stood on thy right hand, in gilded clothing; surrounded with variety. Ps. 44/10.

The most High hath sanctified his own tabernacle. Ps. 45/5.

Lesson Sixth.

ON SIN AND ITS KINDS.

Q. 51.

Is original sin the only kind of sin?

Original sin is not the only kind of sin; there is another kind of sin, which we commit ourselves, called actual sin.

(See 46.)

Who can understand sins? Ps. 18/13.

A just man shall fall seven times. Prov. 24/16.

In many things we all offend. James 3/2.

The Pharisees and the Scribes murmured, saying: This man receiveth sinners, and eateth with them. Luke 15/2.

Every man is tempted by his own concupiscence, being drawn away and allured. Then when concupiscence hath conceived, it bringeth forth sin. James 1/14, 15.

His own iniquities catch the wicked, and he is fast bound with ropes of his own sins. Prov. 5/22.

We have charged both Jews and Greeks, that they are all under sin. Rom. 3/9.

For all have sinned; and do need the glory of God. Rom. 3/23.

If we say that we have not sinned; we make him a liar, and his word is not in us. 1 John 1/10 & 1/8.

There is no man who sinneth not. 3 Kings 8/46; 2 Paral. 6/36; Ecces. 7/21; Exod. 34/7.

Now the works of the flesh are manifest. Gal. 5/19.

And the children of Israel offended the Lord their God with things that were not right. 4 Kings 17/9.

You cannot serve God and mammon. Luke 16/13.

Despise not a man that turneth away from sin, nor reproach him therewith: remember that we are all worthy of reproof. Eccus. 8/6.

Q. 52.

What is actual sin?

Actual sin is any wilful thought, word, deed, or omission contrary to the law of God.

Why do you think evil in your hearts? Matt. 9/4.

Perverse thoughts separate from God. Wis. 1/3.

Evil thoughts are an abomination to the Lord. Prov. 15/26.

For in your heart you work iniquity: your hands forge injustice in the earth. Ps. 57/3.

With all watchfulness keep thy heart, because life issueth out from it. Prov. 4/23. (See Mark 7/21.)

Thefts, covetousness, wickedness, . . . All these evil things come from within, and defile a man. Mark 7/22, 23.

Blessed is the man that hath not slipt by a word out of his mouth, and is not pricked with the remorse of sin. Eccus. 14/1. (See Eccus. 19/17.)

The tongue is a fire, a world of iniquity. James 3/6.

If any man think himself to be religious, not bridling his tongue, but deceiving his own heart, this man's religion is vain. James 1/26.

To him, therefore, who knoweth to do good, and doth it not, to him it is sin. James 4/17.

Whosoever shall keep the whole law, but offend in one point, is become guilty of all. James 2/10.

Q. 53.

How many kinds of actual sin are there?

There are two kinds of actual sin—mortal and venial.

He that knoweth his brother to sin a sin which is not to death, let him ask. 1 John 5/16.

There is a sin unto death. 1 John 5/17.

Why seest thou the mote that is in thy brother's eye; and seest not the beam that is in thy own eye? Matt. 7/3.

Blind guides, who strain out a gnat, and swallow a camel. Matt. 23/24.

Perverse thoughts separate from God. Wis. 1/3.

And that servant who knew the will of his lord, and prepared not himself, and did not according to his will, shall be beaten with many stripes. But he that knew not, and did things worthy of stripes, shall be beaten with few stripes. Luke 12/47, 48.

Where there is no law, neither is there transgression. Rom. 4/15.

Q. 54.

What is mortal sin?

Mortal sin is a grievous offence against the law of God.

All iniquity is sin. And there is a sin unto death. 1 John 5/17.

The mouth that belieth, killeth the soul. Wis. 1/11.

Now the works of the flesh are manifest, which are, fornication, uncleanness, immodesty, luxury, idolatry, witchcrafts, enmities, contentions, emulations, wraths, quarrels, dissensions, sects, envies, murders, drunkenness, revellings, and such like . . . they who do such things, shall not obtain the kingdom of God. Gal. 5/19-21. (See Apoc. 21/8; Ephes. 5/5; Rom. 1/29-32.)

Sin, when it is completed, begetteth death. James 1/15.

Do not err: Neither fornicators, nor idolaters, nor adulterers, nor the effeminate, nor liers with mankind, nor thieves, nor covetous, nor drunkards, nor railers, nor extortioners, shall possess the kingdom of God. 1 Cor. 6/9, 10.

Thy own wickedness shall reprove thee, and thy apostacy shall rebuke thee. Know thou, and see, that it is an evil and a bitter thing for thee, to have left the Lord thy God. Jer. 2/19.

Jerusalem hath grievously sinned, therefore is she become unstable. Lam. 1/8.

Q. 55.

Why is this sin called mortal?

This sin is called mortal because it deprives us of spiritual

life, which is sanctifying grace, and brings everlasting death and damnation on the soul.

They who do such things, shall not obtain the kingdom of God. Gal. 5/21.

They who do such things are worthy of death. Rom. 1/32.

When we were in the flesh, the passions of sins which were by the law, did work in our members, to bring forth fruit unto death. Rom. 7/5.

Sin, when it is completed, begetteth death. James 1/15.

Depart from me, you cursed, into everlasting fire, which was prepared for the devil and his angels. For I was hungry, and you gave me not to eat: I was thirsty, and you gave me not to drink. Matt. 25/41, 42.

Q. 56.

How many things are necessary to make a sin mortal?

To make a sin mortal three things are necessary: a grievous matter, sufficient reflection, and full consent of the will.

If I had not come, and spoken to them, they would not have sin: but now they have no excuse for their sin. John 15/22.

My people have done two evils: they have forsaken me, the fountain of living water, and have digged to themselves cisterns, broken cisterns, that can hold no water. Jer. 2/13.

Before man is life and death, good and evil; that which he shall choose shall be given him. Eccus. 15/18; Jer. 21/8; Deut. 30/15 & 30/19.

God is faithful, who will not suffer you to be tempted above that which you are able. 1 Cor. 10/13.

That servant who knew the will of his lord, and prepared not himself, and did not according to his will, shall be beaten with many stripes. Luke 12/47.

Wo to you Scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites: because you tithe mint, and anise, and cummin, and have left the weightier things of the law, judgment, and mercy, and faith. Matt. 23/23.

He that discerneth, if he eat, is condemned. Rom. 14/23.

It had been better for them not to have known the way of justice, than after they have known it, to turn back from that holy commandment. 2 Pet. 2/21.

If you were blind, you should not have sin: but now you say: We see. Your sin remaineth. John 9/41.

For whosoever have sinned without the law, shall perish without the law: and whosoever have sinned in the law, shall be judged by the law. Rom. 2/12. (See Rom. 5/13.)

Q. 57.

What is venial sin?

Venial sin is a slight offence against the law of God in matters of less importance, or in matters of great importance it is an offence committed without sufficient reflection or full consent of the will.

To sin a sin that is not to death. 1 John 5/16.

He that contemneth small things, shall fall by little and little. Eccus. 19/1.

A just man shall fall seven times. Prov. 24/16.

Noe, . . . was made drunk. Gen. 9/21.

And the indignation of the Lord was enkindled against Oza, and he struck him for his rashness. 2 Kings 6/7.

David's heart struck him, after the people were numbered: . . . I have done exceeding foolishly. 2 Kings 24/10.

There is no man who sinneth not. 3 Kings 8/46.

There is one that slippeth with the tongue, but not from his heart. Eccus. 19/16.

Behold, they that serve him are not steadfast. Job 4/18.

Behold, even the moon doth not shine, and the stars are not pure in his sight. Job 25/5.

Behold, among his saints, none is unchangeable, and the heavens are not pure in his sight. Job 15/15.

How much less man that is rottenness, and the son of man who is a worm? Job 25/6.

Who can say: My heart is clean? Prov. 20/9.

In many things we all offend. James 3/2.

But he that knew not, and did things worthy of stripes, shall be beaten with few stripes. Luke 12/48.

As to these they are less to be blamed. For they perhaps err, seeking God, and desirous to find him. Wis. 13/6.

Q. 58.

Which are the effects of venial sin?

The effects of venial sin are the lessening of the love of God in our heart, the making us less worthy of His help, and the weakening of the power to resist mortal sin.

Your sins have withholden good things from you. Jer. 5/25.

He that comtemneth small things, shall fall by little and little. Eccus. 19/1.

Dying flies spoil the sweetness of the ointment. Ecces. 10/1.

Catch us the little foxes that destroy the vines. Cant. 2/15.

A grain of mustard seed, . . . Which is the least indeed of all seeds: but when it is grown up, it is greater than all herbs, and becometh a tree. Matt. 13/31, 32; Luke 13/19; Mark 4/31, 32.

He that is unjust in that which is little, is unjust also in that which is greater. Luke 16/10.

Behold how small a fire what a great wood it kindleth! James 3/5.

Know you not that a little leaven corrupteth the whole lump? 1 Cor. 5/6; Gal. 5/9.

Q. 59.

Which are the chief sources of sin?

The chief sources of sin are seven: Pride, Covetousness, Lust, Anger, Gluttony, Envy, and Sloth; and they are commonly called capital sins.

PRIDE. (See 185, 1st Beatitude.)

Pride is the beginning of all sin. Eccus. 10/15.

Behold, this was the iniquity of Sodom, thy sister, pride. Ezech. 16/49.

For from it all perdition took its beginning. Tob. 4/14.

The soul that committeth anything through pride . . . shall be cut off from among his people. Num. 15/30.

Thou hast rebuked the proud. Ps. 118/21.

Have they made thee ruler? be not lifted up: be among them as one of them. Eccus. 32/1.

Let not the girded boast himself as the ungirded. 3 Kings 20/11.

God resisteth the proud, and giveth grace to the humble. James 4/6; 1 Pet. 5/5.

Be not wise in thy own conceit. Prov. 3/7.

Where pride is, there also shall be reproach: but where humility is, there also is wisdom. Prov. 11/2.

Pride goeth before destruction: and the spirit is lifted up before a fall. Prov. 16/18.

It is better to be humbled with the meek, than to divide spoils with the proud. Prov. 16/19.

Before destruction, the heart of a man is exalted: and before he is glorified, it is humbled. Prov. 18/12.

Humiliation followeth the proud: and glory shall uphold the humble of spirit. Prov. 29/23.

What hath pride profited us? Wis. 5/8.

Why is earth and ashes proud? Eccus. 10/9.

Pride is hateful before God and men. Eccus. 10/7.

The beginning of the pride of man, is to fall off from God. Eccus. 10/14.

Pride was not made for men. Eccus. 10/22.

Thy arrogancy hath deceived thee, and the pride of thy heart: O thou that dwellest in the clefts of the rock, and endeavorest to lay hold on the height of the hill: but though thou shouldst make thy nest as high as an eagle, I will bring thee down from thence, saith the Lord. Jer. 49/16. (See Ezech. 28/6, 7; Abdias 1/3, 4.)

Wherefore he that thinketh himself to stand, let him take heed lest he fall. 1 Cor. 10/12.

What hast thou that thou hast not received? And if thou hast received, why dost thou glory, as if thou hadst not received it? 1 Cor. 4/7.

I saw Satan, like lightning, falling from heaven. Luke 10/18.

So shall the last be first, and the first last. Matt. 20/16 & 19/30; Mark 10/31; Luke 13/30.

For if any man think himself to be something, whereas he is nothing, he deceiveth himself. Gal. 6/3.

COVETOUSNESS. (See 386.)

There is not a more wicked thing than to love money. Eccus. 10/10.

The desire of money is the root of all evils. 1 Tim. 6/10.

Better is a little with the fear of the Lord, than great treasures without content. Prov. 15/16.

He that is greedy of gain troubleth his own house. Prov. 15/27.

Better is a little with justice, than great revenues with iniquity. Prov. 16/8.

Better is the poor man that walketh in his simplicity, than a rich man that is perverse. Prov. 19/1.

All things obey money. Ecces. 10/19.

But nothing is more wicked than the covetous man. Eccus. 10/9.

Through poverty many have sinned: and he that seeketh to be enriched, turneth away his eye. Eccus. 27/1.

Watching for riches consumeth the flesh. Eccus. 31/1.

A covetous man shall not be satisfied with money: and he that loveth riches, shall reap no fruit from them. Ecces. 5/9.

He that loveth gold shall not be justified. Eccus. 31/5.

Many have been brought to fall for gold. Eccus. 31/6.

Gold is a stumblingblock to them that sacrifice to it: wo to them that eagerly follow after it. Eccus. 31/7.

Hear this, you that crush the poor, and make the needy of the land to fail. Amos 8/4.

You cannot serve God and mammon. Luke 16/13; Matt. 6/24.

Be not anxious for goods unjustly gotten. Eccus. 5/10.

Gold and silver hath destroyed many. Eccus. 8/3.

The ways of every covetous man destroy the souls of the possessors. Prov. 1/19. (See 4 Kings 5/20.)

Go to now, ye rich men, weep and howl in your miseries, which shall come upon you. James 5/1.

Wo to him that gathereth together an evil covetousness to his house, that his nest may be on high. Habac. 2/9.

Lay not up to yourselves treasures on earth: where the

rust and moth consume, and where thieves break through and steal. Matt. 6/19.

Take heed and beware of all covetousness: for a man's life doth not consist in the abundance of things which he possesseth. Luke 12/15.

Let your manners be without covetousness. Heb. 13/5.

LUST. (See 185, 6th Beatitude; 369, 382.)

If you live according to the flesh, you shall die. Rom. 8/13.

Death is come up through our windows. Jer. 9/21.

Walk in the Spirit, and you shall not fulfil the lusts of the flesh. Gal. 5/16. (See Rom. 13/14.)

And Samson said to his father: Take this woman for me, for she hath pleased my eyes. Judges 14/3.

Thy servant Urias, the Hethite, is also slain. 2 Kings 11/21.

By thy body thou (Solomon) wast brought under subjection. Eccus. 47/21.

From whence are wars and contentions among you? Are they not hence, from your concupiscences, which war in your members? James 4/1.

Every man is tempted by his own concupiscence, being drawn away and allured. James 1/14.

When concupiscence hath conceived, it bringeth forth sin. James 1/15.

The wandering of concupiscence overturneth the innocent mind. Wis. 4/12.

How beautiful is the chaste generation with glory! Wis. 4/1.

Go not after thy lusts, but turn away from thy own will. If thou give to thy soul her desires, she will make thee a joy to thy enemies. Eccus. 18/30, 31. (See Rom. 6/12, 13.)

I made a covenant with my eyes, that I would not so much as think upon a virgin. Job 31/1.

The flesh lusteth against the Spirit. Gal. 5/17.

I see another law in my members, fighting against the law of my mind, and captivating me in the law of sin. Rom. 7/23.

He that loveth cleanness of heart, for the grace of his lips shall have the king for his friend. Prov. 22/11.

Dearly beloved, I beseech you as strangers and pilgrims, to refrain yourselves from carnal desires, which war against the soul. 1 Pet. 2/11.

ANGER. (See 185, 2nd and 7th Beatitudes; 368.)

The anger of man worketh not the justice of God. James 1/20.

Anger, indeed, killeth the foolish. Job 5/2.

As coals are to burning coals, and wood to fire, so an angry man stirreth up strife. Prov. 26/21.

Cain was exceedingly angry. Gen. 4/5.

Cease from anger, and leave rage. Ps. 36/8.

A fool immediately sheweth his anger. Prov. 12/16.

He that is impatient, shall suffer damage. Prov. 19/19.

Be not quickly angry: for anger resteth in the bosom of a fool. Ecces. 7/10.

He that is easily stirred up to wrath, shall be more prone to sin. Prov. 29/22.

It is better to dwell in a wilderness, than with a quarrelsome and passionate woman. Prov. 21/19.

Envy and anger shorten a man's days. Eccus. 30/26.

Whosoever is angry with his brother, shall be in danger of the judgment. Matt. 5/22.

Be angry, and sin not. Let not the sun go down upon your anger. Ephes. 4/26.

GLUTTONY.

He that loveth good cheer, shall be in want: he that loveth wine, and fat things, shall not be rich. Prov. 21/17.

Be not in the feast of great drinkers, nor in their revellings, who contribute flesh to eat: because they that give themselves to drinking, and that club together, shall be consumed. Prov. 23/20, 21.

Look not upon the wine. Prov. 23/31.

And be not drunk with wine, wherein is luxury. Ephes. 5/18.

Wine and women make wise men fall off. Eccus. 19/2.

A workman that is a drunkard shall not be rich. Eccus. 19/1.

By surfeiting, many have perished: but he that is temperate, shall prolong life. Eccus. 37/34.

Wo to you that rise up early in the morning, to follow drunkenness. Isai. 5/11.

Wine, and drunkenness, take away the understanding. Osee 4/11.

Wo to you that are filled: for you shall hunger. Luke 6/25.

And the woman saw that the tree was good to eat, . . . and she took of the fruit thereof, and did eat. Gen. 3/6.

And when they have eaten, and are full and fat, they will turn away after strange gods. Deut. 31/20.

Give not to kings, O Lemuel, give not wine to kings. Prov. 31/4.

The priest and the prophet have been ignorant through drunkenness; they are swallowed up with wine; they have gone astray in drunkenness. Isai. 28/7; Micheas 3/5.

Do not err: . . . drunkards . . . shall (not) possess the kingdom of God. 1 Cor. 6/9, 10.

Let us walk honestly as in the day: not in rioting and drunkenness. Rom. 13/13.

Wine drunken with excess raiseth quarrels, and wrath, and many ruins. Eccus. 31/38.

Wo to you that are mighty to drink wine, and stout men at drunkenness. Isai. 5/22.

Take heed to yourselves, lest, perhaps, your hearts be overcharged with surfeiting, and drunkenness. Luke 21/34.

Many walk, of whom I have told you often, (and now tell you weeping,) that they are enemies of the cross of Christ; whose end is destruction; whose God is their belly; and whose glory is in their shame. Philip. 3/18, 19.

Jesus . . . said: I thirst. John 19/28.

ENVY.

If I have been glad at the downfall of him that hated me, and have rejoiced that evil had found him . . . let thistles grow up to me instead of wheat. Job 31/29, 40.

He that rejoiceth at another man's ruin, shall not be unpunished. Prov. 17/5.

Envy not the glory and riches of a sinner: for thou knowest not what his ruin shall be. Eccus. 9/16.

The eye of the envious is wicked. Eccus. 14/8.

Is thy eye evil, because I am good? Matt. 20/15.

By the envy of the devil, death came into the world. Wis. 2/24.

BOWDOIN LIBRARY

Envy and anger shorten a man's days. Eccus. 30/26.

Be not emulous of evildoers: nor envy them that work iniquity. Ps. 36/1.

They have given David ten thousands, and to me (Saul) they have given but a thousand. . . . And Saul became David's enemy. 1 Kings 18/8, 29.

For envy they had delivered him up. Matt. 27/18.

Some indeed even out of envy and contention: . . . preach Christ. Philip. 1/15.

Envy is the rottenness of the bones. Prov. 14/30.

SLOTH.

Idleness hath taught much evil. Eccus. 33/29.

Go to the ant, O sluggard, and consider her ways, and learn wisdom. Prov. 6/6.

The slothful hand hath wrought poverty: but the hand of industry getteth riches. Prov. 10/4.

He that is loose and slack in his work, is the brother of him that wasteth his own works. Prov. 18/9.

An idle soul shall suffer hunger. Prov. 19/15.

Because of the cold the sluggard would not plough: he shall beg, therefore, in the summer. Prov. 20/4.

Man is born to labour, and the bird to fly. Job 5/7.

The Lord God took man, and put him into the paradise of pleasure, to dress it, and to keep it. Gen. 2/15.

In the sweat of thy face shalt thou eat bread. Gen. 3/19.

If any man will not work, neither let him eat. 2 Thess. 3/10.

Hate not laborious works, nor husbandry ordained by the Most High. Eccus. 7/16.

In all thy works be quick, and no infirmity shall come to thee. Eccus. 31/27.

Work with your hands, as we commanded you: . . . want nothing of any man's. 1 Thess. 4/11.

Neither did we eat any man's bread for nothing, but in labour and in toil we worked night and day, lest we should be chargeable to any of you. 2 Thess. 3/8; 1 Thess. 2/9.

Six days shalt thou labour. Exod. 20/9.

Thou shalt eat the labours of thy hands. Ps. 127/2.

She hath sought wool and flax, and hath wrought by the counsel of her hands . . . and hath not eaten her bread idle. Prov. 31/13, 27.

Lesson Seventh.

ON THE INCARNATION AND REDEMPTION.

Q. 60.

Did God abandon man after he fell into sin?

God did not abandon man after he fell into sin, but promised him a Redeemer, who was to satisfy for man's sin and reopen to him the gates of heaven.

God himself will come and will save you. Isai. 35/4.

God shall come manifestly: our God shall come, and shall not keep silence. Ps. 49/3.

Thus saith the Lord God: Behold, I myself will seek my sheep, and will visit them. Ezech. 34/11.

I will deliver them out of the hand of death. I will redeem them from death. Osee 13/14.

Behold, the Lord will come forth out of his place: and he will come down. Micheas 1/3.

THE DESIRED OF ALL NATIONS SHALL COME. Aggeus. 2/8.

Behold, I come, and I will dwell in the midst of thee, saith the Lord. Zach. 2/10.

Rejoice, . . . O daughter of Jerusalem: BEHOLD, THY KING will come to thee, the just and saviour. Zach. 9/9; Matt. 21/5.

There shall come forth a rod out of the root of Jesse. Isai. 11/1.

The Lord thy God will raise up to thee a PROPHET of thy nation, and of thy brethren, like unto me: him thou shalt hear. Deut. 18/15; Acts 3/22. (See John 1/45.)

Until the desire of the everlasting hills should come. Gen. 49/26.

We all die, and, like waters that return no more, we fall

down into the earth: neither will God have a soul to perish, but recalleth; meaning that he that is cast off should not altogether perish. 2 Kings 14/14.

Behold, the days come, saith the Lord, and I will raise up to David a just branch. Jer. 23/5.

A virgin shall conceive, and bear a son, and his name shall be called Emmanuel. Isai. 7/14; Matt. 1/23.

I will put enmities between thee and the woman, and thy seed and her seed. Gen. 3/15. (See Luke 1/31.)

In thee (Abraham) shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed. Gen. 12/3 & 22/18 & 26/4 & 28/4.

The sceptre shall not be taken away from Juda, nor a ruler from his thigh, till he come that is to be sent, and he shall be the expectation of nations. Gen. 49/10.

From the going forth of the word, to build up Jerusalem again, unto Christ, the prince, there shall be seven weeks, and sixty two weeks. Dan. 9/25.

Behold, I will close their wounds, and give them health, and I will cure them: and I will reveal to them the prayer of peace and truth. Jer. 33/6.

Give praise, O ye heavens, and rejoice, O earth; . . . because the Lord hath comforted his people, and will have mercy on his poor ones. Isai. 49/13.

I will have mercy on the house of Juda, and I will save them by the Lord their God. Osee 1/7.

He became their saviour. In all their affliction he was not troubled, and the angel of his presence saved them: in his love, and in his mercy he redeemed them, and he carried them, and lifted them up all the days of old. Isai. 63/8, 9.

He was wounded for our iniquities, he was bruised for our sins: the chastisement of our peace was upon him, and by his bruises we are healed. Isai. 53/5.

To them that dwelt in the region of the shadow of death, light is risen. Isai. 9/2.

Thou spokest in a vision to thy saints, and saidst: I have laid help upon one that is mighty, and have exalted one chosen out of my people. Ps. 88/20.

The God of gods shall be seen in Sion. Ps. 83/8.

He appeared to take away our sins. 1 John 3/5.

For this purpose the Son of God appeared, that he might destroy the works of the devil. 1 John 3/8.

For this day is born to you a SAVIOUR, who is Christ the Lord. Luke 2/11; Isai. 9/6. (See Isai. 62/11.)

God sent his Son, . . . that he might redeem them who were under the law. Gal. 4/4.

Jerusalem, Jerusalem, thou that killest the prophets, and stonest them that are sent unto thee, how often would I have gathered together thy children, as the hen doth gather her chickens under her wings, and thou wouldst not? Matt. 23/37; Luke 13/34.

Q. 61.

Who is the Redeemer?

Our Blessed Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ is the Redeemer of mankind.

(See 60, 62; 12, Art. 2.)

Our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ. 2 Pet. 2/20.

Thou shalt call his name Jesus: for he shall save his people. Matt. 1/21; Luke 1/31 & 2/21.

For this day is born to us a SAVIOUR, who is Christ the Lord. Luke 2/11.

Jesus, who hath delivered us. 1 Thess. 1/10.

I am he that blot out thy iniquities. Isai. 43/25.

Behold the Lamb of God, behold him who taketh away the sin of the world. John 1/29.

We have seen and do testify, that the Father hath sent his Son to be the Saviour. 1 John 4/14.

I am, I am the Lord: and there is no saviour besides me. Isai. 43/11; Osee 13/4.

I have blotted out thy iniquities as a cloud, and thy sins as a mist: return to me, for I have redeemed thee. Isai. 44/22.

Thou shalt know that I am the Lord, thy Saviour, and thy Redeemer, the mighty One of Jacob. Isai. 60/16.

There hath stood one in the midst of you, whom you know not. The same is he that shall come after me, who is preferred before me. John 1/26, 27.

When the fulness of the time was come, God sent his Son, made of a woman, made under the law: that he might redeem them who were under the law. Gal. 4/4, 5.

Knowing that you were not redeemed with corruptible

things . . . but with the precious blood of Christ, as of a lamb unspotted and undefiled. 1 Pet. 1/18, 19.

No brother can redeem, nor shall man redeem: . . . But God will redeem my soul. Ps. 48/8, 16.

Behold, God is my Saviour. Isai. 12/2.

God himself will come and will save you. Isai. 35/4.

I have made you, and I will bear: I will carry, and will save. Isai. 46/4.

Our redeemer, the Lord of hosts is his name, the holy One of Israel. Isai. 47/4.

Thou, O Lord, art our father, our redeemer, from everlasting is thy name. Isai. 63/16.

Burnt-offering and sin-offering thou didst not require: then said I, Behold I come. Ps. 39/7, 8.

In this we have known the charity of God, because he hath laid down his life for us. 1 John 3/16.

I will save my flock, and it shall be no more a spoil; . . . AND I WILL SET UP ONE SHEPHERD OVER THEM. Ezech. 34/22, 23.

O children of Sion, rejoice, and be joyful in the Lord your God: because he hath given you a teacher of justice. Joel 2/23.

The Lord thy God in the midst of thee is mighty, he will save. Soph. 3/17.

For the Son of Man is come to save that which was lost. . . . Even so it is not the will of your Father, who is in heaven, that one of these little ones should perish. Matt. 18/11, 14; Luke 19/10.

Blessed be the Lord God of Israel: because he hath visited and wrought the redemption of his people. Luke 1/68.

For God so loved the world, as to give his only begotten Son; . . . For God sent not his Son into the world to judge the world, but that the world may be saved by him. John 3/16, 17. (See 1 John 4/9.)

God, according to his promise, hath raised up to Israel a Saviour, Jesus. Acts 13/23.

The great God and our Saviour Jesus Christ: who gave himself for us, that he might redeem us from all iniquity. Titus 2/13, 14.

Jesus Christ, . . . who hath loved us, and washed us from our sins in his own blood. Apoc. 1/5; 1 John 1/7.

For by him we have access both in one Spirit to the Father. Ephes. 2/18.

For you are bought with a great price. 1 Cor. 6/20 & 7/23.

In whom (his beloved Son) we have redemption through his blood. Ephes. 1/7; Col. 1/14.

The Saviour, our Lord Jesus Christ. Philip. 3/20.

And through him to reconcile all things unto himself, making peace through the blood of his cross. Col. 1/20.

For there is one God, and one mediator of God and men, the man Christ Jesus: who gave himself a redemption for all. 1 Tim. 2/5, 6.

To the only God our Saviour through Jesus Christ our Lord, be glory. Jude 1/25.

Q. 62.

What do you believe of Jesus Christ?

I believe that Jesus Christ is the son of God, the second Person of the Blessed Trinity, true God and true man.

(See 25, 63, 64, 116; 12, Art. 2.)

We have believed and have known that thou art Christ, the Son of God. John 6/70.

Yea, Lord, I have believed that thou art Christ, the Son of the living God. John 11/27.

Simon Peter answered, and said: Thou art Christ, the Son of the living God. Matt. 16/16; Mark 8/29.

What think you of Christ? whose son is he? . . . If David then call him Lord, how is he his son? Matt. 22/42, 45; Mark 12/35, 37; Luke 20/41, 44.

Art thou the Christ, the Son of the blessed God? And Jesus said to him: I am. Mark 14/61, 62.

Who is this, (thinkest thou,) that both wind and sea obey him? Mark 4/40; Matt. 8/27; Luke 8/25.

God our Saviour. 1 Tim. 2/3.

A voice came out of the cloud, saying: This is my beloved Son. Mark 9/6; Luke 3/22 & 9/35; Matt. 3/17.

Is not this the carpenter, the son of Mary? Mark 6/3.

Therefore also the Holy which shall be born of thee, shall be called the Son of God. Luke 1/35.

A light to the revelation of the Gentiles, and the glory of thy people Israel. Luke 2/32; Isai. 49/6.

Jesus said to them: Amen, amen I say to you, before Abraham was made, I am. John 8/58.

God said to Moses: I AM WHO AM. Exod. 3/14.

My brethren, . . . who are Israelites, . . . of whom is Christ, according to the flesh, who is over all things, God, blessed for ever. Rom. 9/3-5.

I know who thou art, the Holy One of God. Mark 1/24 & 3/12; Luke 4/34.

I saw, and I gave testimony, that this is the Son of God. John 1/34.

Thomas answered, and said to him: My Lord, and my God. John 20/28.

I believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God. Acts 8/37.

Because in him, it hath well-pleased the Father, that all fulness should dwell. Col. 1/19.

Christ the power of God, and the wisdom of God. 1 Cor. 1/24.

Thou art my son, this day have I begotten thee. Ps. 2/7; Acts 13/33; Heb. 1/5 & 5/5.

He . . . calleth himself the Son of God. Wis. 2/13; Matt. 27/43.

He . . . glorieth that he hath God for his Father. Wis. 2/16.

And whereas indeed he was the Son of God, he learned obedience by the things which he suffered. Heb. 5/8.

Whosoever shall confess that Jesus is the Son of God, God abideth in him, and he in God. 1 John 4/15.

Dost thou believe in the Son of God? . . . And he said: I believe, Lord. And falling down, he adored him. John 9/35, 38.

His beloved Son, in whom we have redemption through his blood, . . . according to the riches of his grace. Ephes. 1/6, 7.

Indeed this was the Son of God. Matt. 27/54.

For thou art my God, my Saviour; and on thee have I waited all the day long. Ps. 24/5.

Nathaniel answered him, and said, Rabbi, thou art the Son of God, thou art the king of Israel. John 1/49.

Thy redeemer, the holy one of Israel, shall be called the God of all the earth. Isai. 54/5.

Verily, thou art a hidden God, the God of Israel, the saviour. Isai. 45/15.

The Lord he is God. Ps. 99/3.

A CHILD IS BORN to us, and a son is given to us, and the government is upon his shoulder: and his name shall be called, Wonderful, Counsellor, God the Mighty, the Father of the world to come, the Prince of peace. Isai. 9/6.

This man shall be our peace. Micheas 5/5.

JESUS CHRIST, the son of David, the son of Abraham. Matt. 1/1.

I know that the Messias cometh. . . . Jesus saith to her: I am he who am speaking with thee. John 4/25, 26.

If you did believe Moses, you would perhaps believe me also. For he wrote of me. John 5/46.

In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God. John 1/1.

Thou art a priest for ever, according to the order of Melchisedech. Heb. 5/6 & 7/17; Ps. 109/4.

The Author of life. Acts 3/15.

The author and finisher of faith. Heb. 12/2.

Christ, who is the image of God. 2 Cor. 4/4.

And crying, with a loud voice, he said: What have I to do with thee, Jesus, the Son of the most high God? Mark 5/7; Luke 4/41 & 8/28.

The devils also believe and tremble. James 2/19.

Christ Jesus that died, yea, that is risen also again, who is at the right hand of God, who also maketh intercession for us. Rom. 8/34.

These are written, that you may believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God. John 20/31.

I will joy in God, my Jesus. Habac. 3/18.

Q. 63.

Why is Jesus Christ true God?

Jesus Christ is true God because He is the true and only Son of God the Father.

(See 25, 61, 62, 67; 12, Art. 2.)

Thou art my son, this day have I begotten thee. Ps. 2/7.

Thou art Christ, the Son of the living God. Matt. 16/16.

I and the Father are one. John 10/30.

He that seeth me, seeth the Father also. John 14/9.

For in him dwelleth all the fulness of the Godhead corporally. Col. 2/9. (See Col. 1/19.)

The Father is in me, and I in the Father. John 10/38.

All things whatsoever the Father hath, are mine. John 16/15. (See Matt. 28/18.)

That all men may honour the Son, as they honour the Father. John 5/23.

In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God. John 1/1.

We saw his glory, the glory as it were of the only-begotten of the Father. John 1/14.

Before Abraham was made, I am. John 8/58.

The power of the most High shall overshadow thee. And therefore also the Holy which shall be born of thee, shall be called the Son of God. Luke 1/35.

This is the Son of God. John 1/34.

This is my beloved Son. Matt. 3/17; Luke 3/22.

Believe you not that I am in the Father, and the Father in me? John 14/11.

Go and relate to John what you have heard and seen. Matt. 11/4.

Believe for the very works' sake. John 14/12 & 10/38.

They found the child with Mary, his mother, and falling down they adored him. Matt. 2/11.

They shall call his name Emmanuel, which being interpreted is, God with us. Matt. 1/23.

He shall be great, and shall be called the Son of the most High. Luke 1/32.

Christ, who is the image of God. 2 Cor. 4/4; Col. 1/15.

God our Saviour. 1 Tim. 2/3.

We have believed and have known that thou art Christ, the Son of God. John 6/70.

Q. 64.

Why is Jesus Christ true man?

Jesus Christ is true man because He is the Son of the Blessed Virgin Mary and has a body and soul like ours.

(See 68, 69; 12, Art. 3.)

The Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us. John 1/14.

A virgin shall conceive, and bear a son, and his name shall be called Emmanuel. Isai. 7/14.

God shall come manifestly. Ps. 49/3.

Thou shalt . . . bring forth a son; and thou shalt call his name Jesus. Luke 1/31.

She brought forth her first-born son: and . . . called his name Jesus. Matt. 1/25; Luke 2/7.

When the fulness of the time was come, God sent his Son, made of a woman, made under the law. Gal. 4/4.

Concerning his Son, who was made to him of the seed of David, according to the flesh. Rom. 1/3.

Of the seed of Abraham he taketh hold. Heb. 2/16.

Mary, of whom was born JESUS, who is called CHRIST. Matt. 1/16.

Blessed is the fruit of thy womb. Luke 1/42.

And whence is this to me, that the mother of my Lord should come to me? Luke 1/43.

There was a marriage in Cana of Galilee: and the mother of Jesus was there. John 2/1.

Is not this the carpenter, the son of Mary? Mark 6/3.

Have mercy on us, O Son of David. Matt. 9/27.

Many seducers are gone out into the world, who confess not that Jesus Christ is come in the flesh. 2 John 1/7.

O expectation of Israel, the Saviour thereof in time of trouble: why wilt thou be as a stranger in the land, and as a wayfaring man turning in to lodge? Jer. 14/8.

Because the children are partakers of flesh and blood, he also himself in like manner hath been partaker of the same. Heb. 2/14.

It behoved him in all things to be made like unto his brethren. Heb. 2/17.

Christ . . . suffered in the flesh. 1 Pet. 4/1.

My soul is sorrowful even unto death. Matt. 26/38.

He (Joseph) went to Pilate, and asked the body of Jesus. Matt. 27/58.

Hereafter you shall see the Son of Man sitting on the right hand of the power of God. Matt. 26/64.

Q. 65.

How many natures are there in Jesus Christ?

In Jesus Christ there are two natures, the nature of God and the nature of man.

(See 62, 63, 64.)

In him dwelleth all the fulness of the Godhead corporally. Col. 2/9.

I know who thou art, the Holy One of God. Mark 1/24.

Some said: He is a good man. John 7/12.

Son of David. Matt. 9/27 & 1/1.

Son of the living God. Matt. 16/16; John 6/70.

Son of Man. Matt. 26/64.

Jesus, Son of God. Matt. 8/29. (See Mark 1/1.)

O Lord, thou Son of David. Matt. 15/22.

Jesus, the Son of the most high God. Mark 5/7.

Is not this the carpenter, the son of Mary? Mark 6/3.

How came this man by all these things? and what wisdom is this that is given to him, and such mighty works as are wrought by his hands? Mark 6/2.

All things were created by him and in him; and he is before all, and by him all things consist. Col. 1/16, 17; John 1/3.

Who being in the form of God, thought it not robbery to be equal with God: but emptied himself, taking the form of a servant, being made in the likeness of men, and in habit found as a man. Philip. 2/6, 7.

My brethren, . . . who are Israelites, . . . of whom is Christ, according to the flesh, who is over all things, God, blessed for ever. Rom. 9/3-5.

Because he is the Son of Man . . . all that are in the graves shall hear the voice of the Son of God. John 5/27, 28.

Q. 66.

Is Jesus Christ more than one person?
No, Jesus Christ is but one Divine Person.

(See 25, 62-65.)

The Pharisees being gathered together, Jesus asked them, saying: What think you of Christ? whose son is he? They say to him: David's. He saith to them: How then doth David in spirit call him Lord, saying: The Lord said to my Lord, Sit on my right hand? Matt. 22/41-44; Mark 12/35-37; Luke 20/41-44; Ps. 109/1.

All kings of the earth shall adore him: all nations shall serve him. Ps. 71/11.

Jesus Christ, who is the faithful witness, the first begotten of the dead, and the prince of the kings of the earth. Apoc. 1/5.

Every spirit that dissolveth Jesus, is not of God. 1 John 4/3.

Q. 67.

Was Jesus Christ always God?

Jesus Christ was always God, as He is the second Person of the Blessed Trinity, equal to His Father from all eternity.

(See 25, 62, 63; 12, Art. 2.)

From the womb before the day-star I begot thee. Ps. 109/3.

Before Abraham was made, I am. John 8/58.

I and the Father are one. John 10/30.

In the beginning was the Word, . . . and the Word was God. John 1/1.

This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased. Matt. 17/5 & 3/17.

Who . . . thought it not robbery to be equal with God. Philip. 2/6.

Therefore, the Jews sought the more to kill him, because he did not only break the sabbath, but also said God was his Father, making himself equal to God. John 5/18; Wis. 2/13.

I am not alone, but I and the Father that sent me. John 8/16.

Now glorify thou me, O Father, with thyself, with the glory which I had, before the world was, with thee. John 17/5.

Father, I will that where I am, they also whom thou hast given me may be with me: that they may see my glory which thou hast given me, because thou hast loved me before the creation of the world. John 17/24.

Who is the image of the invisible God, the first-born of every creature: for in him were all things created in heaven and on earth, visible and invisible, . . . all things were created by him and in him: and he is before all, and by him all things consist. Col. 1/15-17.

His going forth is from the beginning, from the days of eternity. Micheas 5/2.

Q. 68.

Was Jesus Christ always man?

Jesus Christ was not always man, but became man at the time of His Incarnation.

(See 64; 12, Art. 3.)

When the fulness of the time was come, God sent his Son, made of a woman. Gal. 4/4.

The Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us. John 1/14.

For God so loved the world, as to give his only begotten Son. John 3/16; 1 John 4/9.

For this was I born, and for this came I into the world. John 18/37.

Jesus, therefore, was born . . . in the days of King Herod. Matt. 2/1.

Q. 69.

What do you mean by the Incarnation?

By the Incarnation I mean that the Son of God was made man.

(See 12, Art. 2.)

The Word was made flesh. John 1/14.

God sent his Son, made of a woman. Gal. 4/4.

Christ . . . being in the form of God, . . . emptied himself, taking the form of a servant, being made in the likeness of men, and in habit found as a man. Philip. 2/5-7.

God shall come manifestly. Ps. 49/3.

This is our God, . . . he was seen upon earth, and conversed with men. Baruch 3/36, 38; Isai. 25/9.

Wherefore it behoved him in all things to be made like unto his brethren, . . . that he might be a propitiation for the sins of the people. Heb. 2/17.

Because the children are partakers of flesh and blood, he also himself in like manner hath been partaker of the same. Heb. 2/14.

God hath visited his people. Luke 7/16.

But we see Jesus, who was made a little lower than the angels, for the suffering of death, crowned with glory and honour. Heb. 2/9.

For God so loved the world, as to give his only begotten Son. John 3/16; 1 John 4/9.

Yea, Lord, I have believed that thou art Christ, the Son of the living God, who art come into this world. John 11/27.

The Son of God appeared. 1 John 3/8.

God sending his own Son, in the likeness of sinful flesh, and of sin hath condemned sin in the flesh. Rom. 8/3.

Many seducers are gone out into the world, who confess not that Jesus Christ is come in the flesh. 2 John 1/7.

Q. 70.

How was the Son of God made man?

The Son of God was conceived and made man by the power of the Holy Ghost, in the womb of the Blessed Virgin Mary.

(See 12, Art. 3.)

The Holy Ghost shall come upon thee, and the power of the most High shall overshadow thee. And therefore also the Holy which shall be born of thee, shall be called the Son of God. Luke 1/35.

Behold, thou shalt conceive in thy womb, and shalt bring forth a son; and thou shalt call his name Jesus. Luke 1/31; Isai. 7/14.

Now the generation of Christ was in this wise. When as his mother Mary was espoused to Joseph, before they came together, she was found with child of the Holy Ghost. Matt. 1/18.

Q. 71.

Is the Blessed Virgin Mary truly the Mother of God?

The Blessed Virgin Mary is truly the Mother of God, because the same Divine Person who is the Son of God is also the Son of the Blessed Virgin Mary.

A virgin shall conceive, and bear a son, and his name shall be called Emmanuel. Isai. 7/14; Matt. 1/23.

Behold, thou shalt conceive in thy womb, and shalt bring forth a son; and thou shalt call his name Jesus. He shall be great, and shall be called the Son of the most High. Luke 1/31, 32.

And therefore also the Holy which shall be born of thee, shall be called the Son of God. Luke 1/35.

His mother Mary was espoused to Joseph. Matt. 1/18.

Joseph, Son of David, fear not to take unto thee Mary, thy wife: for that which is conceived in her, is of the Holy Ghost. Matt. 1/20.

Whence is this to me, that the mother of my Lord should come to me? Luke 1/43.

And Mary said: My soul doth magnify the Lord: and my spirit hath rejoiced in God my Saviour. Luke 1/46, 47.

And entering into the house, they found the child with Mary, his mother, and falling down they adored him. Matt. 2/11.

A CHILD IS BORN to us, . . . and his name shall be called, Wonderful, Counsellor, God the Mighty. Isai. 9/6.

Blessed is the womb that bore thee, and the paps that gave thee suck. Luke 11/27.

And his mother said to him: Son, why hast thou done so to us? Luke 4/48.

There was a marriage in Cana of Galilee: and the mother of Jesus was there. John 2/1.

His mother and his brethren came; and standing without, sent unto him. Mark 3/31; Matt. 12/46.

There stood by the cross of Jesus, his mother. John 19/25.

When Jesus, therefore, had seen his mother, and the disciple standing whom he loved, he saith to his mother: Woman, behold thy son. John 19/26.

Is not his mother called Mary? Matt. 13/55; Mark 6/3.

He that made me, rested in my tabernacle. Eccus. 24/12.

Q. 72.

Did the Son of God become man immediately after the sin of our first parents?

The son of God did not become man immediately after the sin of our first parents, but was promised to them as a Redeemer.

(See 60.)

When the fulness of the time was come, God sent his Son, made of a woman. Gal. 4/4.

Jesus, therefore, was born in Bethlehem of Juda, in the days of king Herod. Matt. 2/1.

(Christ) . . . foreknown indeed before the foundation of the world, but manifested in the last times for you. 1 Pet. 1/20.

I shall see him, but not now: I shall behold him, but not near. A STAR SHALL RISE out of Jacob, and a sceptre shall spring up from Israel. Num. 24/17.

The Lord thy God will raise up to thee a PROPHET of thy nation, and of thy brethren. Deut. 18/15.

God shall come manifestly. Ps. 49/3.

I will perform the good word that I have spoken to the house of Israel. . . . I will make the bud of justice to spring forth unto David, and he shall do judgment and justice in the earth. In those days shall Juda be saved, . . . and this is the name that they shall call him: The Lord, our just one. Jer. 33/14-16.

The sceptre shall not be taken away from Juda, nor a ruler from his thigh, till he come that is to be sent, and he shall be the expectation of nations. Gen. 49/10.

Know thou, therefore, and take notice: that, from the going forth of the word, to build up Jerusalem again, unto Christ, the prince, there shall be seven weeks, and sixty two weeks. Dan. 9/25.

Q. 73.

How could they be saved who lived before the Son of God became man?

They who lived before the Son of God became man could be saved by believing in a Redeemer to come, and by keeping the Commandments.

They drank of the spiritual rock that followed them, and the rock was Christ. 1 Cor. 10/4.

For until the law sin was in the world: but it was not imputed, when the law was not. But death reigned from Adam unto Moses, even over them also who have not sinned after the similitude of the transgression of Adam. Rom. 5/13, 14.

All these died according to faith, not having received the promises, but beholding them afar off, and saluting them, and confessing that they are pilgrims and strangers on the earth. Heb. 11/13.

Now faith is the substance of things to be hoped for, the evidence of things that appear not. For by this the ancients obtained a testimony. Heb. 11/1, 2.

Abraham believed God, and it was reputed to him to justice. James 2/23; Gen. 15/6; Rom. 4/3; Gal. 3/6.

Before the faith came, we were kept under the law, shut up unto that faith which was to be revealed. Wherefore the law was our pedagogue in Christ; that we might be justified by faith. Gal. 3/23, 24.

They cried to thee, and they were saved: they trusted in thee, and were not confounded. Ps. 21/6.

O God, our saviour, who art the hope of all the ends of the earth. Ps. 64/6.

Q. 74.

On what day was the Son of God conceived and made man?

The Son of God was conceived and made man on Annunciation day—the day on which the Angel Gabriel announced to the Blessed Virgin Mary that she was to be the Mother of God.

A virgin shall conceive, and bear a son, and his name shall be called Emmanuel. Isai. 7/14.

The angel Gabriel was sent from God into a city of Galilee, . . . to a virgin espoused to a man whose name was Joseph, . . . and the virgin's name was Mary. Luke 1/26, 27.

And the angel said to her: . . . Behold, thou shalt conceive in thy womb, and shalt bring forth a son; and thou shalt call his name Jesus. Luke 1/30, 31.

The power of the most High shall overshadow thee. And therefore also the Holy which shall be born of thee, shall be called the Son of God. Luke 1/35.

And the Word was made flesh. John 1/14.

Q. 75.

On what day was Christ born?

Christ was born on Christmas day in a stable at Bethlehem, nearly nineteen hundred years ago.

Jesus, therefore, was born in Bethlehem of Juda, in the days of king Herod. Matt. 2/1.

Doth not the scripture say: That Christ cometh of the seed of David, and from Bethlehem? John 7/42.

And thou, Bethlehem Ephrata, art a little one among the thousands of Juda: out of thee shall he come forth unto me that is to be the ruler in Israel. Micheas 5/2; Matt. 2/6.

And she brought forth her first-born son, and wrapped him up in swaddling-clothes, and laid him in a manger: because there was no room for them in the inn. Luke 2/7.

This day is born to you a Saviour, who is Christ the Lord, in the city of David. Luke 2/11.

Q. 76.

How long did Christ live on earth?

Christ lived on earth about thirty-three years, and led a most holy life in poverty and suffering.

And Jesus himself (on entering public life) was beginning about the age of thirty years. Luke 3/23.

After sixty-two weeks, Christ shall be slain. Dan. 9/24.

Who went about doing good. Acts 10/38.

He hath done all things well. Mark 7/37.

Indeed this was a just man. Luke 23/47.

The foxes have holes, and the birds of the air nests: but the Son of Man hath not where to lay his head. Matt. 8/20; Luke 9/58.

Q. 77.

Why did Christ live so long on earth?

Christ lived so long on earth to show us the way to heaven by His teachings and example.

For God so loved the world, as to give His only begotten Son; that whosoever believeth in him, may not perish, but may have life everlasting. John 3/16.

For God sent not his Son into the world to judge the world, but that the world may be saved by him. John 3/17.

He went through the villages round about teaching. Mark 6/6.

He taught in their synagogues. Luke 4/15.

They shall all be taught of God. John 6/45; Isai. 54/13.

Who will have all men to be saved, and to come to the knowledge of the truth. 1 Tim. 2/4.

For I have given you an example, that as I have done to you, so you do also. John 13/15.

My meat is to do the will of him that sent me, that I may perfect his work. John 4/34.

Did you not know, that I must be about my Father's business? Luke 2/49.

I am come, that they may have life, and may have it more abundantly. John 10/10.

For the Son of Man is come to seek and to save that which was lost. Luke 19/10; Matt. 18/11.

To other cities also I must preach the kingdom of God: for therefore am I sent. Luke 4/43.

For this came I into the world: that I should give testimony to the truth. John 18/37.

For this purpose the Son of God appeared, that he might destroy the works of the devil. 1 John 3/8.

I have given thee to be the light of the Gentiles. Isai. 49/6 & 42/6; Acts 13/47. (See Ps. 97/2.)

Lesson Eighth.

ON OUR LORD'S PASSION, DEATH, RESURRECTION, AND ASCENSION.

Q. 78.

What did Jesus Christ suffer?

Jesus Christ suffered a bloody sweat, a cruel scourging, was crowned with thorns, and was crucified.

(See 12, Art. 4.)

The Son of Man must suffer many things, and be rejected by the ancients, . . . and be killed. Luke 9/22.

He shall be delivered to the Gentiles, and shall be mocked, and scourged, and spit upon: . . . they will put him to death. Luke 18/32, 33.

And they shall mock him, and spit on him, and scourge him, and kill him. Mark 10/34.

From that time Jesus began to shew to his disciples, that he must go to Jerusalem, and suffer many things from the ancients, and Scribes, and chief priests, and be put to death. Matt. 16/21; Matt. 17/21; Luke 9/44.

Behold, we go up to Jerusalem, and the Son of Man shall be betrayed to the chief priests and the Scribes, and they shall condemn him to death. And shall deliver him to the Gentiles, to be mocked, and scourged, and crucified. Matt. 20/18, 19.

And they shall say to him: What are these wounds in the midst of thy hands? And he shall say: With these I was wounded in the house of them that loved me. Zach. 13/6.

He shall give his cheek to him that striketh him, he shall be filled with reproaches. Lam. 3/30.

I have given my body to the strikers, and my cheeks to them that plucked them: I have not turned away my face from them that rebuked me, and spit upon me. Isai. 50/6; Mark 14/65; Luke 22/63, 64; Matt. 26/67.

With a rod shall they strike the cheek of the judge of Israel. Micheas 5/1; Mark 15/19.

Strike the shepherd, and the sheep shall be scattered. Zach. 13/7; Matt. 26/31; Mark 14/27.

I have trodden the wine-press alone. Isai. 63/3.

Whom hast thou reproached, and whom hast thou blasphemed? against whom hast thou exalted thy voice, and lifted up thy eyes on high? against the Holy One of Israel. 4 Kings 19/22. (See Isai. 1/4.)

And they weighed for my wages thirty pieces of silver. Zach. 11/12; Matt. 26/15 & 27/9. (See Isai. 13/12.)

They shall look upon me whom they have pierced. Zach. 12/10; John 19/37.

After sixty-two weeks, Christ shall be slain. Dan. 9/26.

Why have the Gentiles raged, and the people devised vain things? Ps. 2/1; Acts 4/25. (See Ps. 34/15.)

The kings of the earth stood up, and the princes met together, against the Lord, and against his Christ. Ps. 2/2; Acts 4/26.

Let us, therefore, lie in wait for the just, because he is not for our turn, and he is contrary to our doings, and upbraideth us with transgressions of the law, and divulgeth against us the sins of our way of life. He . . . calleth himself the son of God. . . . Let us examine him by outrages and tortures, that we may know his meekness, and try his patience. Let us condemn him to a most shameful death: for there shall be respect had unto him by his words. Wis. 2/12, 13, 19, 20. (See Matt. 27/43; Jer. 11/19.)

The mouth of the wicked and the mouth of the deceitful man is opened against me. They have spoken against me with deceitful tongues; and they have compassed me about with words of hatred; and have fought against me without cause. Ps. 108/2, 3.

For many dogs have encompassed me: the counsel of the malignant hath besieged me. They have dug my

hands and feet: they have numbered all my bones. And they have looked and stared upon me. They parted my garments amongst them; and upon my vesture they cast lots. Ps. 21/17-19.

For even the man of my peace, in whom I trusted, who eat my bread, hath greatly supplanted me. Ps. 40/10; John 13/18; Acts 1/16.

Despised, and the most abject of men, a man of sorrows, and acquainted with infirmity: . . . Surely he hath borne our infirmities, and carried our sorrows: . . . he was wounded for our iniquities, he was bruised for our sins . . . he shall be led as a sheep to the slaughter, and shall be dumb as a lamb before his shearer. Isai. 53/3-7. (See Mark 9/11; Matt. 8/17; 1 Cor. 15/3; Acts 8/32.)

I am a worm, and no man: . . . All they that saw me have laughed me to scorn: they have spoken with the lips, and wagged the head. Ps. 21/7, 8 & 34/16; Matt. 27/39, 40; Mark 15/29.

O, all ye that pass by the way, attend, and see if there be any sorrow like to my sorrow. Lam. 1/12.

Those things which God before had shewed by the mouth of all the prophets, that his Christ should suffer, he hath so fulfilled. Acts 3/18.

The good shepherd giveth his life for his sheep. John 10/11 & 10/15.

This is my blood of the new testament, which shall be shed for many. Mark 14/24; Matt. 26/28; Luke 22/20.

My soul is sorrowful even unto death. Matt. 26/38.

His sweat became as drops of blood trickling down upon the ground. Luke 22/44.

He humbled himself, becoming obedient unto death, even to the death of the cross. Philip. 2/8.

Judas, dost thou betray the Son of Man with a kiss? Luke 22/48.

They holding Jesus, led him to Caiphas. Matt. 26/57; Mark 14/53; Luke 22/54.

They led him away to Annas first. John 18/13.

And Annas sent him bound to Caiaphas. John 18/24.

One of the servants . . . gave Jesus a blow. John 18/22.

They blindfolded him, and smote his face. Luke 22/64.

Then they did spit in his face, and buffeted him, and

others struck his face with the palms of their hands. Matt. 26/67; Luke 22/63, 64; Mark 14/65. (See Isai. 50/6.)

But he denied, . . . I know not this man. Mark 14/68, 71; Matt. 26/70, 72; Luke 22/57; John 18/25.

And they brought him bound, and delivered him to Pontius Pilate. Matt. 27/2; Mark 15/1; Luke 23/1; John 18/28.

Pilate took Jesus, and scourged him. And the soldiers platting a crown of thorns, put it upon his head: . . . and they gave him blows. John 19/1-3; Mark 15/17.

And stripping him, they put a scarlet cloak about him. And platting a crown of thorns, they put it upon his head, and a reed in his right hand. Matt. 27/28, 29.

And spitting upon him, they took a reed, and struck his head. Matt. 27/30; Mark 15/19.

Who, when he was reviled, did not revile: when he suffered, he threatened not: but delivered himself to him that judged him unjustly. 1 Pet. 2/23.

And Pilate gave sentence that it should be as they required. Luke 23/24.

Then he released to them Barabbas; and having scourged Jesus, delivered him unto them to be crucified. Matt. 27/26; Mark 15/15.

Then, therefore, he delivered him to them for to be crucified. John 19/16.

And he took the wood for the holocaust, and laid it upon Isaac his son. Gen. 22/6.

And bearing his own cross, he went forth to that place which is called Calvary. John 19/17; Mark 15/22.

And when they were come to the place which is called Calvary, they crucified him there. Luke 23/33.

I thirst. John 19/28.

They gave him wine to drink, mingled with gall. Matt. 27/34; Mark 15/23.

And they gave me gall for my food, and in my thirst they gave me vinegar to drink. Ps. 68/22; Matt. 27/48; Mark 15/36; Luke 23/36; John 19/29.

And crucifying him, they divided his garments, casting lots upon them. Mark 15/24; Matt. 27/35; Luke 23/34; John 19/23; Ps. 21/19.

The Author of life you killed. Acts 3/15.

One of the soldiers with a spear opened his side. John 19/34.

But these are written, that you may believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God: and that believing you may have life in his name. John 20/31.

Q. 79.

On what day did Christ die?
Christ died on Good Friday.

It was the parasceve of the pasch. John 19/14 & 19/31.

It was the day of the Parasceve, and the sabbath drew on. Luke 23/54; Mark 15/42.

And it was almost the sixth hour: and there was darkness over all the earth until the ninth hour. Luke 23/44; Matt. 27/45; Mark 15/33.

At the ninth hour, Jesus . . . gave up the ghost. Mark 15/34, 37; Matt. 27/46, 50.

Q. 80.

Why do you call that day "good" on which Christ died so sorrowful a death?

We call that day good on which Christ died because by His death He showed His great love for man, and purchased for him every blessing.

God, (who is rich in mercy,) for his exceeding charity wherewith he loved us, even when we were dead in sins, hath quickened us together in Christ, (by whose grace you are saved). Ephes. 2/4, 5.

That through death he might destroy him who had the empire of death. Heb. 2/14. (See Osee 13/14.)

Who his ownself bore our sins in his body upon the tree: that we being dead to sins, should live to justice: by whose stripes you were healed. 1 Pet. 2/24; Isai. 53/5.

We were reconciled to God by the death of his Son. Rom. 5/10.

In this we have known the charity of God, because he hath laid down his life for us. 1 John 3/16.

Q. 81.

Where did Christ die?
Christ died on Mount Calvary.

And bearing his own cross, he went forth to that place which is called Calvary, . . . where they crucified him. John 19/16-18.

And when they were come to the place which is called Calvary, they crucified him there. Luke 23/33; Mark 15/22, 24; Matt. 37/33, 35.

Q. 82.

How did Christ die?
Christ was nailed to the Cross and died on it between two thieves.

They crucified him. Luke 23/33; Matt. 27/35; Mark 15/25; John 19/18.

Then were crucified with him two thieves: one on the right hand, and one on the left. Matt. 27/38.

And with him they crucify two thieves, the one on his right hand, and the other on his left. Mark 15/27; Luke 23/33; John 19/18.

Q. 83.

Why did Christ suffer and die?
Christ suffered and died for our sins.

I lay down my life for my sheep. John 10/15.

Who gave himself for us, that he might redeem us from all iniquity, and might cleanse to himself a people acceptable, a pursuer of good works. Titus 2/14.

He was offered because it was his own will. Isai. 53/7.

That through death he might destroy him who had the empire of death. Heb. 2/14. (See Osee 13/14.)

He was wounded for our iniquities, he was bruised for our sins. Isai. 53/5.

Without shedding of blood there is no remission. Heb. 9/22.

The Lord hath laid on him the iniquity of us all. Isai. 53/6.

For the wickedness of my people have I struck him. Isai. 53/8.

It behoved Christ to suffer, . . . that penance and remission of sins should be preached in his name unto all nations. Luke 24/46, 47.

Who was delivered up for our sins. Rom. 4/25.

Christ also suffered for us. 1 Pet. 2/21; Rom. 5/9.

Christ died for our sins. 1 Cor. 15/3; 1 Pet. 3/18; Heb. 9/28.

Why did Christ, when as yet we were weak, . . . die for the ungodly? Rom. 5/6.

He is the propitiation for our sins: and not for ours only, but also for those of the whole world. 1 John 2/2.

We were reconciled to God by the death of his Son. Rom. 5/10.

Who his ownself bore our sins in his body upon the tree: that we being dead to sins, should live to justice: by whose stripes you were healed. 1 Pet. 2/24.

I, if I be lifted up from the earth, will draw all things to myself. John 12/32.

For to this end Christ died and rose again; that he might be Lord both of the dead and of the living. Rom. 14/9.

Christ died for all. 2 Cor. 5/15.

You were not redeemed with corruptible things as gold or silver, . . . but with the precious blood of Christ, as of a Lamb unspotted and undefiled. 1 Pet. 1/18.

Christ also died once for our sins, the just for the unjust. 1 Pet. 3/18.

Who gave himself for our sins, that he might deliver us from this present wicked world. Gal. 1/4.

This is my blood of the new testament, which shall be shed for many unto remission of sins. Matt. 26/28.

Ought not Christ to have suffered these things, and so to enter into his glory? Luke 24/26.

Q. 84.

What lessons do we learn from the sufferings and death of Christ?

From the sufferings and death of Christ we learn the great evil of sin, the hatred God bears to it, and the necessity of satisfying for it.

What profit is there in my blood? Ps. 29/10.

In this we have known the charity of God. 1 John 3/16.

Without shedding of blood there is no remission. Heb. 9/22.

The wages of sin is death. Rom. 6/23.

My word . . . shall not return to me void. Isai. 55/11.

If you live according to the flesh, you shall die. Rom. 8/13.

Think diligently upon him that endured such opposition from sinners against himself: that you be not wearied, fainting in your minds. Heb. 12/3.

Q. 85.

Whither did Christ's soul go after His death?

After Christ's death His soul descended into hell.

(See 12, Art. 5.)

He hath made me to dwell in darkness as those that have been dead of old. Ps. 142/3; Lam. 3/6.

He also descended first into the lower parts of the earth. Ephes. 4/9; Eccus. 24/45.

My flesh also shall rest in hope. Because thou wilt not leave my soul in hell, nor wilt thou give thy holy one to see corruption. Ps. 15/9, 10; Acts 2/31.

The Son of Man shall be in the heart of the earth three days and three nights. Matt. 12/40.

Q. 86.

Did Christ's soul descend into the hell of the damned?

The hell into which Christ's soul descended was not the hell of the damned, but a place or state of rest called Limbo, where the souls of the just were waiting for Him.

He hath made me to dwell in darkness as those that have been dead of old. **Ps. 142/3.**

In which (spirit) also coming, he preached to those spirits that were in prison. 1 Pet. 3/19.

Bring my soul out of prison. Ps. 141/8.

And it came to pass, that the beggar died, and was carried by the angels into Abraham's bosom. And the

rich man also died: and he was buried in hell. Luke 16/22.

This day thou shalt be with me in paradise. Luke 23/43.

Q. 87.

Why did Christ descend into Limbo?

Christ descended into Limbo to preach to the souls who were in prison—that is, to announce to them the joyful tidings of their redemption.

He preached to those spirits that were in prison. 1 Pet. 3/19.

For this cause was the gospel preached also to the dead: that they might be judged indeed according to men, in the flesh: but may live according to God in the Spirit. 1 Pet. 4/6.

That he might hear the groans of them that are in fetters: that he might release the children of the slain. Ps. 101/21.

I will penetrate to all the lower parts of the earth, and will behold all that sleep, and will enlighten all that hope in the Lord. Eccus. 24/45.

In the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of those that are in heaven, on earth, and under the earth. Philip. 2/10.

To preach a release to the captives, and deliverance to them that are shut up. Isai. 61/1; Luke 4/18, 19.

Amen, amen I say unto you, that the hour cometh, and now is, when the dead shall hear the voice of the Son of God. John 5/25.

All that are in the graves shall hear the voice of the Son of God. John 5/28.

That thou mightest open the eyes of the blind, and bring forth the prisoner out of prison, and them that sit in darkness out of the prison house. Isai. 42/7.

Thou also, by the blood of thy testament, hast sent forth thy prisoners out of the pit, wherein is no water. Return to the stronghold, ye prisoners of hope, I will render thee double as I declare to-day. Zach. 9/11, 12.

The Lord hath heard the poor: and hath not despised his prisoners. Ps. 68/34.

Q. 88.

Where was Christ's body while His soul was in Limbo?

While Christ's soul was in Limbo His body was in the holy sepulchre.

My flesh . . . shall rest in hope. Ps. 15/9.

Joseph of Arimathea . . . besought Pilate that he might take away the body of Jesus. And Pilate gave leave. He came, therefore, and took away the body of Jesus. And Nicodemus also came. . . . They took, therefore, the body of Jesus, and bound it in linen cloths, with the spices, as the manner of the Jews is to bury. Now there was in the place where he was crucified a garden: and in the garden a new sepulchre, wherein no man yet had been laid. There, therefore, . . . they laid Jesus. John 19/38-42; Luke 23/50-53; Mark 15/43-46; Matt. 27/57-60.

Q. 89.

On what day did Christ rise from the dead?

Christ rose from the dead, glorious and immortal, on Easter Sunday, the third day after His death.

(See 12, Arts. 5 & 11.)

On the first day of the week. John 20/1; Luke 24/1.

And the third day he shall rise again. Luke 18/33 & 24/7 & 9/22; Matt. 16/21 & 17/22 & 20/19; Mark 8/31 & 9/30 & 10/34.

When the sabbath was passed, . . . And very early in the morning, the first day of the week. Mark 16/1, 2.

And in the end of the sabbath, when it began to dawn towards the first day of the week. Matt. 28/1.

Sir, we have remembered, that that seducer said, while he was yet alive: After three days, I will rise again. Matt. 27/63.

Him God raised up the third day, and gave him to be made manifest. Acts 10/40.

With great power did the Apostles give testimony of the resurrection of Jesus Christ. Acts 4/33.

Q. 90.

How long did Christ stay on earth after His resurrection?

Christ stayed on earth forty days after His resurrection to show that He was truly risen from the dead, and to instruct His apostles.

Then he opened their understanding, that they might understand the scriptures. Luke 24/45.

Until the day on which, giving commandments by the Holy Ghost to the apostles whom he had chosen, he was taken up. To whom also he shewed himself alive after his passion, by many proofs, for forty days appearing to them, and speaking of the kingdom of God. Acts 1/2, 3.

Because thou hast seen me, Thomas, thou hast believed. John 20/29.

Jesus was manifested to his disciples, after he was risen from the dead. John 21/14.

Him God raised up the third day, and gave him to be made manifest, not to all the people, but to witnesses preordained by God, even to us, who did eat and drink with him after he arose again from the dead. And he commanded us to preach to the people, and to testify that it is he who was appointed by God to be judge of the living and of the dead. To him all the prophets give testimony, that by his name all receive remission of sins who believe in him. Acts 10/40-43.

Q. 91.

After Christ had remained forty days on earth whither did He go?

After forty days Christ ascended into heaven, and the day on which He ascended into heaven is called Ascension day.

(See 12, Art. 6.)

And it came to pass, whilst he blessed them, he departed from them, and was carried up to heaven. Luke 24/50, 51.

Thou hast ascended on high, thou hast led captivity captive. Ps. 67/19; Ephes. 4/8.

And the Lord Jesus, after he had spoken to them, was taken up into heaven. Mark 16/19.

He was taken up. Acts 1/2.

And when he had said these things, while they looked on, he was raised up: and a cloud received him out of their sight. Acts 1/9.

Jesus, who is taken up from you into heaven. Acts 1/11.

I ascend to my Father and to your Father, to my God and your God. John 20/17.

I go to the Father. John 14/13 & 14/28 & 16/16.

Sing ye to God, who mounteth above the heaven of heavens, to the east. Ps. 67/33, 34.

I came forth from the Father, and am come into the world: again I leave the world, and I go to the Father. John 16/28.

Q. 92.

Where is Christ in heaven?

In heaven Christ sits at the right hand of God the Father Almighty.

(See 12, Art. 6.)

Who is on the right hand of God, . . . being gone into heaven, the angels, and powers, and virtues, being made subject to him. 1 Pet. 3/22.

And sitteth on the right hand of God. Mark 16/19.

Behold, I see the heavens opened, and the Son of Man standing on the right hand of God. Acts 7/55.

Who, having joy set before him, endured the cross, despising the shame, and now sitteth on the right hand of the throne of God. Heb. 12/2.

Hereafter you shall see the Son of Man sitting on the right hand of the power of God. Matt. 26/64; Mark 14/62; Luke 22/69.

The Lord said to my Lord: Sit thou at my right hand. Ps. 109/1; Matt. 22/44; Acts 2/34.

Jesus . . . is at the right hand of God. Rom. 8/34.

Q. 93.

What do you mean by saying that Christ sits at the right hand of God?

When I say that Christ sits at the right hand of God I mean

that Christ as God is equal to His Father in all things, and that as man He is in the highest place in heaven next to God.

Above all principality, and power, and virtue, and dominion, and every name that is named. Ephes. 1/21.

He hath subjected all things under his feet: and hath made him head over all the church. Ephes. 1/22.

Glorify thou me, O Father, with thyself, with the glory which I had, before the world was. John 17/5.

Now is the Son of Man glorified, and God is glorified in him. John 13/31.

Who being in the form of God, thought it not robbery to be equal with God: but emptied himself, taking the form of a servant, being made in the likeness of men, and in habit found as a man. He humbled himself, becoming obedient unto death, even to the death of the cross. For which cause God also hath exalted him, and hath given him a name which is above all names: that in the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of those that are in heaven, on earth, and under the earth; and that every tongue should confess that the Lord Jesus Christ is in the glory of God the Father. Philip. 2/6-11.

Jesus Christ, who is on the right hand of God, . . . being gone into heaven, the angels, and powers, and virtues, being made subject to him. 1 Pet. 3/21, 22.

Lesson Ninth.

ON THE HOLY GHOST AND HIS DESCENT UPON THE APOSTLES.

Q. 94.

Who is the Holy Ghost?
The Holy Ghost is the third Person of the Blessed Trinity.

(See 26, 95-101, 135; 12, Art. 8.)

I will ask the Father, and he shall give you another Paraclete, . . . the Spirit of truth. John 14/16, 17.

And they were all filled with the Holy Ghost. Acts 2/4.

Why hath satan tempted thy heart, that thou shouldst lie to the Holy Ghost . . . ? Thou hast not lied to men, but to God. Acts 5/3, 4.

When he, the Spirit of truth, is come, he will teach you all truth. John 16/13.

There are three that give testimony in heaven: the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost. And these three are one. 1 John 5/7.

The spirit of God moved over the waters. Gen. 1/2.

The spirit of God made me. Job 33/4.

The spirit of the Lord hath filled the whole world. Wis. 1/7.

The Spirit of our God. 1 Cor. 6/11 & 2/11, 12, 14.

The Spirit of grace. Heb. 10/29.

The spirit of wisdom, and of understanding, the spirit of counsel, and of fortitude, the spirit of knowledge and of godliness, . . . the spirit of the fear of the Lord. Isai. 11/2, 3.

Q. 95.

From whom does the Holy Ghost proceed?

The Holy Ghost proceeds from the Father and the Son.

When the Paraclete cometh, whom I will send you from the Father, . . . who proceedeth from the Father. John 15/26.

And I send the promise of my Father upon you. Luke 24/49.

The Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name. John 14/26.

It is expedient to you that I go: for if I go not, the Paraclete will not come to you: but if I go, I will send him to you. John 16/7.

I will ask the Father, and he shall give you another Paraclete, . . . the Spirit of truth. John 14/16, 17.

The Holy Ghost, . . . whom you have from God. 1 Cor. 6/19.

Q. 96.

Is the Holy Ghost equal to the Father and the Son?

The Holy Ghost is equal to the Father and the Son, being the same Lord and God as they are.

(See 26-29; 12, Art. 8.)

All things whatsoever the Father hath, are mine. Therefore I said, that he (the Holy Ghost) shall receive of mine. John 16/15.

There are three that give testimony in heaven: the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost. And these three are one. 1 John 5/7.

The Holy Ghost descended in a bodily shape as a dove upon him: and a voice came from heaven: Thou art my beloved Son, in thee I am well pleased. Luke 3/22.

The Spirit searcheth all things, yea, the deep things of God. 1 Cor. 2/10.

The things also that are of God no man knoweth, but the Spirit of God. 1 Cor. 2/11.

Q. 97.

On what day did the Holy Ghost come down upon the Apostles?

The Holy Ghost came down upon the Apostles ten days after the Ascension of our Lord; and the day on which He came down upon the Apostles is called Whitsunday, or Pentecost.

As yet the spirit was not given, because Jesus was not yet glorified. John 7/39.

He shall baptize you in the Holy Ghost and fire. Matt. 3/11; Mark 1/8; Luke 3/16; Acts 11/16.

Stay you in the city, till you be endued with power from on high. Luke 24/49.

You shall be baptized with the Holy Ghost not many days hence. Acts 1/5.

And when the days of the pentecost were accomplished, they were all together in one place: and suddenly there came a sound from heaven, as of a mighty wind coming, and it filled the whole house where they were sitting. And there appeared to them parted tongues as it were of fire, and it sat upon every one of them: and they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and they began to speak with divers tongues. Acts 2/1-4.

Q. 98.

How did the Holy Ghost come down upon the Apostles?

The Holy Ghost came down upon the Apostles in the form of tongues of fire.

And there appeared to them parted tongues as it were of fire, and it sat upon every one of them: and they were all filled with the Holy Ghost. Acts 2/3, 4.

And the Holy Ghost descended in a bodily shape as a dove upon him. Luke 3/22.

Q. 99.

Who sent the Holy Ghost upon the Apostles?

Our Lord Jesus Christ sent the Holy Ghost upon the Apostles.

(See 95.)

It is expedient to you that I go: for if I go not, the Paraclete will not come to you: but if I go, I will send him to you. John 16/7.

When the Paraclete cometh, whom I will send you from the Father. John 15/26.

The Paraclete, the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name. John 14/26.

I send the promise of my Father upon you. Luke 24/49.

Q. 100.

Why did Christ send the Holy Ghost?

Christ sent the Holy Ghost to sanctify His Church, to enlighten and strengthen the Apostles, and to enable them to preach the Gospel.

When he, the Spirit of truth, is come, he will teach you all truth . . . the things that are to come, he shall shew you. John 16/13; John 14/26.

When he is come, he will convince the world of sin, and of justice, and of judgment. John 16/8.

I will ask the Father, and he shall give you another Paraclete, that he may abide with you for ever. John 14/16.

He shall give testimony of me. John 15/26.

Receive ye the Holy Ghost: Whose sins you shall forgive, they are forgiven them: and whose sins you shall retain, they are retained. John 20/22, 23.

Take heed to yourselves, and to the whole flock, wherein the Holy Ghost hath placed you bishops, to rule the church of God, which he hath purchased with his own blood. Acts 20/28.

It hath seemed good to the Holy Ghost, and to us. Acts 15/28.

You are justified, in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ, and the Spirit of our God. 1 Cor. 6/11.

Stay you in the city, till you be endued with power from on high. Luke 24/49.

The Holy Ghost shall teach you in the same hour what you must say. Luke 12/12.

You shall receive the power of the Holy Ghost coming upon you, and you shall be witnesses unto me . . . even to the uttermost part of the earth. Acts 1/8.

The Holy Ghost said to them: Separate me Saul and Barnabas for the work whereunto I have taken them. Acts 13/2.

Q. 101.

Will the Holy Ghost abide with the Church for ever?

The Holy Ghost will abide with the Church for ever, and guide it in the way of holiness and truth.

(See 134, 135.)

He shall give you another Paraclete, that he may abide with you for ever. John 14/16.

Behold, I am with you all days, even to the consummation of the world. Matt. 28/20.

If any one love me, he will keep my word, and my Father will love him, and we will come to him, and will make our abode with him. John 14/23.

Know you not that you are the temple of God, and that the Spirit of God dwelleth in you? 1 Cor. 3/16.

So they being sent by the Holy Ghost, went to Seleucia. Acts 13/4.

It hath seemed good to the Holy Ghost, and to us. Acts 15/28.

Lesson Tenth.

ON THE EFFECTS OF THE REDEMPTION.

Q. 102.

Which are the chief effects of the Redemption?

The chief effects of the Redemption are two: The satisfaction of God's justice by Christ's sufferings and death, and the gaining of grace for men.

(See 83, 138.)

Blotting out the handwriting of the decree that was against us, which was contrary to us. And he hath taken the same out of the way. Col. 2/14.

Christ died for us: much more therefore, being now justified by his blood, shall we be saved from wrath through him. For if, when we were enemies, we were reconciled to God by the death of his Son: much more being reconciled, shall we be saved by his life. Rom. 5/9, 10.

For God indeed was in Christ reconciling the world to himself, not imputing to them their sins, and he hath placed in us the word of reconciliation. 2 Cor. 5/19.

Him that knew no sin, for us he hath made sin, that we might be made the justice of God in him. 2 Cor. 5/21.

In whom we have redemption through his blood, the remission of sins, according to the riches of his grace. Ephes. 1/7.

The blood of Jesus Christ . . . cleanseth us from all sin. 1 John 1/7.

I, if I be lifted up from the earth, will draw all things to myself. John 12/32.

Having, therefore, brethren, a confidence in the entering into the Holies by the blood of Christ. Heb. 10/19.

Through him to reconcile all things unto himself, making peace through the blood of his cross, both as to the things on earth, and the things that are in heaven. Col. 1/20.

By grace you are saved through faith, and that not of yourselves, for it is the gift of God. Ephes. 2/8.

Who his ownself bore our sins in his body upon the tree: that we being dead to sins, should live to justice: by whose stripes you were healed. 1 Pet. 2/24.

By whom also we have access through faith into this grace wherein we stand. Rom. 5/2; Ephes. 2/18.

The grace of God and the gift, by the grace of one man, Jesus Christ, hath abounded unto many. Rom. 5/15.

Q. 103.

What do you mean by grace?

By grace I mean a supernatural gift of God bestowed on us, through the merits of Jesus Christ, for our salvation.

You shall draw waters with joy out of the Saviour's fountains. Isai. 12/3.

Grace be to you, and peace, from God the Father, and from the Lord Jesus Christ. Ephes. 1/2.

Thou hast visited the earth, and hast plentifully watered it; . . . The river of God is filled with water. Ps. 64/10.

A river of water of life, clear as crystal, proceeding from the throne of God and of the Lamb. Apoc. 22/1.

Unhappy man that I am, who shall deliver me from the body of this death? The grace of God, by Jesus Christ our Lord. Rom. 7/24, 25.

If thou didst know the gift of God, and who he is that saith to thee, Give me to drink; thou perhaps wouldst have asked of him, and he would have given thee living water. John 4/10.

The water that I will give him, shall become in him a fountain of water springing up into life everlasting. John 4/14.

I will give you a new heart, and put a new spirit within you. Ezech. 36/26 & 11/19.

Now this I say, brethren, that flesh and blood cannot possess the kingdom of God. 1 Cor. 15/50.

Not in bread alone doth man live. Deut. 8/3; Matt. 4/4; Luke 4/4.

It is the spirit that quickeneth. John 6/64.

I have laid help upon one that is mighty. Ps. 88/20.

All things shall live to which the torrent shall come. Ezech. 47/9.

By whom (our Lord Jesus Christ) we have received grace and apostleship. Rom. 1/5.

If God be for us, who is against us? Rom. 8/31.

Every best gift, and every perfect gift, is from above. James 1/17.

To one he gave five talents, and to another two, and to another one. Matt. 25/15; Luke 19/13.

The wise took oil in their vessels with the lamps. Matt. 25/4.

Grace and truth came by Jesus Christ. John 1/17.

Be strong in the grace which is in Christ Jesus. 2 Tim. 2/1.

Q. 104.

How many kinds of grace are there?

There are two kinds of grace, sanctifying grace and actual grace.

Now there are diversities of graces, but the same Spirit. 1 Cor. 12/4; Rom. 12/6.

But to every one of us is given grace according to the measure of the giving of Christ. Ephes. 4/7.

By the grace of God I am what I am; and this grace in me hath not been void. 1 Cor. 15/10.

For I long to see you, that I may impart unto you some spiritual grace. Rom. 1/11.

Neglect not the grace that is in thee, which was given thee by prophecy, with imposition of the hands of the priesthood. 1 Tim. 4/14.

He will keep the feet of his saints, and the wicked shall be silent in darkness, because no man shall prevail by his own strength. 1 Kings 2/9.

Q. 105.

What is sanctifying grace?

Sanctifying grace is that grace which makes the soul holy and pleasing to God.

A fountain of water springing up into life everlasting. John 4/14.

Let us have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ. By whom also we have access through faith into this grace wherein we stand. Rom. 5/1, 2.

The grace of God (is) life everlasting, in Christ Jesus our Lord. Rom. 6/23.

That, being justified by his grace, we may be heirs, according to hope of life everlasting. Titus 3/7.

They who are in the flesh cannot please God. But you are not in the flesh, but in the spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Rom. 8/8, 9.

God, (who is rich in mercy,) . . . when we were dead in sins, hath quickened us together in Christ, (by whose grace you are saved.) Ephes. 2/4, 5.

Q. 106.

What do you call those graces or gifts of God by which we believe in Him, hope in Him, and love Him?

Those graces or gifts of God by which we believe in Him, and hope in Him, and love Him, are called the Divine virtues of Faith, Hope, and Charity.

And now there remain, faith, hope, and charity. 1 Cor. 13/13.

He that believeth in me, shall never thirst. John 6/35.

He that believeth in me, hath everlasting life. John 6/47.

(Lord:) increase our faith. Luke 17/5.

We are saved by hope. Rom. 8/24.

My hope is in God. Ps. 61/8.

Although he should kill me, I will trust in him. Job 13/15.

But the greatest of these is charity. 1 Cor. 13/13.

Charity covereth a multitude of sins. 1 Pet. 4/8.

Follow after charity. 1 Cor. 14/1.

Q. 107.

What is faith?

Faith is a Divine virtue by which we firmly believe the truths which God has revealed.

Faith is the substance of things to be hoped for, the evidence of things that appear not. Heb. 11/1.

Without faith it is impossible to please God. Heb. 11/6.

Thou standest by faith. Rom. 11/20.

But you . . . building yourselves upon your most holy faith, . . . keep yourselves in the love of God. Jude 1/20, 21.

Believe in the Lord Jesus. Acts 16/31.

By grace you are saved through faith, and that not of yourselves, for it is the gift of God. Ephes. 2/8.

I have kept back nothing . . . testifying both to Jews and Gentiles penance towards God, and faith in our Lord Jesus Christ. Acts 20/20, 21.

Faith, then, cometh by hearing. Rom. 10/17.

If you have faith as a grain of mustard-seed, . . . nothing shall be impossible to you. Matt. 18/19.

For he is found by them that tempt him not: and he sheweth himself to them that have faith in him. Wis. 1/2.

The precious gift of faith shall be given to him (that hath not wrought iniquity with his hands, nor thought wicked things against God). Wis. 3/14.

Behold, he that is unbelieving, his soul shall not be right in himself: but the just shall live in his faith. Habac. 2/4; Rom. 1/17; Gal. 3/11.

My just man liveth by faith: but if he withdraw himself, he shall not please my soul. Heb. 10/38.

But we are not the children of withdrawing unto perdition, but of faith to the saving of the soul. Heb. 10/39.

All things are possible to him that believeth. . . . I do believe, Lord; help my unbelief. Mark 9/22, 23.

The things which thou hast heard of me by many witnesses, the same commend to faithful men, who shall be fit to teach others also. 2 Tim. 2/2.

If you believe not that I am he, you shall die in your sin. John 8/24.

Blessed are they that have not seen, and have believed. John 20/29.

Abraham believed God, and it was reputed to him to justice. James 2/23; Gen. 15/6; Rom. 4/3; Gal. 3/6.

And the apostles said to the Lord: Increase our faith. Luke 17/5.

Yea, though I should die with thee, I will not deny thee. Matt. 26/35.

The trying of your faith worketh patience. James 1/3.

Neither circumcision availeth anything, nor uncircumcision: but faith that worketh by charity. Gal. 5/6.

But let him ask in faith, nothing wavering. For he that wavereth is like a wave of the sea, which is moved and carried about by the wind. James 1/6.

So faith also, if it have not works, is dead in itself. James 2/17.

Thou believest that there is one God. Thou dost well: the devils also believe and tremble. James 2/19.

All things whatsoever you shall ask in prayer, believing, you shall receive. Matt. 21/22.

According to your faith, be it done unto you. And their eyes were opened. Matt. 9/29, 30.

But say the word, and my servant shall be healed. . . . I have not found so great faith, not even in Israel. Luke 7/7, 9.

For even as the body without the spirit is dead: so also faith without works is dead. James 2/26.

If I should have all faith, so that I could move mountains, and have not charity, I am nothing. 1 Cor. 13/2.

He that cometh to God, must believe that he is, and is a rewarder to them that seek him. Heb. 11/6.

For all men have not faith. 2 Thess. 3/2.

Some . . . have made shipwreck concerning the faith. 1 Tim. 1/19.

With the holy, thou wilt be holy. Ps. 17/26.

All that is not of faith is sin. Rom. 14/23.

He that believeth not, shall be condemned. Mark 16/16.

For we in spirit by faith, wait for the hope of justice. Gal. 5/5.

O woman, great is thy faith. Matt. 15/28.

Q. 108.

What is hope?

Hope is a Divine virtue by which we firmly trust that God will give us eternal life and the means to obtain it.

And now there remain, faith, hope, and charity. 1 Cor. 13/13.

For we have not here a lasting city; but we seek one that is to come. Heb. 13/14.

Tribulation worketh patience: and patience trial; and trial hope. And hope confoundeth not. Rom. 5/3-5.

Ask, and it shall be given you: seek, and you shall find: knock, and it shall be opened to you. Matt. 7/7.

To thee, O Lord, have I lifted up my soul. In thee, O my God, I put my trust; let me not be ashamed. Ps. 24/1, 2 & 7/2 & 10/2.

Keep thou my soul, and deliver me: I shall not be ashamed, for I have hoped in thee. Ps. 24/20.

We are saved by hope. But hope that is seen, is not hope. Rom. 8/24.

Blessed is the man that hopeth in him (the Lord). Ps. 33/9 & 39/5 & 2/13; Jer. 17/7; Prov. 16/20.

Behold, the eyes of the Lord are on them that fear him: and on them that hope in his mercy. Ps. 32/18.

The hope of the wicked shall perish. Prov. 10/28.

Let them trust in thee who know thy name: for thou hast not forsaken them that seek thee. Ps. 9/11 & 56/2.

I believe to see the good things of the Lord in the land of the living. Ps. 26/13.

Expect the Lord, do manfully, and let thy heart take courage, and wait thou for the Lord. Ps. 26/14.

The Lord is good to them that hope in him. Lam. 3/25.

But it is good for me to adhere to my God, to put my hope in the Lord God. Ps. 72/28.

Their hope is full of immortality. Wis. 3/4.

The Lord taketh pleasure in them that fear him: and in them that hope in his mercy. Ps. 146/11.

But I always hope. Ps. 70/14.

Commit thy way to the Lord, and trust in him. Ps. 36/5.

Casting all your care upon him, for he hath care of you. 1 Pet. 5/7; Ps. 54/23.

Be not solicitous. Matt. 6/31; Luke 12/22.

If God be for us, who is against us? Rom. 8/31.

My hope is in God. Ps. 61/8.

Although he should kill me, I will trust in him. Job 13/15.

For we are the children of saints, and look for that life which God will give to those that never change their faith from him. Tob. 2/18.

Have confidence in the Lord with all thy heart, and lean not upon thy own prudence. Prov. 3/5.

Know ye that no one hath hoped in the Lord, and hath been confounded. Eccus. 2/11.

Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who according to his great mercy hath regenerated us unto a lively hope, by the resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead. 1 Pet. 1/3.

Be not sorrowful, even as others who have no hope. 1 Thess. 4/12.

But they that hope in the Lord, shall renew their strength; they shall take wings as eagles; they shall run and not be weary, they shall walk and not faint. Isai. 40/31.

Q. 109.

What is Charity?

Charity is a Divine virtue by which we love God above all things for His own sake, and our neighbor as ourselves for the love of God.

Now there remain, faith, hope, and charity, these three: but the greatest of these is charity. 1 Cor. 13/13.

A new commandment I give unto you: That you love one another, as I have loved you. John 13/34.

This is my commandment, that you love one another as I have loved you. John 15/12 & 15/17.

Thou shalt love thy friend as thyself. Levit. 19/18.

But as touching the charity of brotherhood, we have no need to write to you: for yourselves have learned of God to love one another. 1 Thess. 4/9.

Walk in love, as Christ also hath loved us. Ephes. 5/2.

By this shall all men know that you are my disciples, if you have love one for another. John 13/35.

If I speak with the tongues of men, and of angels, and have not charity, I am become as sounding brass or a tinkling cymbal. 1 Cor. 13/1.

Charity is patient, is kind: charity envieth not, dealeth not perversely: is not puffed up, is not ambitious, seeketh

not her own, is not provoked to anger, thinketh no evil, . . . rejoiceth with the truth: beareth all things, believeth all things, hopeth all things, endureth all things. 1 Cor. 13/4-7.

Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with thy whole heart, and with thy whole soul, and with thy whole mind. . . . Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself. Matt. 22/37, 39; Deut. 6/5; Mark 12/30, 31.

If you love me, keep my commandments. John 14/15.

As the Father hath loved me, I also have loved you. Abide in my love. John 15/9.

God is charity: and he that abideth in charity, abideth in God, and God in him. 1 John 4/16.

Perfect charity casteth out fear. 1 John 4/18.

Charity covereth a multitude of sins. 1 Pet. 4/8.

This is the charity of God, that we keep his commandments. 1 John 5/3. (See 1 John 1/6.)

Follow after charity. 1 Cor. 14/1.

Bear ye one another's burdens. Gal. 6/2.

For every one shall bear his own burden. Gal. 6/5.

He that hath the substance of this world, and shall see his brother in need, and shall put up his bowels from him: how doth the charity of God abide in him? 1 John 3/17.

My little children, let us not love in word, nor in tongue, but in deed, and in truth. 1 John 3/18.

Above all these things have charity, which is the bond of perfection. Col. 3/14.

The love of our neighbour worketh no evil. Love, therefore, is the fulfilling of the law. Rom. 13/10.

Love the Lord, all ye his saints. Ps. 30/24.

Hatred stirreth up strifes: and charity covereth all sins. Prov. 10/12.

Love God all thy life. Eccus. 13/18.

Cast thy bread upon the running waters. Eccles. 11/1.

Many waters cannot quench charity. Cant. 8/7.

I have loved thee with an everlasting love. Jer. 31/3.

This poor widow hath cast in more than all they who have cast into the treasury. Mark 12/43.

Love your enemies, do good to them that hate you. Matt. 5/44; Luke 6/27.

Charity is of God. 1 John 4/7.

God is charity. 1 John 4/8.

The charity of God is poured forth in our hearts, by the Holy Ghost who is given to us. Rom. 5/5.

If we love one another, God abideth in us, and his charity is perfected in us. 1 John 4/12 & 4/17.

Q. 110.

What is actual grace?

Actual grace is that help of God which enlightens our mind and moves our will to shun evil and do good.

For it is God who worketh in you both to will and to accomplish, according to his good will. Philip. 2/13.

God is faithful, who will not suffer you to be tempted above that which you are able: but will make also with temptation issue. 1 Cor. 10/13.

He said to me: My grace is sufficient for thee. 2 Cor. 12/9.

I will give thee understanding, and I will instruct thee in this way, in which thou shalt go. Ps. 31/8.

The Lord God, who is your leader, himself will fight for you. Deut. 1/30; Deut. 3/22.

The Lord thy God hath blessed thee in every work of thy hands. Deut. 2/7.

I have run the way of thy commandments, when thou didst enlarge my heart. Ps. 118/32.

I can do all things in him who strengtheneth me. Philip. 4/13.

In an accepted time have I heard thee; and in the day of salvation have I helped thee. 2 Cor. 6/2; Isai. 49/8.

I admonish thee, that thou stir up the grace of God which is in thee. 2 Tim. 1/6.

And the Lord went before them to shew the way, by day in a pillar of a cloud, and by night in a pillar of fire. Exod. 13/21; Num. 14/14; 2 Esdras 9/12 & 9/19.

Q. 111.

Is grace necessary to salvation?

Grace is necessary to salvation, because without grace we can do nothing to merit heaven.

The branch cannot bear fruit of itself unless it abide in the vine. John 15/4.

I am the vine; you the branches: he that abideth in me, and I in him, the same beareth much fruit: for without me you can do nothing. John 15/5.

Our sufficiency is from God. 2 Cor. 3/5.

Flesh and blood cannot possess the kingdom of God. 1 Cor. 15/50.

The battle is not yours, but God's. 2 Paral. 20/15.

There is no help for me in myself. Job 6/13.

Can the rush be green without moisture? or a sedge-bush grow without water? Job 8/11.

Hast thou an arm like God? . . . Then I will confess that thy right hand is able to save thee. Job 40/4, 9.

Salvation is of the Lord. Ps. 3/9.

My God is my helper, . . . My protector, and the horn of my salvation, and my support. Ps. 17/3 & 53/6.

The king is not saved by a great army: nor shall the giant be saved by his own great strength. Ps. 32/16.

Vain is the salvation of man. Through God we shall do mightily. Ps. 59/13, 14 & 107/13, 14.

O Lord God of hosts, convert us: and shew thy face, and we shall be saved. Ps. 79/20.

To-day if you shall hear his voice, harden not your hearts. Ps. 94/8; Heb. 3/7, 8 & 4/7.

Unless the Lord build the house, they labour in vain that build it. Ps. 126/1.

Cursed be the man that trusteth in man. Jer. 17/5.

Not every one that saith to me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven. Matt. 7/21.

When you shall have done all these things that are commanded you, say: We are unprofitable servants. Luke 17/10.

Seeing the city, he wept over it, saying: If thou also hadst known, and that in this thy day, the things that are to thy peace. Luke 19/41, 42.

For all have sinned; and do need the glory of God. Rom. 3/23.

Our wrestling is not against flesh and blood: but against principalities and powers. . . . Therefore take unto you the armour of God. Ephes. 6/12, 13.

For it is God who worketh in you both to will and to accomplish. Philip. 2/13.

He will keep the feet of his saints, . . . because no man shall prevail by his own strength. 1 Kings 2/9.

For by grace you are saved through faith, and that not of yourselves, for it is the gift of God. Ephes. 2/8.

Q. 112.

Can we resist the grace of God?
We can and unfortunately often do resist the grace of God.

Man, when he was in honour, did not understand; he is compared to senseless beasts, and is become like to them. Ps. 48/13.

The sower went forth to sow. . . . Some fell by the wayside, . . . and other some fell upon stony ground. Matt. 13/3-5; Mark 4/3-5; Luke 8/5, 6.

You stiffnecked and uncircumcised in heart and ears, you always resist the Holy Ghost. Acts 7/51. (See Deut. 31/27; 4 Kings 17/14 & 17/40 & 21/9; Ezech. 3/7; 2 Paral. 29/6; Acts 28/27.)

So these also resist the truth. 2 Tim. 3/8.

And he sent prophets to them to bring them back to the Lord, and they would not give ear when they testified against them. 2 Paral. 24/19.

They have been rebellious to the light. Job 24/13.

God hath given him place for penance, and he abuseth it unto pride. Job 24/23.

Before man is life and death, good and evil; that which he shall choose shall be given him. Eccus. 15/18; Jer. 21/8; Deut. 30/15 & 30/19.

Thou hast bruised them, and they have refused to receive correction: they have made their faces harder than the rock. Jer. 5/3.

I have called you, and you have not answered. Jer. 7/13; Prov. 1/24; Isai. 65/12.

And I gave her a time that she might do penance, and she will not repent. Apoc. 2/21.

Despisest thou the riches of his goodness, and patience, and long-suffering? Rom. 2/4.

But all do not obey the gospel. Rom. 10/16.

To-day if you shall hear his voice, harden not your hearts. Ps. 94/8; Heb. 3/7, 8 & 4/7.

How shall we escape, if we neglect so great salvation? Heb. 2/3.

I cast not away the grace of God. Gal. 2/21.

How often would I have gathered together thy children, as the hen doth gather her chickens under her wings, and thou wouldst not. Matt. 23/37; Luke 13/34.

Q. 113.

What is the grace of perseverance?

The grace of perseverance is a particular gift of God which enables us to continue in the state of grace till death.

Be thou faithful until death: and I will give thee the crown of life. Apoc. 2/10.

He that shall persevere unto the end, he shall be saved. Matt. 10/22.

Hold fast that which thou hast, that no man take thy crown. Apoc. 3/11.

I have glorified thee on the earth; I have finished the work which thou gavest me to do. John 17/4.

For we are the children of saints, and look for that life which God will give to those that never change their faith from him. Tob. 2/18.

And the last state of that man becomes worse than the first. Luke 11/26; Matt. 12/45; 2 Pet. 2/20.

Thou hast a few names in Sardis, which have not defiled their garments: and they shall walk with me in white, because they are worthy. Apoc. 3/4.

To him that shall overcome, I will give to sit with me in my throne. Apoc. 3/21.

Blessed is the man that endureth temptation: for when he hath been proved, he shall receive the crown of life. James 1/12.

Take all that shall be brought upon thee: and in thy sorrow endure, and in thy humiliation keep patience. Eccus. 2/4.

Expect the Lord, do manfully, and let thy heart take courage, and wait thou for the Lord. Ps. 26/14.

So run that you may obtain. 1 Cor. 9/24.

For when the just turneth himself away from his justice, and committeth iniquity, he shall die therein. Ezech. 18/26.

See then the goodness and the severity of God: towards them indeed that are fallen, the severity; but towards

thee, the goodness of God, if thou abide in goodness, otherwise thou also shalt be cut off. Rom. 11/22.

If any man will come after me, let him deny himself, and take up his cross daily, and follow me. Luke 9/23; Matt. 16/24; Mark 8/34; Luke 14/27.

The people that know their God shall prevail and succeed. Dan. 11/32.

I chastise my body, . . . lest . . . I myself should become a castaway. 1 Cor. 9/27.

But I fear lest, as the serpent seduced Eve by his subtility, so your minds should be corrupted, and fall from the simplicity that is in Christ. 2 Cor. 11/3.

Who then shall separate us from the love of Christ? Rom. 8/35.

Wherefore, brethren, labour the more, that by good works, you may make sure your calling and election. 2 Pet. 1/10.

For it had been better for them not to have known the way of justice, than after they have known it, to turn back from that holy commandment. 2 Pet. 2/21.

If the salt lose its savour, wherewith shall it be salted? Matt. 5/13; Mark 9/49; Luke 14/34.

That on the good ground, are they who in a good and very good heart, hearing the word, keep it, and bring forth fruit in patience. Luke 8/15.

No man putting his hand to the plough, and looking back, is fit for the kingdom of God. Luke 9/62.

Behold, thou art made whole: sin no more, lest some worse thing happen to thee. John 5/14.

Stand fast, and be not held again under the yoke of bondage. Gal. 5/1; Philip. 4/1.

Being confident of this very thing, that he who hath begun a good work in you, will perfect it unto the day of Christ Jesus. Philip. 1/6. (See Col. 1/23.)

Brethren, I do not count myself to have apprehended. But one thing I do: forgetting the things that are behind, and stretching forth myself to those that are before, I press towards the mark. Philip. 3/13, 14.

Behold, they that serve him are not steadfast, and in his angels he found wickedness. Job 4/18 & 15/15.

I have fought a good fight, I have finished my course, I have kept the faith. 2 Tim. 4/7.

Persevere under discipline. God dealeth with you as with his sons. Heb. 12/7.

Many are called, but few chosen. Matt. 20/16.

He that thinketh himself to stand, let him take heed lest he fall. 1 Cor. 10/12.

Well done, good and faithful servant, because thou hast been faithful over a few things, I will place thee over many things: enter thou into the joy of thy lord. Matt. 25/21.

Lesson Eleventh.

ON THE CHURCH.

Q. 114.

Which are the means instituted by our Lord to enable men at all times to share in the fruits of the Redemption?

The means instituted by our Lord to enable men at all times to share in the fruits of His Redemption are the Church and the Sacraments.

(See 136 *et seq.*)

The church of the living God, the pillar and ground of the truth. 1 Tim. 3/15.

The church of God, which he hath purchased with his own blood. Acts 20/28.

And upon this rock I will build my church. Matt. 16/18.

If he will not hear the church, let him be to thee as the heathen and publican. Matt. 18/17.

Who is she that cometh forth as the morning rising, fair as the moon, bright as the sun, terrible as an army set in array? Cant. 6/9.

Calling together the twelve apostles, he gave them power and authority. . . . And he sent them to preach the kingdom of God. Luke 9/1, 2; Matt. 10/1, 5; Mark 3/14, 15.

God is faithful, for our preaching which was to you, was not, *It is*, and *It is not*. 2 Cor. 1/18.

God . . . hath given to us the ministry of reconciliation. 2 Cor. 5/18.

For Christ therefore, we are ambassadors. 2 Cor. 5/20.

He gave some apostles, and some prophets, and other

some evangelists, and other some pastors and doctors, for the perfecting of the saints, for the work of the ministry, for the edifying of the body of Christ. Ephes. 4/11, 12; 1 Cor. 12/28.

I will set up pastors over them, and they shall feed them. Jer. 23/4 & 3/15.

For it is not you that speak, but the Spirit of your Father that speaketh in you. Matt. 10/20.

Q. 115.

What is the Church?

The Church is the congregation of all those who profess the faith of Christ, partake of the same Sacraments, and are governed by their lawful pastors under one visible Head.

(See 12, Art. 9.)

The pillar and ground of the truth. 1 Tim. 3/15.

The holy city, the new Jerusalem. Apoc. 21/2.

A city seated on a mountain. Matt. 5/14.

The body of Christ. Ephes. 4/12.

The church, which is his body. Ephes. 1/22, 23.

The bride, the wife of the Lamb. Apoc. 21/9.

A mountain in which God is well pleased to dwell. Ps. 67/17.

The mountain of the house of the Lord. Isai. 2/2; Micheas 4/1; Ps. 77/54.

The City of Truth, and the Mountain of the Lord of hosts, the sanctified mountain. Zach. 8/3.

This is no other but the house of God, and the gate of heaven. Gen. 28/17.

Grain of mustard-seed . . . leaven . . . net cast into the sea, etc. Matt. 13.

That which we have seen and have heard, we declare unto you, that you also may have fellowship with us, and our fellowship may be with the Father, and with his Son Jesus Christ. . . . If we say that we have fellowship with him, and walk in darkness, we lie, and do not the truth. 1 John 1/3, 6.

We are of God. He that knoweth God, heareth us. 1 John 4/6.

For Christ therefore, we are ambassadors. 2 Cor. 5/20.

God . . . hath given to us the ministry of reconciliation. 2 Cor. 5/18.

Other sheep I have that are not of this fold: them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice, and there shall be one fold, and one shepherd. John 10/16.

Behold, the days shall come, saith the Lord, and I will make a new covenant with the house of Israel, and with the house of Juda. Jer. 31/31; Heb. 8/8.

Thus saith the Lord God: I myself will take of the marrow of the high cedar, and will set it: I will crop off a tender twig from the top of the branches thereof, and I will plant it on a mountain high and eminent. On the high mountains of Israel will I plant it, and it shall shoot forth into branches, and shall bear fruit, and it shall become a great cedar: and all birds shall dwell under it, and every fowl shall make its nest under the shadow of the branches thereof. Ezech. 17/22, 23.

And I will give you pastors according to my own heart, and they shall feed you with knowledge and doctrine. Jer. 3/15 & 23/4.

For we being many, are one bread, one body, all that partake of one bread. 1 Cor. 10/17.

Glorious things are said of thee, O city of God. Ps. 86/3.

Q. 116.

Who is the invisible Head of the Church?
Jesus Christ is the invisible Head of the Church.

Christ is the head of the church. Ephes. 5/23.

The great pastor of the sheep, our Lord Jesus Christ. Heb. 13/20.

He is the head of the body, the church. Col. 1/18.

And he hath subjected all things under his feet: and hath made him head over all the church, which is his body. Ephes. 1/22, 23.

Other foundation no man can lay, but that which is laid; which is Christ Jesus. 1 Cor. 3/11.

The stone which the builders rejected; the same is become the head of the corner. Ps. 117/22; Matt. 21/42; Mark 12/10; Luke 20/17; Acts 4/11; Rom. 9/33; 1 Pet. 2/7.

Behold, I will lay a stone in the foundations of Sion, a tried stone, a corner stone, a precious stone. Isai. 28/16; 1 Pet. 2/6.

AND I WILL SET UP ONE SHEPHERD OVER THEM, and he shall feed them, even my servant David: he shall feed them, and he shall be their shepherd. Ezech. 34/23; Isai. 40/11; John 10/11, 14.

And my servant David shall be king over them, and they shall have one shepherd. Ezech. 37/24; Jer. 23/5.

Thou wilt keep me to be the head of the Gentiles. 2 Kings 22/44; Ps. 17/44.

A son is given to us, and the government is upon his shoulder. Isai. 9/6.

Him who is head, even Christ. Ephes. 4/15.

Built upon the foundation of the apostles and prophets, Jesus Christ himself being the chief corner-stone. Ephes. 2/20.

Q. 117.

Who is the visible Head of the Church?

Our Holy Father the Pope, the Bishop of Rome, is the Vicar of Christ on earth and the visible Head of the Church.

He that entereth in by the door, is the shepherd of the sheep. John 10/2.

And to Simon he gave the name Peter. Mark 3/16; Luke 6/14; John 1/42.

Thou art Peter; and upon this rock I will build my church, and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it. Matt. 16/18.

And I will give to thee the keys of the kingdom of heaven. And whatsoever thou shalt bind upon earth, it shall be bound also in heaven: and whatsoever thou shalt loose on earth, it shall be loosed also in heaven. Matt. 16/19.

Thou shalt find a stater: take that and give it to them for me and thee. Matt. 17/26.

And it came to pass, that Peter, as he passed through visiting all, etc. Acts 9/32.

And when there had been much disputing, Peter rising up, said to them: Men, brethren, you know that in former days God made choice among us, that by my mouth the Gentiles should hear the word of the gospel, and believe. Acts 15/7.

And sitting, he taught the multitudes out of the (Peter's) ship. Luke 5/3.

Thou being once converted, confirm thy brethren. Luke 22/32.

Feed my lambs. . . . Feed my sheep. John 21/15-17.

The names of the twelve apostles are these: the first, Simon, who is called Peter. Matt. 10/2; Luke 6/14; Acts 1/13 & 3/1 & 12/5; John 20/5, 6.

Thy name shall not be called Jacob, but Israel; for if thou hast been strong against God, how much more shalt thou prevail against men? Gen. 32/28 & 35/10.

Q. 118.

Why is the Pope, the Bishop of Rome, the visible Head of the Church?

The Pope, the Bishop of Rome, is the visible Head of the Church because he is the successor of St. Peter, whom Christ made the chief of the Apostles and the visible Head of the Church.

Thou art Peter; and upon this rock I will build my church. Matt. 16/18.

And I will give to thee the keys of the kingdom of heaven. Matt. 16/19.

Feed my lambs. . . . Feed my sheep. John 21/15-17.

The church that is in Babylon, elected together with you, saluteth you: and so doth my son Mark. 1 Pet. 5/13.

May the Lord, the God of the spirits of all flesh, provide a man, that may be over this multitude: and may go out and in before them, and may lead them out, or bring them in: lest the people of the Lord be as sheep without a shepherd. Num. 27/16, 17.

Q. 119.

Who are the successors of the other Apostles?

The successors of the other Apostles are the Bishops of the Holy Catholic Church.

His bishopric let another take . . . and the lot fell upon Matthias, and he was numbered with the eleven apostles. Acts 1/20, 26.

Neglect not the grace that is in thee, which was given thee by prophecy, with imposition of the hands of the priesthood. 1 Tim. 4/14.

For this cause I left thee in Crete, that thou shouldest set in order the things that are wanting, and shouldest ordain priests in every city, as I also appointed thee. Titus 1/5.

Their sound hath gone forth into all the earth: and their words unto the ends of the world. Ps. 18/5; Rom. 10/18.

And he took up the mantle of Elias, that fell from him: . . . The spirit of Elias hath rested upon Eliseus. 4 Kings 2/13, 15.

And when they had ordained to them priests in every church, and had prayed with fasting, they commended them to the Lord. Acts 14/22.

For this cause have I sent to you Timothy. 1 Cor. 4/17.

We sent Timothy . . . to confirm you and exhort you concerning your faith. 1 Thess. 3/2.

For I think that God hath set forth us apostles. 1 Cor. 4/9.

And hath made us a kingdom and priests to God and his Father. Apoc. 1/6.

The things which thou hast heard of me by many witnesses, the same commend to faithful men, who shall be fit to teach others also. 2 Tim. 2/2.

Q. 120.

Why did Christ found the Church?

Christ founded the Church to teach, govern, sanctify, and save all men.

(See 114.)

Going therefore, teach ye all nations. Matt. 28/19.

He gave some apostles, and some prophets, and other some evangelists, and other some pastors and doctors, for the perfecting of the saints, for the work of the ministry, for the edifying of the body of Christ. Ephes. 4/11, 12; 1 Cor. 12/28.

That penance and remission of sins should be preached in his name unto all nations. Luke 24/47.

As the Father hath sent me, I also send you. John 20/21.

Whose sins you shall forgive, they are forgiven them. John 20/23.

You have not chosen me: but I have chosen you; and have appointed you, that you should go, and should bring forth fruit; and your fruit should remain. John 15/16.

Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you. Matt. 28/20.

To you it is given to know the mystery of the kingdom of God. Mark 4/11.

Behold, the days shall come, saith the Lord, and I will make a new covenant with the house of Israel, and with the house of Juda. Jer. 31/31; Heb. 8/8.

And I will set up pastors over them, and they shall feed them. Jer. 23/4 & 3/15.

You are the salt of the earth. Matt. 5/13.

You are the light of the world. Matt. 5/14.

I have set thee to be the light of the Gentiles: that thou mayest be for salvation unto the utmost part of the earth. Acts 13/47; Isai. 49/6.

Q. 121.

Are all bound to belong to the Church?

All are bound to belong to the Church, and he who knows the Church to be the true Church and remains out of it cannot be saved.

(See 123, 325, 326.)

He that is not with me, is against me: and he that gathereth not with me, scattereth. Matt. 12/30.

He that believeth not, shall be condemned. Mark 16/16.

He that doth not believe, is already judged. John 3/18.

They went out from us; but they were not of us. 1 John 2/19.

And the Lord increased daily together such as should be saved. Acts 2/47.

He that heareth you, heareth me: and he that despiseth you, despiseth me. Luke 10/16.

If he will not hear the church, let him be to thee as the heathen and publican. Matt. 18/17; Mark 6/11.

He that shall deny me before men, I will also deny him before my Father who is in heaven. Matt. 10/33; Luke 12/9; 2 Tim. 2/12.

One body, and one Spirit. Ephes. 4/4.

Other sheep I have that are not of this fold: them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice, and there shall be one fold, and one shepherd. John 10/16.

All kings of the earth shall adore him: all nations shall serve him. Ps. 71/11.

That the Gentiles should be fellow-heirs, and of the same body, and copartners of his promise. Ephes. 3/6.

The Lord hateth all abomination of error. Eccus. 15/13.

Beware lest thou offer thy holocausts in every place that thou shalt see. Deut. 12/13.

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in the clothing of sheep. Matt. 7/15.

Why have you forsaken the Lord, the God of Israel, building a sacrilegious altar, and revolting from the worship of him? Josue 22/16.

Stand ye on the ways, and see, and ask for the old paths, which is the good way, and walk ye in it: and you shall find refreshment for your souls. Jer. 6/16.

For there will rise up false christs and false prophets, and they shall shew signs and wonders, to seduce (if it were possible) even the elect. Mark 13/22; Matt. 24/24; Luke 21/8.

Bringing into captivity every understanding unto the obedience of Christ. 2 Cor. 10/5.

Moreover, out of all the tribes of Israel, whosoever gave their heart to seek the Lord, the God of Israel, came into Jerusalem to sacrifice their victims before the Lord. 2 Paral. 11/16.

Harden not your necks, as your fathers did: yield yourselves to the Lord, and come to his sanctuary, which he hath sanctified for ever. 2 Paral. 30/8.

Our fathers have sinned, and done evil in the sight of the Lord God, forsaking him: they have turned away their faces from the tabernacle of the Lord. 2 Paral. 29/6.

All the ends of the earth shall remember, and shall be converted to the Lord. Ps. 21/28.

That which we have seen and have heard, we declare

unto you, that you also may have fellowship with us. 1 John 1/3.

We, being many, are one body in Christ, and every one members one of another. Rom. 12/5.

Wo to the foolish prophets, that follow their own spirit, and see nothing. Ezech. 13/3 & 13/9.

You adore that which you know not: we adore that which we know. John 4/22.

This people honoureth me with their lips, but their heart is far from me. And in vain do they worship me, teaching doctrines and commandments of men. Matt. 15/8, 9; Mark 7/6, 7; Isai. 29/13.

Behold, now is the acceptable time. 2 Cor. 6/2.

And there shall come from the east, and the west, and the north, and the south; and shall sit down in the kingdom of God. Luke 13/29.

They that love his name shall dwell therein. Ps. 68/37.

And thy gates shall be open continually: they shall not be shut day nor night, that the strength of the Gentiles may be brought to thee. Isai. 60/11.

Seek, and you shall find. Matt. 7/7.

For if they were able to know so much, as to make a judgment of the world: how did they not more easily find out the Lord thereof? Wis. 13/9.

They are inexcusable. Because that, when they knew God, they have not glorified him as God, or given thanks: but became vain in their thoughts, and their foolish heart was darkened. For professing themselves to be wise, they became fools. Rom. 1/20-22.

A man that is a heretic, after the first and second admonition, avoid: knowing that he that is such an one, is subverted, and sinneth, being condemned by his own judgment. Titus 3/10, 11.

Indeed the Lord is in this place, and I knew it not . . . this is no other but the house of God, and the gate of heaven. Gen. 28/16, 17.

They shall be cursed that shall despise thee: and they shall be condemned that shall blaspheme thee: and blessed shall they be that shall build thee up. Tob. 13/16.

Lesson Twelfth.

ON THE ATTRIBUTES AND MARKS OF THE CHURCH.

Q. 122.

Which are the attributes of the Church?

The attributes of the Church are three: authority, infallibility, and indefectibility.

(See 123, 124, 126.)

As the Father hath sent me, I also send you. John 20/21.

He that heareth you, heareth me: and he that despiseth you, despiseth me. Luke 10/16; Matt. 10/40; John 13/20.

The church of the living God, the pillar and ground of the truth. 1 Tim. 3/15.

Upon this rock I will build my church, and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it. Matt. 16/18.

Behold, I am with you all days, even to the consummation of the world. Matt. 28/20.

The weapons of our warfare are not carnal. 2 Cor. 10/4.

The truth . . . dwelleth in us, and shall be with us for ever. 2 John 1/2.

Q. 123.

What do you mean by the authority of the Church?

By the authority of the Church I mean the right and power which the Pope and the Bishops, as the successors of the Apostles, have to teach and to govern the faithful.

Calling together the twelve apostles, he gave them power and authority. . . . And he sent them to preach the kingdom of God. Luke 9/1, 2.

You have not chosen me: but I have chosen you; and have appointed you. John 15/16.

Neither doth any man take the honour to himself, but he that is called by God, as Aaron was. Heb. 5/4.

I will give to thee the keys of the kingdom of heaven. Matt. 16/19.

Whatsoever thou shalt bind upon earth, it shall be bound also in heaven. Matt. 16/19; John 20/23.

And Jesus coming, spoke to them, saying: All power is given to me in heaven and in earth. Going therefore, teach ye all nations. Matt. 28/18, 19.

And he said to them: Go ye into the whole world, and preach the gospel to every creature. Mark 16/15.

He that heareth you, heareth me. Luke 10/16.

And I dispose to you, as my Father hath disposed to me, a kingdom. Luke 22/29.

As thou hast sent me into the world, I also have sent them into the world. John 17/18.

Feed my lambs. . . . Feed my sheep. John 21/15-17.

Amen, amen I say to you: he that entereth not by the door into the sheepfold, but climbeth up another way, the same is a thief and a robber. John 10/1.

As the Father hath sent me, I also send you. John 20/21.

The Holy Ghost hath placed you bishops, to rule the church of God. Acts 20/28.

How shall they preach unless they be sent? Rom. 10/15.

The words which thou gavest me, I have given to them. John 17/8.

Obey your prelates, and be subject to them. Heb. 13/17.

The Scribes and the Pharisees have sitten on the chair of Moses. All things, therefore, whatsoever they shall say to you, observe and do. Matt. 23/2, 3.

Remember your prelates who have spoken the word of God to you: whose faith follow . . . Be not led away with various and strange doctrines. Heb. 13/7, 9.

He that receiveth you, receiveth me. Matt. 10/40.

Do not fear, but speak, and hold not thy peace. Because I am with thee. Acts 18/9, 10.

Amen, amen I say to you, he that receiveth whomsoever I send, receiveth me. John 13/20.

Jesus I know, and Paul I know: but who are you? Acts 19/15.

Let a man so account of us as of the ministers of Christ. 1 Cor. 4/1.

If any seem to be a prophet, or spiritual, let him know the things that I write to you, that they are the commandments of the Lord. 1 Cor. 14/37.

For I have received of the Lord that which also I delivered unto you. 1 Cor. 11/23.

For so the Lord hath commanded us: *I have set thee to be the light of the Gentiles: that thou mayest be for salvation unto the utmost part of the earth.* Acts 13/47; Isai. 49/6.

Our sufficiency is from God. Who also hath made us fit ministers of the new testament. 2 Cor. 3/5, 6. (See Col. 1/25 & 4/17.)

For we are God's coadjutors. 1 Cor. 3/9.

Our power, which the Lord hath given us unto edification. 2 Cor. 10/8 & 13/10.

For our gospel hath not been unto you in word only, but in power also, and in the Holy Ghost, and in much fulness. 1 Thess. 1/5.

But we have this treasure (authority to preach) in earthen vessels, that the excellency may be of the power of God, and not of us. 2 Cor. 4/7.

For it is not you that speak, but the Spirit of your Father that speaketh in you. Matt. 10/20; Mark 13/11.

And God indeed hath set some in the church, first apostles, secondly prophets, thirdly doctors, after that miracles, then the graces of healings, helps, governments, kinds of tongues, interpretations of speeches. 1 Cor. 12/28.

That penance and remission of sins should be preached in his name unto all nations. Luke 24/47.

Beware of false prophets. Matt. 7/15.

Desiring to be teachers of the law, understanding neither the things they say, nor whereof they affirm. 1 Tim. 1/7.

I did not send prophets, yet they ran: I have not spoken to them, yet they prophesied. Jer. 23/21. (See Jer. 27/15 & 29/9.)

Hymeneus and Alexander, whom I have delivered up to satan. 1 Tim. 1/20.

Thy own wickedness shall reprove thee, and thy apostacy shall rebuke thee. Know thou, and see, that it is an evil

and a bitter thing for thee, to have left the Lord thy God. Jer. 2/19.

But all things are of God, who . . . hath given to us the ministry of reconciliation. 2 Cor. 5/18.

Now he . . . that hath anointed us, is God. Who also hath sealed us. 2 Cor. 1/21, 22.

He hath placed in us the word of reconciliation. 2 Cor. 5/19.

For Christ therefore, we are ambassadors, God as it were exhorting by us. 2 Cor. 5/20.

And he gave some apostles, and some prophets, and other some evangelists, and other some pastors and doctors, for the perfecting of the saints, for the work of the ministry, for the edifying of the body of Christ. Ephes. 4/11, 12.

Take heed to the ministry which thou hast received in the Lord, that thou fulfill it. Col. 4/17.

These things command and teach. 1 Tim. 4/11.

The things which thou hast heard of me by many witnesses, the same commend to faithful men, who shall be fit to teach others also. 2 Tim. 2/2.

For this cause I left thee in Crete, that thou shouldest set in order the things that are wanting, and shouldest ordain priests in every city, as I also appointed thee. Titus 1/5.

These things speak, and exhort, and rebuke with all authority. Let no man despise thee. Titus 2/15.

Q. 124.

What do you mean by the infallibility of the Church?

By the infallibility of the Church I mean that the Church cannot err when it teaches a doctrine of faith or morals.

A path and a way shall be there, . . . and this shall be unto you a straight way, so that fools shall not err therein. Isai. 35/8.

That henceforth we be no more children, tossed to and fro, and carried about with every wind of doctrine, by the wickedness of men. Ephes. 4/14.

Upon this rock I will build my church, and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it. Matt. 16/18.

And the rain fell, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and they beat upon that house, and it fell not, for it was founded on a rock. Matt. 7/25.

Simon, Simon, behold, satan hath desired to have you, that he may sift you as wheat. But I have prayed for thee that thy faith fail not, and thou being once converted, confirm thy brethren. Luke 22/31, 32.

It is not you that speak, but the Spirit of your Father that speaketh in you. Matt. 10/20; Mark 13/11.

When you had received of us the word of the hearing of God, you received it not as the word of men, but (as it is indeed) the word of God. 1 Thess. 2/13.

We have the mind of Christ. 1 Cor. 2/16.

Therefore he that despiseth these things, despiseth not man but God: who also hath given his holy Spirit in us. 1 Thess. 4/8.

I will give you a mouth and wisdom, which all your adversaries shall not be able to resist and gainsay. Luke 21/15.

The Holy Ghost . . . will teach you all things. John 14/26.

We have received . . . the Spirit that is of God: that we may know the things that are given us from God. Which things also we speak, not in the learned words of human wisdom; but in the doctrine of the Spirit. 1 Cor. 2/12, 13.

Hold the form of sound words, which thou hast heard of me in faith. 2 Tim. 1/13.

And the things which thou hast heard of me by many witnesses, the same commend to faithful men, who shall be fit to teach others also. 2 Tim. 2/2.

We are of God. He that knoweth God, heareth us. He that is not of God, heareth us not. By this we know the spirit of truth and the spirit of error. 1 John 4/6.

A stranger they follow not, but fly from him. John 10/5.

Simon, and they that were with him, followed after him. Mark 1/36.

Thus saith the Lord: Stand ye on the ways, and see, and ask for the old paths, which is the good way, and walk ye in it: and you shall find refreshment for your souls. Jer. 6/16.

Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, behold, I am with you all days, even to the consummation of the world. Matt. 28/20.

I am with thee. Gen. 26/24 & 31/5 & 39/2, 3; Exod. 3/10, 12 & 4/12; Deut. 31/17, 23; Josue 1/5; Judges 6/12, 14, 16; Judith 6/18; Isai. 43/2; Jer. 46/28 & 15/20; Luke 1/66.

For the lips of the priests shall keep knowledge, and they shall seek the law at his mouth: because he is the angel of the Lord of hosts. Mal. 2/7.

If he will not hear the church, let him be to thee as the heathen and publican. Matt. 18/17.

But though we, or an angel from heaven, preach a gospel to you besides that which we have preached to you, let him be anathema. Gal. 1/8.

He that heareth you, heareth me. Luke 10/16.

He that believeth not, shall be condemned. Mark 16/16.

For Christ therefore, we are ambassadors, God as it were exhorting by us. 2 Cor. 5/20.

For our exhortation was not of error, nor of uncleanness, nor in deceit, but as we were approved by God that the gospel should be committed to us; even so we speak, not as pleasing men, but God, who proveth our hearts. 1 Thess. 2/3, 4.

All things whatsoever I have heard of my Father, I have made known to you. John 15/15.

If thou perceive that there be among you a hard and doubtful matter in judgment between blood and blood, cause and cause, leprosy and leprosy: and thou see that the words of the judges within thy gates do vary: arise, and go up to the place which the Lord thy God shall choose. And thou shalt come to the priests of the Levitical race, and to the judge that shall be at that time: and thou shalt ask of them, and they shall shew thee the truth of the judgment. Deut. 17/8, 9.

The Scribes and the Pharisees have sitten on the chair of Moses. All things, therefore, whatsoever they shall say to you, observe and do. Matt. 23/2, 3.

God is faithful, for our preaching which was to you, was not, *It is*, and, *It is not*. 2 Cor. 1/18.

For we are not as many adulterating the word of God, but with sincerity, but as from God, before God, in Christ we speak. 2 Cor. 2/17.

For the Holy Ghost shall teach you in the same hour what you must say. Luke 12/12.

He taught the multitudes out of the ship. Luke 5/3.

Let no man seduce you, . . . walking in the things which he hath not seen, in vain puffed up by the sense of his flesh, and not holding the head, from which the whole body, by joints and bands, . . . groweth unto the increase of God. Col. 2/18, 19; Matt. 24/4.

For the law shall go forth out of Sion, and the word of the Lord out of Jerusalem. Micheas 4/2.

Jerusalem shall be called the City of Truth. Zach. 8/3.

When he, the Spirit of truth, is come, he will teach you all truth. John 16/13 & 14/26.

The Lord hateth all abomination of error. Eccus. 15/13.

All thy children shall be taught of the Lord. Isai. 54/13; John 6/45.

For the sake of the truth, which dwelleth in us, and shall be with us for ever. 2 John 1/2. (See Isai. 61/8.)

Q. 125.

When does the Church teach infallibly?

The Church teaches infallibly when it speaks through the Pope and Bishops united in general council, or through the Pope alone when he proclaims to all the faithful a doctrine of faith or morals.

(See 124.)

And when there had been much disputing, Peter rising up, said to them: Men, brethren, you know that in former days God made choice among us, that by my mouth the Gentiles should hear the word of the gospel, and believe. Acts 15/7.

Thou art Peter; and upon this rock I will build my church. . . . And whatsoever thou shalt bind upon earth, it shall be bound also in heaven. Matt. 16/18, 19.

When you had received of us the word of the hearing of God, you received it not as the word of men, but . . . the word of God. 1 Thess. 2/13.

And Moses answered him: The people come to me to seek the judgment of God. Exod. 18/15.

And I went up according to revelation: and conferred with them the gospel which I preach among the Gentiles, but apart with them who seemed to be something: lest perhaps I should run, or had run in vain. Gal. 2/2.

But Peter standing up with the eleven, lifted up his voice, and spoke to them: Ye men of Judea, and all you that dwell in Jerusalem, be this known to you, and with your ears receive my words. Acts 2/14.

It hath seemed good to us, being assembled together. Acts 15/25.

It hath seemed good to the Holy Ghost, and to us. Acts 15/28.

They determined that Paul and Barnabas . . . should go up to the apostles and priests to Jerusalem about this question. Acts 15/2.

They delivered unto them the decrees for to keep, that were decreed by the apostles and ancients who were at Jerusalem. Acts 16/4.

We have received . . . the Spirit that is of God: that we may know the things that are given us from God. Which things also we speak. 1 Cor. 2/12, 13.

I will give you a mouth and wisdom, which all your adversaries shall not be able to resist and gainsay. Luke 21/15.

That they also may be sanctified in truth. And not for them only do I pray, but for them also who through their word shall believe in me. John 17/19, 20.

To you it is given to know the mystery of the kingdom of God. Mark 4/11; Matt. 13/11; Luke 8/10.

For the lips of the priests shall keep knowledge, and they shall seek the law at his mouth: because he is the angel of the Lord of hosts. Mal. 2/7.

Remember your prelates who have spoken the word of God to you: whose faith follow. . . . Be not led away with various and strange doctrines. Heb. 13/7, 9.

Q. 126.

What do you mean by the indefectibility of the Church?

By the indefectibility of the Church I mean that the Church, as Christ founded it, will last till the end of time.

I will make a perpetual covenant with them. Isai. 61/8.

The eternal gospel. Apoc. 14/6

Not according to the covenant which I made with their fathers. Jer. 31/32.

Thou art a priest for ever. Heb. 7/17; Ps. 109/4.

Upon this rock I will build my church, and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it. Matt. 16/18.

The church of the living God, the pillar and ground of the truth. 1 Tim. 3/15.

And the rain fell, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and they beat upon that house, and it fell not, for it was founded on a rock. Matt. 7/25.

With the joy of the whole earth is mount Sion founded, . . . the city of our God: God hath founded it for ever. Ps. 47/3, 9.

This is my covenant with them, saith the Lord: My spirit that is in thee, and my words that I have put in thy mouth, shall not depart out of thy mouth, nor out of the mouth of thy seed, nor out of the mouth of thy seed's seed, saith the Lord, from henceforth, and for ever. Isai. 59/21; Ezech. 37/26.

The God of heaven will set up a kingdom that shall never be destroyed, . . . it shall break in pieces, and shall consume all these kingdoms: and itself shall stand for ever. Dan. 2/44.

Of his kingdom there shall be no end. Luke 1/33; Isai. 9/7.

No weapon that is formed against thee shall prosper: and every tongue that resisteth thee in judgment, thou shalt condemn. Isai. 54/17.

For the mountains shall be moved, and the hills shall tremble: but my mercy shall not depart from thee, and the covenant of my peace shall not be moved. Isai. 54/10.

And the children of them that afflict thee, shall come bowing down to thee, and all that slandered thee shall worship the steps of thy feet, and shall call thee the city of the Lord, the Sion of the holy One of Israel. Isai. 60/14.

Behold, I am with you all days, even to the consummation of the world. Matt. 28/20.

I . . . beseech you to contend earnestly for the faith once delivered to the saints. Jude 1/3.

But though we, or an angel from heaven, preach a gospel to you besides that which we have preached to you, let him be anathema. Gal. 1/8.

Hold the form of sound words, which thou hast heard of me in faith. . . . Keep the good thing committed to thy trust by the Holy Ghost. 2 Tim. 1/13, 14.

Let that which you have heard from the beginning abide in you. 1 John 2/24.

Keep that which is committed to thy trust, avoiding the profane novelties of words, and oppositions of knowledge falsely so called. Which some promising, have erred concerning the faith. 1 Tim. 6/20, 21.

Continue thou in those things which thou hast learned, and which have been committed to thee: knowing of whom thou hast learned them. 2 Tim. 3/14.

If this counsel or this work be of men, it will come to nought. But if it be of God, you cannot overthrow it. Acts 5/38, 39.

Take heed and beware of the leaven of the Pharisees and Sadduces. Matt. 16/6; Mark 8/15.

I will protect this city. 4 Kings 19/34.

He shall build me a house, and I will establish his throne for ever. 1 Paral. 17/12.

I will settle him in my house, and in my kingdom for ever: and his throne shall be most firm for ever. 1 Paral. 17/14.

A mountain in which God is well pleased to dwell: for there the Lord shall dwell unto the end. Ps. 67/17.

I will not leave you orphans. John 14/18.

I will ask the Father, and he shall give you another Paraclete, that he may abide with you for ever. John 14/16.

Thou shalt not fear them, because the Lord thy God is in the midst of thee, a God mighty and terrible. Deut. 7/21.

For there shall be a time, when they will not endure sound doctrine: but according to their own desires, they will heap to themselves teachers, having to themselves itching ears: and will indeed turn away their hearing from the truth. 2 Tim. 4/3, 4.

But the word of the Lord endureth for ever. And this is the word which by the gospel hath been preached unto you. 1 Pet. 1/25; Isai. 40/8.

In the last times, some shall depart from the faith, giving heed to spirits of error, and doctrines of devils, speaking lies in hypocrisy, and having their conscience seared. 1 Tim. 4/1, 2.

You are the salt of the earth. Matt. 5/13.

Therefore, brethren, stand fast; and hold the traditions which you have learned, whether by word, or by our epistle. 2 Thess. 2/14.

Q. 127.

In whom are these attributes found in their fulness?

These attributes are found in their fulness in the Pope, the visible Head of the Church, whose infallible authority to teach bishops, priests, and people in matters of faith or morals will last to the end of the world.

Simon, Simon, behold, satan hath desired to have you, that he may sift you as wheat . . . confirm thy brethren. Luke 22/31, 32.

Feed my lambs. . . . Feed my sheep. John 21/15-17.

And I will give to thee the keys of the kingdom of heaven. And whatsoever thou shalt bind upon earth, it shall be bound also in heaven: and whatsoever thou shalt loose on earth, it shall be loosed also in heaven. Matt. 16/19.

Q. 128.

Has the Church any marks by which it may be known?

The Church has four marks by which it may be known: it is One; it is Holy; it is Catholic; it is Apostolic.

(See 115; 129 *et seq.*)

He hath set his tabernacle in the sun. Ps. 18/6.

There shall be one fold, and one shepherd. John 10/16.

This is the law of the house upon the top of the mountain: All its border round about is most holy. Ezech. 43/12.

Holy is thy temple. Ps. 64/5.

Holiness becometh thy house, O Lord, unto length of days. Ps. 92/5.

Their sound hath gone forth into all the earth: and their words unto the ends of the world. Ps. 18/5; Rom. 10/18.

A path and a way shall be there, and it shall be called the holy way: . . . and this shall be unto you a straight way, so that fools shall not err therein. Isai. 35/8.

By this shall all men know that you are my disciples, if you have love one for another. John 13/35.

It is enough for the disciple, that he be as his master, and the servant as his lord. If they have called the good man of the house Beelzebub, how much more them of his household? Matt. 10/25.

The servant is not greater than his master. If they have persecuted me, they will also persecute you: if they have kept my word, they will keep yours also. John 15/20; Matt. 10/24; John 13/16.

Wonder not, brethren, if the world hate you. 1 John 3/13.

In the world you shall have distress: but have confidence; I have overcome the world. John 16/33.

And not for them only do I pray, but for them also who through their word shall believe in me: that they all may be one, as thou, Father, in me, and I in thee: that they also may be one in us: that the world may believe that thou hast sent me. John 17/20, 21.

The way of truth shall be evil spoken of. 2 Pet. 2/2.

You shall be hated by all nations for my name's sake. Matt. 24/9.

Many good works I have shewed you from my father; for which of those works do you stone me? John 10/32.

At that time there was raised a great persecution against the church which was at Jerusalem. Acts 8/1.

They will put you out of the synagogues. John 16/2. (See Matt. 10/17, 18; Luke 21/12.)

He that knoweth God, heareth us. He that is not of God, heareth us not. By this we know the spirit of truth and the spirit of error. 1 John 4/6.

And they were persevering in the doctrine of the apostles, and in the communication of the breaking of bread, and in prayers. Acts 2/42.

And if our gospel be also hid; it is hid to them that are lost, in whom the god of this world hath blinded the minds of unbelievers, that the light of the gospel of the glory of Christ, who is the image of God, should not shine unto them. For we preach not ourselves, but Jesus Christ our Lord. 2 Cor. 4/3-5.

The church of the living God, the pillar and ground of the truth. 1 Tim. 3/15.

Built upon the foundation of the apostles and prophets. Ephes. 2/20.

The nations shall know that I am the Lord, the sanctifier of Israel, when my sanctuary shall be in the midst of them for ever. Ezech. 37/28.

Thy ears shall hear the word of one admonishing thee behind thy back: This is the way, walk ye in it: and go not aside, neither to the right hand nor to the left. Isai. 30/21.

Come, let us go up to the mountain of the Lord, and to the house of the God of Jacob: and he will teach us his ways, and we will walk in his paths. Micheas 4/2.

Q. 129.

How is the Church One?

The Church is One because all its members agree in one faith, are all in one communion, and are all under one head.

By this shall all men know that you are my disciples, if you have love one for another. John 13/35.

And the multitude of believers had but one heart and one soul. Acts 4/32.

Other sheep I have that are not of this fold: them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice, and there shall be one fold, and one shepherd. John 10/16.

But you do not believe: because you are not of my sheep. My sheep hear my voice: and I know them, and they follow me. John 10/26, 27.

The Lord knoweth how . . . to reserve the unjust unto the day of judgment to be tormented: and especially them who walk after the flesh in the lust of uncleanness, and despise government, audacious, self-willed, they fear not to bring in sects, blaspheming. 2 Pet. 2/9, 10.

Now the Spirit manifestly saith, that in the last times, some shall depart from the faith, giving heed to spirits of error, and doctrines of devils. 1 Tim. 4/1. (See 2 Pet. 3/3.)

What meaneth this transgression? Why have you forsaken the Lord, the God of Israel, building a sacrilegious altar, and revolting from the worship of him? Josue 22/16 & 22/29.

There is neither Jew nor Greek: there is neither bond nor free: . . . For you are all one in Christ Jesus. Gal. 3/28.

He prophesied that Jesus should die for the nation. And not only for the nation, but to gather together in one the children of God that were dispersed. John 11/51, 52.

Father, keep them in thy name whom thou hast given me: that they may be one, as we also are. John 17/11 & 17/21-23.

We being many, are one bread, one body, all that partake of one bread. 1 Cor. 10/17.

For in one Spirit were we all baptized into one body. 1 Cor. 12/13.

One body, and one Spirit: as you are called in one hope of your calling. One Lord, one faith, one baptism. One God and Father of all. Ephes. 4/4-6.

The church, which is his body, and the fulness of him, who is filled all in all. Ephes. 1/22, 23.

Try your ownselves if you be in the faith: prove ye yourselves. 2 Cor. 13/5.

Be of one mind. 2 Cor. 13/11.

Careful to keep the unity of the Spirit in the bond of peace. Ephes. 4/3.

Every kingdom divided against itself shall be made desolate: and every city or house divided against itself shall not stand. Matt. 12/25; Mark 3/24, 25; Luke 11/17.

For God is not the God of dissension, but of peace. 1 Cor. 14/33.

So we, being many, are one body in Christ, and every one members one of another. Rom. 12/5.

Those who are of the household of the faith. Gal. 6/10.

And let the peace of Christ rejoice in your hearts, wherein also you are called in one body. Col. 3/15.

For I have espoused you to one husband, that I may present you as a chaste virgin to Christ. But I fear lest, as the serpent seduced Eve by his subtility, so your minds should be corrupted, and fall from the simplicity that is in Christ. 2 Cor. 11/2, 3.

Now I beseech you, brethren, to mark them who make dissensions, and offences contrary to the doctrine which you have learnt, and to avoid them. Rom. 16/17.

A man that is a heretic, after the first and second admonition, avoid: knowing that he that is such an one, is subverted, and sinneth, being condemned by his own judgment. Titus 3/10, 11.

For if he that cometh preacheth another Christ, whom we have not preached: or if you receive another Spirit, whom you have not received; or another gospel, which you have not received; you might well bear with him . . . For such false apostles are deceitful workmen, transforming themselves into the apostles of Christ . . . whose end shall be according to their works. 2 Cor. 11/4, 13, 15.

The works of the flesh are manifest, which are . . . sects. Gal. 5/19, 20.

Now I beseech you, brethren, by the name of our Lord Jesus Christ, that you all speak the same thing, and that there be no schisms among you. 1 Cor. 1/10.

There are some that trouble you, and would pervert the gospel of Christ. But though we, or an angel from heaven, preach a gospel to you besides that which we have preached to you, let him be anathema. Gal. 1/7, 8.

If any man come to you, and bring not this doctrine, receive him not. 2 John 1/10.

Beware of false prophets. Matt. 7/15.

They went out from us; but they were not of us. 1 John 2/19.

Ravening wolves will enter in among you, not sparing the flock. And of your own selves shall arise men speaking perverse things, to draw away disciples after them. Therefore watch. Acts 20/29-31.

Be of one mind in the Lord. Philip. 4/2.

Stand fast in one spirit, with one mind labouring together for the faith of the gospel. Philip. 1/27.

My perfect one is but one. Cant. 6/8.

In the last time there should come mockers, walking according to their own desires. . . . These are they, who separate themselves, . . . having not the Spirit. Jude 1/18, 19.

For there must be also heresies: that they also, who are reproved, may be made manifest among you. 1 Cor. 11/19.

Until we all meet into the unity of faith, . . . that henceforth we be no more children, tossed to and fro, and carried about with every wind of doctrine, by the wickedness of men. Ephes. 4/13, 14.

As the branch cannot bear fruit of itself unless it abide in the vine, so neither can you unless you abide in me. John 15/4.

Fulfil ye my joy, that you be of one mind, having the same charity, being of one accord, agreeing in sentiment. Philip. 2/2.

That we be of one mind, let us also continue in the same rule. Philip. 3/16.

And I will set up one shepherd over them, and he shall feed them. Ezech. 34/23.

For other foundation no man can lay, but that which is laid. 1 Cor. 3/11.

Now there are many members indeed, yet one body. 1 Cor. 12/20.

Remember your prelates who have spoken the word of God to you: whose faith follow. . . . Be not led away with various and strange doctrines. Heb. 13/7, 9.

There shall be among you lying teachers, who shall bring in sects of perdition. 2 Pet. 2/1.

Desiring to be teachers of the law, understanding neither the things they say, nor whereof they affirm. 1 Tim. 1/7.

They are blind, and leaders of the blind. And if the blind lead the blind, both fall into the pit. Matt. 15/14; Luke 6/39.

These are fountains without water, and clouds tossed with whirlwinds, to whom the mist of darkness is reserved. 2 Pet. 2/17; Jude 1/12, 13.

Bear not the yoke with unbelievers . . . what fellowship hath light with darkness? 2 Cor. 6/14.

If he will not hear the church, let him be to thee as the heathen and publican. Matt. 18/17.

Children of Belial are gone out of the midst of thee. Deut. 13/13.

Beware lest thou offer thy holocausts in every place that thou shalt see. Deut. 12/13.

Stand fast in the faith. 1 Cor. 16/13.

The church of God. 1 Cor. 15/9; 2 Cor. 1/1; Philip. 3/6; 1 Tim. 3/5 & 3/15.

That which is common to us both, your faith and mine. Rom. 1/12.

They gave their ownselves first to the Lord, then to us by the will of God. 2 Cor. 8/5.

Paul, . . . an apostle of Jesus Christ, according to the faith of the elect of God, . . . to Titus, my beloved son, according to the common faith. Titus 1/1, 4.

Be ye all of one mind. 1 Pet. 3/8.

Continue in the faith, grounded and settled, and immovable from the hope of the gospel which you have heard, which is preached in all the creation that is under heaven. Col. 1/23.

Brethren, stand fast; and hold the traditions which you have learned, whether by word, or by our epistle. 2 Thess. 2/14.

He that is not with me, is against me: and he that gathereth not with me, scattereth. Matt. 12/30; Luke 11/23.

Now the God of patience and of comfort grant you to be of one mind one towards another, according to Jesus Christ: that with one mind, and with one mouth, you may glorify God and the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ. Rom. 15/5, 6.

Q. 130.

How is the Church Holy?

The Church is Holy because its founder, Jesus Christ, is holy; because it teaches a holy doctrine; invites all to a holy life; and because of the eminent holiness of so many thousands of its children.

This is the law of the house upon the top of the mountain: All its border round about is most holy. Ezech. 43/12.

Who is she that cometh forth as the morning rising, fair as the moon, bright as the sun, . . . ? Cant. 6/9.

Thou art all fair, . . . and there is not a spot in thee. Cant. 4/7.

I have chosen you; and have appointed you, that you should go, and should bring forth fruit. John 15/16.

He chose us in him (Christ) before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and unspotted in his sight in charity. Ephes. 1/4.

A chosen generation, . . . a holy nation, a purchased people. 1 Pet. 2/9.

But you, . . . building yourselves upon your most holy faith, praying in the Holy Ghost, keep yourselves in the love of God. Jude 1/20.

Be you also as living stones built up, a spiritual house,

a holy priesthood, to offer up spiritual sacrifices, acceptable to God by Jesus Christ. 1 Pet. 2/5.

In whom all the building, being framed together, groweth up into an holy temple in the Lord. Ephes. 2/21.

According to him that hath called you, who is holy, be you also in all manner of conversation holy. 1 Pet. 1/15.

Wherefore, brethren, labour the more, that by good works, you may make sure your calling and election. For doing these things, you shall not sin. 2 Pet. 1/10.

Christ also loved the church, and delivered himself up for it: that he might sanctify it, cleansing it by the laver of water in the word of life; that he might present it to himself a glorious church, not having spot, or wrinkle, or any such thing, but that it should be holy and without blemish. Ephes. 5/25-27.

Jerusalem shall be called the City of Truth, and the Mountain of the Lord of hosts, the sanctified mountain. Zach. 8/3.

All thy children shall be taught of the Lord. Isai. 54/13; John 6/45.

And thou shalt be founded in justice. Isai. 54/14.

By their fruits you shall know them. Matt. 7/20.

That henceforward you walk not as also the Gentiles walk in the vanity of their mind. Ephes. 4/17.

You . . . he hath reconciled in the body of his flesh, through death, to present you holy, and unspotted, and blameless, before him. Col. 1/22.

Who did no sin, neither was guile found in his mouth. 1 Pet. 2/22; Isai. 53/9; 1 John 3/5.

Which of you shall convince me of sin? John 8/46.

He hath done all things well. Mark 7/37.

Never did man speak like this man. John 7/46.

Be ye therefore followers of God, as most dear children. Ephes. 5/1.

God hath not called us unto uncleanness, but unto sanctification. 1 Thess. 4/7.

Be you therefore perfect. Matt. 5/48.

Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you. Matt. 28/20.

Therefore seeing we have this ministration, . . . we renounce the hidden things of dishonesty, not walking in craftiness, nor adulterating the word of God, but by mani-

festation of the truth, commending ourselves to every man's conscience, in the sight of God. 2 Cor. 4/1, 2.

For we are the good odour of Christ unto God, in them that are saved, and in them that perish. . . . And for these things who is so sufficient? 2 Cor. 2/15, 16.

But you are come to mount Sion, and to the city of the living God, the heavenly Jerusalem, and to the company of many thousands of angels. Heb. 12/22.

Thy testimonies are become exceeding credible: holiness becometh thy house. Ps. 92/5.

Behold, we have left all things, and have followed thee. Mark 10/28; Luke 18/28; Matt. 19/27.

And lo a Lamb stood upon mount Sion, and with him an hundred forty-four thousand, having his name, . . . for they are without spot before the throne of God. Apoc. 14/1, 5.

You are our epistle, . . . which is known and read by all men: being manifested, that you are the epistle of Christ, ministered by us. 2 Cor. 3/2, 3.

These signs shall follow them that believe. Mark 16/17, 18.

Be followers of me, brethren, and observe them who walk so as you have our model. For many walk, . . . that . . . are the enemies of the cross of Christ. Philip. 3/17, 18.

In every place there is sacrifice, and there is offered to my name a clean oblation. Mal. 1/11.

Be ye doers of the word, and not hearers only. James 1/22.

For our exhortation was not of error, nor of uncleanness, nor in deceit, but as we were approved by God that the gospel should be committed to us; even so we speak, not as pleasing men, but God. 1 Thess. 2/3, 4.

For the grace of God our Saviour hath appeared to all men, instructing us, that, denying ungodliness and worldly desires, we should live soberly, and justly, and godly in this world. Titus 2/11, 12.

That you may be blameless, and sincere children of God, without reproof, in the midst of a crooked and perverse generation. Philip. 2/15.

For them do I sanctify myself: that they also may be sanctified in truth. John 17/19.

All things of his divine power, which appertain to life and godliness, are given us, through the knowledge of him who hath called us by his own proper glory and virtue. By whom he hath given us most great and precious promises: that by these you may be made partakers of the divine nature: flying the corruption of that concupiscence which is in the world. 2 Pet. 1/3, 4.

You shall be holy, for I am holy. 1 Pet. 1/16.

A path and a way shall be there, and it shall be called the holy way . . . this shall be unto you a straight way, so that fools shall not err therein. Isai. 35/8.

God his way is immaculate. 2 Kings 22/31.

But you, my dearly beloved, be mindful of the words which have been spoken before by the apostles of our Lord Jesus Christ; who told you, that in the last time there should come mockers, walking according to their own desires in ungodlinesses. These are they, who separate themselves, sensual men, having not the Spirit. But you, my beloved, building yourselves upon your most holy faith, praying in the Holy Ghost, keep yourselves in the love of God. Jude 1/17-21.

Q. 131.

How is the Church Catholic or universal?

The Church is Catholic or universal because it subsists in all ages, teaches all nations, and maintains all truth.

(See 12, Art. 9.)

Go ye into the whole world, and preach the gospel to every creature. Mark 16/15.

We have received grace and apostleship for obedience to the faith in all nations for his name. Rom. 1/5.

This gospel of the kingdom shall be preached in the whole world, for a testimony to all nations. Matt. 24/14.

Let that which you have heard from the beginning abide in you. 1 John 2/24.

And unto all nations the gospel must first be preached. Mark 13/10.

Until the fulness of the Gentiles should come in. Rom. 11/25.

For the promise is to you, and to your children, and to all that are far off. Acts 2/39; Gen. 26/4 & 28/14.

Thou . . . hast redeemed us to God, in thy blood, out of every tribe, and tongue, and people, and nation; and hast made us to our God a kingdom and priests, and we shall reign on the earth. Apoc. 5/9.

Enlarge the place of thy tent, . . . thou shalt pass on to the right hand, and to the left: . . . the holy One of Israel, shall be called the God of all the earth. Isai. 54/2, 3, 5.

He shall sprinkle many nations, . . . for they to whom it was not told of him, have seen: and they that heard not, have beheld. Isai. 52/15; Rom. 15/21.

There are no speeches nor languages, where their voices are not heard. Their sound hath gone forth into all the earth: and their words unto the ends of the world. Ps. 18/4, 5; Rom. 10/18.

From the rising of the sun even to the going down, my name is great among the Gentiles, and in every place there is sacrifice. Mal. 1/11.

The word of the Lord was published throughout the whole country. Acts 13/49.

They going forth, preached everywhere. Mark 16/20.

The word of the truth of the gospel; which is come unto you, as also it is in the whole world, and bringeth forth fruit and groweth. Col. 1/5, 6.

The gospel which you have heard, which is preached in all the creation that is under heaven. Col. 1/23.

Your faith is spoken of in the whole world. Rom. 1/8.

You shall be witnesses unto me in Jerusalem, and in all Judea, and Samaria, and even to the uttermost part of the earth. Acts 1/8.

In every place, your faith which is towards God, is gone forth. 1 Thess. 1/8.

The grace of God . . . hath appeared to all men. Titus 2/11.

(Christ) the true light, which enlighteneth every man that cometh into this world. John 1/9.

Declare his glory among the Gentiles: his wonders among all people. Ps. 95/3.

All the ends of the earth shall worship thee. Nations from afar shall come to thee. Tob. 13/13, 14; Ps. 71/11.

He shall rule from sea to sea, and from the river unto the ends of the earth. Ps. 71/8.

All the ends of the earth shall remember, and shall be converted to the Lord. Ps. 21/28.

Of his kingdom there shall be no end. Luke 1/33.

I saw a great multitude, which no man could number, of all nations, and tribes, and peoples, and tongues. Apoc. 7/9.

In the last days the mountain of the house of the Lord shall be prepared on the top of mountains, and shall be exalted above the hills, and all nations shall flow unto it. Isai. 2/2; Micheas 4/1.

Jerusalem shall be inhabited without walls, by reason of the multitude . . . And I will be to it, saith the Lord, a wall of fire round about. Zach. 2/4, 5.

All flesh shall come to thee. Ps. 64/3.

The multitude of the sea shall be converted to thee, the strength of the Gentiles shall come to thee. Isai. 60/5.

Now there were dwelling at Jerusalem . . . devout men out of every nation under heaven. . . . They, therefore, that received his word were baptized: and there were added in that day about three thousand souls. Acts 2/5, 41.

Many shall come from the east and the west, and shall sit down with Abraham, and Isaac, and Jacob, in the kingdom. Matt. 8/11; Luke 13/29.

Teach ye all nations: . . . teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: . . . I am with you all days, even to the consummation of the world. Matt. 28/18-20.

I will give thee the Gentiles for thy inheritance, and the utmost parts of the earth for thy possession. Ps. 2/8; Acts 13/47; Isai. 49/6.

But in the days of those kingdoms, the God of heaven will set up a kingdom that shall never be destroyed. Dan. 2/44.

The stone that struck the statue became a great mountain, and filled the whole earth. Dan. 2/35.

With the joy of the whole earth is mount Sion founded, . . . the city of our God: God hath founded it for ever. Ps. 47/3, 9.

The gates of hell shall not prevail against it. Matt. 16/18.

I will make their word in truth, and I will make a per-

petual covenant with them. Isai. 61/8. (See Ezech. 37/26.)

I will ask the Father, and he shall give you another Paraclete, that he may abide with you for ever. John 14/16.

Who will have all men to be saved. 1 Tim. 2/4.

Who gave himself a redemption for all, a testimony in due times. 1 Tim. 2/6.

He that spared not even his own son: but delivered him up for us all. Rom. 8/32.

Not willing that any should perish, but that all should return to penance. 2 Pet. 3/9.

That penance and remission of sins should be preached in his name unto all nations. Luke 24/47.

He is the propitiation for our sins: and not for ours only, but also for those of the whole world. 1 John 2/2.

To what is the kingdom of God like . . . ? It is like to a grain of mustard seed, which a man took and cast into his garden, and it grew, and became a great tree, and the birds of the air lodged in the branches thereof. Luke 13/18, 19; Matt. 13/31, 32; Mark, 4/31, 32.

It is like to leaven, which a woman took and hid in three measures of meal, till the whole was leavened. Luke 13/21; Matt. 13/33.

The marriage was filled with guests. Matt. 22/10.

For many are called, but few are chosen. Matt. 22/14 & 20/16.

My sanctuary shall be in the midst of them for ever. Ezech. 37/28.

Remember thy congregation, which thou hast possessed from the beginning. Ps. 73/2.

Q. 132.

How is the Church Apostolic?

The Church is Apostolic because it was founded by Christ on His Apostles, and is governed by their lawful successors, and because it has never ceased, and never will cease, to teach their doctrine.

Having called his twelve disciples together, he gave them power. Matt. 10/1; Mark 6/7; Luke 9/1.

Giving commandments by the Holy Ghost to the apostles whom he had chosen. Acts 1/2.

Going up into a mountain, he called unto him whom he would himself: and they came to him. And he made that twelve should be with him, and that he might send them to preach. Mark 3/13, 14; Luke 6/12, 13. (See Acts 1/13.)

And the lot fell upon Matthias, and he was numbered with the eleven apostles. Acts 1/26.

And when Jesus passed on from thence, he saw a man sitting in the custom-house, named Matthew: and he saith to him: Follow me. And he arose up, and followed him. Matt. 9/9; Mark 2/14; Luke 5/27, 28.

And when day was come, he called unto him his disciples; and he chose twelve of them (whom also he named apostles:) Simon, whom he surnamed Peter, and Andrew, his brother, James and John, Philip and Bartholomew, Matthew and Thomas, James, the son of Alpheus, and Simon, who is called Zelotes, and Jude, the brother of James, and Judas Iscariot. Luke 6/13-16.

Have not I chosen you twelve? John 6/71.

These twelve Jesus sent. Matt. 10/5.

You have not chosen me: but I have chosen you; and have appointed you, that you should go, and should bring forth fruit; and your fruit should remain. John 15/16.

How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings, and that preacheth peace: of him that sheweth forth good, that preacheth salvation. Isai. 52/7; Nahum 1/15; Rom. 10/15.

Thou art Peter; and upon this rock I will build my church. Matt. 16/18.

He that heareth you, heareth me: and he that despiseth you, despiseth me. Luke 10/16; Matt. 10/40; John 13/20.

And I will set up pastors over them, and they shall feed them. Jer. 23/4.

I will give you pastors according to my own heart, and they shall feed you with knowledge and doctrine. Jer. 3/15.

For the lips of the priests shall keep knowledge, and they shall seek the law at his mouth, because he is the angel of the Lord of hosts. Mal. 2/7.

Jesus coming, spoke to them, saying: All power is given

to me in heaven and in earth. Going therefore, teach ye all nations: baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost, teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, behold, I am with you all days, even to the consummation of the world. Matt. 28/18-20.

He said to them: Go ye into the whole world, and preach the gospel to every creature. Mark 16/15. (See Ps. 18/4, 5.)

As the Father hath sent me, I also send you. John 20/21.

You shall receive the power of the Holy Ghost coming upon you, and you shall be witnesses unto me in Jerusalem, and in all Judea, and Samaria, and even to the uttermost part of the earth. Acts 1/8.

How shall we escape, if we neglect so great salvation: which having begun to be declared by the Lord, was confirmed unto us by them that heard him. Heb. 2/3.

And they were persevering in the doctrine of the apostles. Acts 2/42.

The things which thou hast heard of me by many witnesses, the same commend to faithful men, who shall be fit to teach others also. 2 Tim. 2/2.

I charge thee before God and Jesus Christ, . . . preach the word; be instant in season, out of season: reprove, entreat, rebuke in all patience and doctrine. For there shall be a time, when they will not endure sound doctrine: but according to their own desires, they will heap to themselves teachers, having to themselves itching ears: and will indeed turn away their hearing from the truth. 2 Tim. 4/1-4.

We have received grace and apostleship for obedience to the faith in all nations for his name. Rom. 1/5.

Therefore, brethren, stand fast; and hold the traditions which you have learned, whether by word, or by our epistle. 2 Thess. 2/14.

And he (Paul) went through Syria and Cilicia, confirming the churches: commanding them to keep the precepts of the apostles and the ancients. Acts 15/41.

And as they (Paul and Timothy) passed through the cities, they delivered unto them the decrees for to keep, that were decreed by the apostles and ancients who were at Jerusalem. Acts 16/4, 5.

Keep my ordinances as I have delivered them to you. 1 Cor. 11/2.

As we were approved by God that the gospel should be committed to us; even so we speak. 1 Thess. 2/4.

Separate me Saul and Barnabas for the work whereunto I have taken them. Then they fasting, and praying, and imposing their hands upon them, sent them away. Acts 13/2, 3.

And when Paul and Barnabas had no small contest with them, they determined that Paul and Barnabas, and certain others of the other side, should go up to the apostles and priests to Jerusalem about this question. Acts 15/2.

Then it pleased the apostles, and ancients, with the whole church, to choose men of their own company, and to send to Antioch with Paul and Barnabas. Acts 15/22.

Built upon the foundation of the apostles and prophets, Jesus Christ himself being the chief corner-stone. Ephes. 2/20.

As thou hast sent me into the world, I also have sent them into the world. John 17/18.

Upon thy walls, O Jerusalem, I have appointed watchmen all the day, and all the night; they shall never hold their peace. Isai. 62/6.

And the wall of the city had twelve foundations, and in them, the twelve names of the twelve apostles of the Lamb. Apoc. 21/14.

You also shall sit on twelve seats, judging the twelve tribes of Israel. Matt. 19/28.

And he saith to them (Simon and Andrew): Come ye after me, and I will make you to be fishers of men. And they immediately leaving their nets, followed him. Matt. 4/19, 20; Mark 1/16-18; Luke 5/10, 11.

And taking the seven loaves and the fishes, and giving thanks, he brake, and gave to his disciples, and the disciples gave to the people. Matt. 15/36 & 14/19; Mark 6/41; Luke 9/16.

Jesus himself did not baptize, but his disciples. John 4/2.

You are the salt of the earth. . . . You are the light of the world. Matt. 5/13, 14.

Take heed to yourselves, and to the whole flock, wherein the Holy Ghost hath placed you bishops, to rule the church of God. Acts 20/28.

Remember your prelates who have spoken the word of God to you: whose faith follow. Heb. 13/7.

Be not led away with various and strange doctrines. Heb. 13/9.

Beware of false prophets. Matt. 7/15.

Desiring to be teachers of the law, understanding neither the things they say, nor whereof they affirm. 1 Tim. 1/7.

Know also this, that, in the last days, shall come on dangerous times: men shall be lovers of themselves, covetous, haughty, proud, blasphemers, disobedient to parents, ungrateful, wicked, without affection, without peace, slanderers, incontinent, unmerciful, without kindness, traitors, stubborn, puffed up, and lovers of pleasures more than of God: having an appearance indeed of godliness, but denying the power thereof. Now these avoid. 2 Tim. 3/1-5.

Obey your prelates, and be subject to them. Heb. 13/17.

How shall they believe him of whom they have not heard? And how shall they hear without a preacher? And how shall they preach unless they be sent? Rom. 10/14, 15.

Neither doth any man take the honour to himself, but he that is called by God, as Aaron was. Heb. 5/4.

I did not send prophets, yet they ran: I have not spoken to them, yet they prophesied. Jer. 23/21. (See Jer. 27/15 & 29/9.)

Amen, amen I say to you: he that entereth not by the door into the sheepfold, but climbeth up another way, the same is a thief and a robber. John 10/1.

Paul, a servant of Jesus Christ, called to be an apostle. Rom. 1/1.

I am made a minister, according to the dispensation of God, which is given me towards you, that I may fulfil the word of God. Col. 1/25; Ephes. 3/7.

And he gave some apostles, and some prophets, and other some evangelists, and other some pastors and doctors, for the perfecting of the saints, for the work of the ministry, for the edifying of the body of Christ. Ephes. 4/11, 12.

After three years, I went to Jerusalem to see Peter, and I tarried with him fifteen days. Gal. 1/18.

And I went up according to revelation: and conferred with them the gospel which I preached among the Gentiles, but apart with them who seemed to be something: lest perhaps I should run, or had run in vain. Gal. 2/2.

God indeed hath set some in the church, first apostles, secondly prophets, thirdly doctors. 1 Cor. 12/28.

We are of God. He that knoweth God, heareth us. He that is not of God, heareth us not. By this we know the spirit of truth and the spirit of error. 1 John 4/6.

Q. 133.

In which Church are these attributes and marks found?

These attributes and marks are found in the Holy Roman Catholic Church alone.

Though we, or an angel from heaven, preach a gospel to you besides that which we have preached to you, let him be anathema. Gal. 1/8.

Thus saith the Lord: Stand ye on the ways, and see, and ask for the old paths, which is the good way, and walk ye in it: and you shall find refreshment for your souls. Jer. 6/16.

If this counsel or this work be of men, it will come to nought. But if it be of God, you cannot overthrow it. Acts 5/38, 39.

The church that is in Babylon (Rome), . . . saluteth you. 1 Pet. 5/13.

Q. 134.

From whom does the Church derive its undying life and infallible authority?

The Church derives its undying life and infallible authority from the Holy Ghost, the spirit of truth, who abides with it for ever.

This is my covenant with thee, saith the Lord: My Spirit that is in thee, and my words that I have put into thy mouth, shall not depart out of thy mouth, nor out of the mouth of thy seed, nor out of the mouth of thy seed's seed, saith the Lord, from henceforth, and for ever. Isai. 59/21.

I will ask the Father, and he shall give you another Paraclete, that he may abide with you for ever. The Spirit of truth. John 14/16, 17.

You shall receive the power of the Holy Ghost coming upon you, and you shall be witnesses unto me. Acts 1/8.

Keep the good thing committed to thy trust by the Holy Ghost, who dwelleth in us. 2 Tim. 1/14.

We ought to obey God rather than men. Acts 5/29.

Fear not, for thou shalt not be confounded nor blush: for thou shalt not be put to shame. . . . For he that made thee shall rule over thee, the Lord of hosts is his name: and thy Redeemer, the holy One of Israel, shall be called the God of all the earth. Isai. 54/4, 5.

For he was teaching them as one having power, and not as the Scribes and Pharisees. Matt. 7/29.

Can the blind lead the blind? do they not both fall into the ditch? Luke 6/39; Matt. 15/14.

And as they were ministering to the Lord, and fasting, the Holy Ghost said to them: Separate me Saul and Barnabas for the work whereunto I have taken them. Acts 13/2.

So they being sent by the Holy Ghost. Acts 13/4.

I will give you a mouth and wisdom, which all your adversaries shall not be able to resist and gainsay. Luke 21/15.

All thy children shall be taught of the Lord. Isai. 54/13; John 6/45.

Q. 135.

By whom is the Church made and kept One, Holy, and Catholic?

The Church is made and kept One, Holy, and Catholic by the Holy Ghost, the spirit of love and holiness, who unites and sanctifies its members throughout the world.

(See 94; 12, Art. 8.)

When he, the Spirit of truth, is come, he will teach you all truth. John 16/13.

When he is come, he will convince the world of sin, and of justice, and of judgment. John 16/8.

The things that are to come, he shall shew you. John 16/13.

And not for them only do I pray, but for them also who through their word shall believe in me. John 17/20.

For as the body is one, and hath many members: and all the members of the body, whereas they are many, yet are one body . . . For in one Spirit were we all baptized into one body. 1 Cor. 12/12, 13.

Behold, I am with you. Matt. 28/20.

The Holy Ghost said to them: Separate me Saul and Barnabas for the work whereunto I have taken them. Acts 13/2.

Take heed to yourselves, and to the whole flock, wherein the Holy Ghost hath placed you bishops, to rule the church of God. Acts 20/28.

The Spirit also helpeth our infirmity. Rom. 8/26.

Keep the good thing committed to thy trust by the Holy Ghost. 2 Tim. 1/14.

For it is not you that speak, but the Holy Ghost. Mark 13/11; Luke 12/12; Matt. 10/20.

He shall give you another Paraclete, that he may abide with you for ever. John 14/16.

Now the church had peace . . . and was edified, walking in the fear of the Lord, and was filled with the consolation of the Holy Ghost. Acts 9/31.

The most High hath sanctified his own tabernacle. God is in the midst thereof, it shall not be moved. Ps. 45/5, 6.

Lesson Thirteenth.

ON THE SACRAMENTS IN GENERAL.

Q. 136.

What is a Sacrament?

A Sacrament is an outward sign instituted by Christ to give grace.

(See 103, 114; 152 *et seq.*)

And taking him from the multitude apart, he put his fingers into his ears, and spitting, he touched his tongue. Mark 7/33.

And taking the blind man by the hand, he led him out of the town: and spitting upon his eyes, laying his hands on him, he asked him if he saw anything. Mark 8/23.

That man that is called Jesus, made clay, and anointed my eyes, and said to me: Go to the pool of Siloe, and wash. John 9/11.

And the eunuch said: See here is water, what doth hinder me from being baptized? Acts 8/36.

Of the doctrine of baptisms, and imposition of hands. Heb. 6/2.

Who can make him clean that is conceived of unclean seed? is it not thou who only art? Job 14/4.

Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you. Matt. 28/20.

Baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost. Matt. 28/19. (See Mark 16/16.)

Confirm thy brethren. Luke 22/32.

He (Paul) went through Syria and Cilicia, confirming the churches. Acts 15/41.

By the imposition of the hands of the apostles, the Holy Ghost was given. Acts 8/18.

Do this for a commemoration of me. Luke 22/19; 1 Cor. 11/24, 25.

He breathed on them; and he said to them: Receive ye the Holy Ghost: whose sins you shall forgive, they are forgiven them: and whose sins you shall retain, they are retained. John 20/22, 23; Matt. 18/18.

Is any man sick among you? Let him bring in the priests of the church. James 5/14.

Ordain priests in every city, as I also appointed thee. Titus 1/5.

What, therefore, God hath joined together, let not man put asunder. Matt. 19/6; Mark 10/9.

This is a great sacrament. Ephes. 5/32.

Q. 137.

How many Sacraments are there?

There are seven Sacraments: Baptism, Confirmation, Holy Eucharist, Penance, Extreme Unction, Holy Orders, and Matrimony.

(See 152-291.)

Wisdom hath built herself a house, she hath hewn her out seven pillars. Prov. 9/1.

Now there are diversities of graces, but the same Spirit; and there are diversities of ministries, but the same Lord. And there are diversities of operations, but the same God, who worketh all in all. 1 Cor. 12/4-6.

Amen, amen I say to thee, unless a man be born again of water and the Holy Ghost, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God. John 3/5.

He saved us, by the laver of regeneration, and renovation of the Holy Ghost. Titus 3/5.

They laid their hands upon them, and they received the Holy Ghost. Acts 8/17.

They (Paul and Barnabas) returned again . . . confirming the souls of the disciples. Acts 14/20, 21.

He (Paul) . . . went through the country . . . in order, confirming all the disciples. Acts 18/23.

When Paul had imposed hands on them, the Holy Ghost came upon them. Acts 19/6.

The chalice of benediction which we bless, is it not the

communion of the blood of Christ? And the bread which we break, is it not the partaking of the body of the Lord? 1 Cor. 10/16.

They preached that men should do penance. Mark 6/12.

And anointed with oil many that were sick, and healed them. Mark 6/13.

Neglect not the grace that is in thee, which was given thee by prophecy, with imposition of the hands of the priesthood. 1 Tim. 4/14.

This is a great sacrament. Ephes. 5/32.

Q. 138.

Whence have the Sacraments the power of giving grace?

The Sacraments have the power of giving grace from the merits of Jesus Christ.

(See 102, 103.)

He was wounded for our iniquities, he was bruised for our sins: the chastisement of our peace was upon him, and by his bruises we are healed. Isai. 53/5; 1 Pet. 2/24.

What advantage, then, hath the Jew, or what is the profit of circumcision? Much every way. First, indeed, because the words of God were committed to them. Rom. 3/1, 2.

Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who hath blessed us with spiritual blessings in heavenly places, in Christ. Ephes. 1/3.

And he (Jesus Christ) is the propitiation for our sins: and not for ours only, but also for those of the whole world. 1 John 2/2.

Jesus Christ, . . . who hath loved us, and washed us from our sins in his own blood. Apoc. 1/5; Heb. 9/14; 1 Pet. 1/19.

The blood of Jesus Christ his son cleanseth us from all sin. 1 John 1/7.

I have laid help upon one that is mighty. Ps. 88/20.

You shall draw waters with joy out of the Saviour's fountains. Isai. 12/3.

Q. 139.

What grace do the Sacraments give?

Some of the Sacraments give sanctifying grace, and others increase it in our souls.

(See 104; 140 *et seq.*)

I will pour upon you clean water, and you shall be cleansed from all your filthiness. Ezech. 36/25.

Do penance, and be baptized, every one of you, in the name of Jesus Christ, for the remission of your sins: and you shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost. Acts 2/38.

The manifestation of the Spirit is given to every man unto profit. 1 Cor. 12/7.

Lord, thy pound hath gained ten pounds. Luke 19/16.

Q. 140.

Which are the Sacraments that give sanctifying grace?

The Sacraments that give sanctifying grace are Baptism and Penance; and they are called Sacraments of the dead.

(See 139, 141, 152, 187.)

Do penance, and be baptized, every one of you, . . . for the remission of your sins. Acts 2/38.

Whereunto baptism being of the like form, now saveth you also. 1 Pet. 3/21.

We were dead in sins. Ephes. 2/5.

Q. 141.

Why are Baptism and Penance called Sacraments of the dead?

Baptism and Penance are called Sacraments of the dead, because they take away sin, which is the death of the soul, and give grace, which is its life.

John was in the desert baptizing, and preaching the baptism of penance unto remission of sins. Mark 1/4.

It was fit that we should make merry, and be glad, for this thy brother was dead, and is come to life again; he was lost, and is found. Luke 15/32.

We were dead in sins. Ephes. 2/5.

Buried with him in baptism, in whom also you are risen again, by the faith of the operation of God. Col. 2/12.

Baptism . . . now saveth you also. 1 Pet. 3/21.

But you are now converted to the shepherd and bishop of your souls. 1 Pet. 2/25.

Blessed are they that wash their robes in the blood of the Lamb: that they may have a right to the tree of life, and may enter in by the gates into the city. Apoc. 22/14.

Thou hast the name of being alive: and thou art dead . . . observe, and do penance. Apoc. 3/1, 3.

Be mindful, therefore, from whence thou art fallen: and do penance, and do the first works. Apoc. 2/5.

Q. 142.

Which are the Sacraments that increase sanctifying grace in our soul?

The Sacraments that increase sanctifying grace in our soul are: Confirmation, Holy Eucharist, Extreme Unction, Holy Orders, and Matrimony; and they are called Sacraments of the living.

(See 139; 166 *et seq.*)

The water that I will give him, shall become in him a fountain of water springing up into life everlasting. John 4/14.

They laid their hands upon them, and they received the Holy Ghost. Acts 8/17.

He that eateth my flesh, and drinketh my blood, abideth in me, and I in him. John 6/57.

The prayer of faith shall save the sick man. James 5/15.

Neglect not the grace that is in thee, which was given thee by prophecy, with imposition of the hands of the priesthood. 1 Tim. 4/14.

To them that love God, all things work together unto good. Rom. 8/28.

He that is just, let him be justified still: and he that is holy, let him be sanctified still. Apoc. 22/11.

The path of the just, as a shining light, goeth forwards, and increaseth even to perfect day. Prov. 4/18.

Grow in grace. 2 Pet. 3/18.

Q. 143.

Why are Confirmation, Holy Eucharist, Extreme Unction, Holy Orders, and Matrimony called Sacraments of the living?

Confirmation, Holy Eucharist, Extreme Unction, Holy Orders, and Matrimony are called Sacraments of the living, because those who receive them worthily are already living the life of grace.

And every one that beareth fruit, he will purge it, that it may bring forth more fruit. John 15/2.

But let a man prove himself: . . . For he that eateth and drinketh unworthily, eateth and drinketh judgment to himself. 1 Cor. 11/28, 29.

Friend, how camest thou in hither, not having on a wedding garment? Matt. 22/12.

Wherefore leaving the word of the beginning of Christ, let us go on to things more perfect, not laying again the foundation of penance from dead works, and of faith towards God, of the doctrine of baptisms, and imposition of hands. Heb. 6/1.

If you be risen with Christ, seek the things that are above. Col. 3/1.

They that seek the Lord shall not be deprived of any good. Ps. 33/11.

Q. 144.

What sin does he commit who receives the Sacraments of the living in mortal sin?

He who receives the Sacraments of the living in mortal sin commits a sacrilege, which is a great sin, because it is an abuse of a sacred thing.

To them that are defiled, and to unbelievers, nothing is clean. Titus 1/15.

He that eateth and drinketh unworthily, eateth and drinketh judgment to himself. 1 Cor. 11/29.

He shall be profane and guilty of impiety: and shall bear his iniquity, because he hath defiled the holy thing of the Lord. Levit. 19/7, 8.

He . . . hath offered an affront to the Spirit of grace. Heb. 10/29.

Give not that which is holy to dogs; neither cast ye your pearls before swine. Matt. 7/6.

Q. 145.

Besides sanctifying grace do the Sacraments give any other grace?

Besides sanctifying grace the Sacraments give another grace, called sacramental.

To every one of us is given grace according to the measure of the giving of Christ. Ephes. 4/7.

As every man hath received grace, ministering the same one to another: as good stewards of the manifold grace of God. 1 Pet. 4/10.

To me . . . is given this grace, to preach among the Gentiles the unsearchable riches of Christ. Ephes. 3/8.

With great power did the apostles give testimony of the resurrection of Jesus Christ our Lord: and great grace was in them all. Acts 4/33.

Q. 146.

What is sacramental grace?

Sacramental grace is a special help which God gives, to attain the end for which He instituted each Sacrament.

Now there are diversities of graces, but the same Spirit. . . . And there are diversities of operations, but the same God, who worketh all in all. 1 Cor. 12/4, 6.

Having different gifts, according to the grace that is given us. Rom. 12/6.

Be baptized, every one of you, . . . for the remission of your sins. Acts 2/38.

Now, being made free from sin, and become servants to God, you have your fruit unto sanctification, and the end life everlasting. Rom. 6/22.

Therefore take unto you the armour of God, that you may be able to resist in the evil day, and to stand in all things perfect. Ephes. 6/13.

The spirit of wisdom, and of understanding, the spirit of counsel, and of fortitude, the spirit of knowledge, and of godliness, . . . the spirit of the fear of the Lord. Isai. 11/2, 3.

They knew him in the breaking of bread. Luke 24/35.

He that eateth my flesh, and drinketh my blood, abideth in me, and I in him. John 6/57.

Arise, eat: for thou hast yet a great way to go. And he arose, and ate, and drank, and walked in the strength of that food forty days and forty nights, unto the mount of God, Horeb. 3 Kings, 19/7, 8.

If we confess our sins; he is faithful and just to forgive us our sins, and to cleanse us from all iniquity. 1 John 1/9.

They should do penance, and turn to God, doing works worthy of penance. Acts 26/20.

The Lord shall raise him up: and if he be in sins, they shall be forgiven him.

Neglect not the grace that is in thee, which was given thee by prophecy, with imposition of the hands of the priesthood. 1 Tim. 4/14.

Stir up the grace of God which is in thee, by the imposition of my hands. 2 Tim. 1/6.

I am made a minister, according to the gift of the grace of God, which is given to me according to the operation of his power. Ephes. 3/7.

They two shall be in one flesh. Matt. 19/5; Gen. 2/24; Mark 10/7.

No man ever hated his own flesh: but nourisheth and cherisheth it, as also Christ doth the church. Ephes. 5/29.

But all these things one and the same Spirit worketh, dividing to every one according as he will. 1 Cor. 12/11.

Q. 147.

Do the Sacraments always give grace?

The Sacraments always give grace, if we receive them with the right dispositions.

The manifestation of the Spirit is given to every man unto profit. 1 Cor. 12/7.

Baptism . . . now saveth you also. 1 Pet. 3/21.

They laid their hands upon them, and they received the Holy Ghost. Acts 8/17.

He that eateth my flesh, and drinketh my blood, abideth in me, and I in him. John 6/57.

Whose sins you shall forgive, they are forgiven them. John 20/23.

The prayer of faith (in Extreme Unction) shall save the sick man. James 5/15.

Neglect not the grace that is in thee, which was given thee . . . with imposition of the hands. 1 Tim. 4/14.

Stir up the grace of God which is in thee, by the imposition of my hands. 2 Tim. 1/6.

This is a great sacrament. Ephes. 5/32.

Q. 148.

Can we receive the Sacraments more than once?

We can receive the Sacraments more than once, except Baptism, Confirmation, and Holy Orders.

One baptism. Ephes. 4/5.

The holy Spirit of God: whereby you are sealed unto the day of redemption. Ephes. 4/30.

Thou art a priest for ever. Ps. 109/4; Heb. 5/6 & 7/17 & 7/21.

Q. 149.

Why can we not receive Baptism, Confirmation, and Holy Orders more than once?

We cannot receive Baptism, Confirmation, and Holy Orders more than once, because they imprint a character in the soul.

For as many of you as have been baptized in Christ, have put on Christ. Gal. 3/27.

You were signed with the holy Spirit of promise. Ephes. 1/13.

Let the unction which you have received from him abide in you. 1 John 2/27.

You are sealed unto the day of redemption. Ephes. 4/30.

Q. 150.

What is the character which these Sacraments imprint in the soul?

The character which these Sacraments imprint in the soul is a spiritual mark which remains for ever.

The pledge of our inheritance. Ephes. 1/14.

The pledge of the Spirit in our hearts. 2 Cor. 1/22.

Q. 151.

Does this character remain in the soul even after death?

This character remains in the soul even after death; for the honor and glory of those who are saved; for the shame and punishment of those who are lost.

Thou art a priest for ever. Ps. 109/4; Heb. 5/6 & 7/17 & 7/21.

I heard the number of them that were signed. Apoc. 7/4.

They shall see his face: and his name shall be on their foreheads. Apoc. 22/4.

Lesson Fourteenth.

ON BAPTISM.

Q. 152.

What is Baptism?

Baptism is a Sacrament which cleanses us from original sin, makes us Christians, children of God, and heirs of heaven.

(See 137, 140.)

The laver of water in the word of life. Ephes. 5/26.

Let us draw near with a true heart in fulness of faith, having our hearts sprinkled from an evil conscience, and our bodies washed with clean water. Heb. 10/22.

Not by the works of justice which we have done, but according to his mercy he saved us, by the laver of regeneration, and renovation of the Holy Ghost . . . That, being justified by his grace, we may he heirs, according to hope of life everlasting. Titus 3/5, 7.

Amen, amen I say to thee, unless a man be born again of water and the Holy Ghost, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God. John 3/5.

But as many as received him, he gave them power to be made the sons of God, to them that believe in his name. John 1/12.

Do penance, and be baptized, every one of you, . . . for the remission of your sins. Acts 2/38.

They, therefore, that received his word, were baptized: and there were added in that day about three thousand souls. Acts 2/41.

But when they had believed Philip preaching of the kingdom of God, . . . they were baptized, both men and women. Acts 8/12.

And the eunuch said: See here is water, what doth hinder me from being baptized? Acts 8/36.

And immediately there fell from his eyes as it were scales, and he received his sight; and rising up, he was baptized. Acts 9/18.

And he commanded them to be baptized. Acts 10/48.

And when she (Lydia) was baptized, and her household. Acts 16/15.

He that believeth, and is baptized, shall be saved. Mark 16/16.

After these things, Jesus and his disciples came into the land of Judea; and there he abode with them, and baptized. John 3/22 & 3/26.

Though Jesus himself did not baptize, but his disciples. John 4/2.

Blessed are they that wash their robes in the blood of the Lamb: that they may have a right to the tree of life. Apoc. 22/14.

For you are all the children of God, by faith in Christ Jesus. For as many of you as have been baptized in Christ, have put on Christ. Gal. 3/26, 27.

Going therefore, teach ye all nations: baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost. Matt. 28/19.

For you have not received the spirit of bondage again in fear; but you have received the spirit of adoption of sons, whereby we cry: Abba (Father). Rom. 8/15.

Behold what manner of charity the Father hath bestowed upon us, that we should be called, and should be the sons of God. 1 John 3/1.

In that day there shall be a fountain open to the house of David, and to the inhabitants of Jerusalem: for the washing of the sinner. Zach. 13/1.

We . . . were by nature children of wrath, . . . but God . . . hath quickened us together in Christ, (by whose grace you are saved). Ephes. 2/3-5.

Q. 153.

Are actual sins ever remitted by Baptism?

Actual sins and all the punishment due to them are remitted by Baptism, if the person baptized be guilty of any.

And such (unjust) some of you were; but you are washed, but you are sanctified, but you are justified, in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ, and the Spirit of our God. 1 Cor. 6/11.

Now, being made free from sin, and become servants to God, you have your fruit unto sanctification, and the end life everlasting. Rom. 6/22.

You are . . . buried with him in baptism, in whom also you are risen again by the faith of the operation of God, who hath raised him up from the dead. And you, when you were dead in your sins, . . . he hath quickened together with him; forgiving you all offences. Col. 2/11-13; Rom. 6/4.

Q. 154.

Is Baptism necessary to salvation?

Baptism is necessary to salvation, because without it we cannot enter into the kingdom of heaven.

Who can make him clean that is conceived of unclean seed? is it not thou who only art? Job 14/4.

Our fathers . . . all in Moses were baptized, in the cloud and in the sea. 1 Cor. 10/1, 2.

Amen, amen I say to thee, unless a man be born again of water and the Holy Ghost, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God. John 3/5.

He that believeth, and is baptized, shall be saved. Mark 16/16.

There shall not enter into it (the New Jerusalem) anything defiled. Apoc. 21/27.

Blessed are they that wash their robes in the blood of the Lamb: that they may have a right to the tree of life. Apoc. 22/14.

Q. 155.

Who can administer Baptism?

The priest is the ordinary minister of Baptism; but in case of necessity any one who has the use of reason may baptize.

They went down into the water, both Philip and the eunuch, and he baptized him. Acts 8/38.

Going therefore (you apostles), . . . baptizing them in

the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost. Matt. 28/19.

Though Jesus himself did not baptize, but his disciples. John 4/2.

I give God thanks, that I baptized none of you, but Crispus and Caius. 1 Cor. 1/14.

The ministers of him whom you have believed; and to every one as the Lord hath given. 1 Cor. 3/5.

There are diversities of ministries, but the same Lord. 1 Cor. 12/5.

Q. 156.

How is Baptism given?

Whoever baptizes should pour water on the head of the person to be baptized, and say, while pouring the water: "I baptize thee in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost."

See here is water, what doth hinder me from being baptized? Acts 8/36.

Going therefore, teach ye all nations: baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost. Matt. 28/19.

Can any man forbid water, that these should not be baptized . . . ? Acts 10/47.

Rise up, and be baptized, and wash away thy sins. Acts 22/16.

Q. 157.

How many kinds of Baptism are there?

There are three kinds of Baptism: Baptism of water, of desire, and of blood.

And John also was baptizing in Ennon, near Salim; because there was much water there, and they came, and were baptized. John 3/23.

He who sent me to baptize with water, said to me: He upon whom thou shalt see the Spirit descending and remaining upon him, he it is that baptizeth with the Holy Ghost. John 1/33.

I have baptized you with water; but he shall baptize you with the Holy Ghost. Mark 1/8; Acts 11/16; John 1/26.

He shall baptize you in the Holy Ghost and fire. Matt. 3/11; Luke 3/16.

John indeed baptized with water, but you shall be baptized with the Holy Ghost not many days hence. Acts 1/5 & 11/16.

And he said to Jesus: Lord, remember me when thou shalt come into thy kingdom. And Jesus said to him: Amen I say to thee, this day thou shalt be with me in paradise. Luke 23/42, 43.

I have a baptism, wherewith I am to be baptized. Luke 12/50.

He that shall lose his life for me, shall find it. Matt. 10/39 & 16/25; Mark 8/35; Luke 17/33 & 9/24.

Q. 158.

What is Baptism of water?

Baptism of water is that which is given by pouring water on the head of the person to be baptized, and saying at the same time, "I baptize thee in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost." (See Matt. 28/19.)

Thou shalt sprinkle me with hyssop, and I shall be cleansed: thou shalt wash me, and I shall be made whiter than snow. Ps. 50/9.

The laver of water in the word of life. Ephes. 5/26.

A fountain . . . for the washing of the sinner. Zach. 13/1.

The laver of regeneration. Titus 3/5.

Q. 159.

What is Baptism of desire?

Baptism of desire is an ardent wish to receive Baptism, and to do all that God has ordained for our salvation.

You shall seek me, and shall find me: when you shall seek me with all your heart. Jer. 29/13.

Wash me yet more from my iniquity, and cleanse me from my sin. Ps. 50/4.

A contrite and humbled heart, O God, thou wilt not despise. Ps. 50/19.

Can any man forbid water, that these should not be baptized, who have received the Holy Ghost as well as we? Acts 10/47.

And he said to Jesus: Lord, remember me when thou shalt come into thy kingdom. And Jesus said to him: Amen I say to thee, this day thou shalt be with me in paradise. Luke 23/42, 43.

Whosoever shall call upon the name of the Lord, shall be saved. Acts 2/21; Rom. 10/13; Joel 2/32.

Lord, what wilt thou have me to do? Acts 9/6.

In whom (Christ) you also, after you had heard the word of truth, (the gospel of your salvation:) in whom also believing you were signed with the holy Spirit of promise, who is the pledge of our inheritance, unto the redemption of acquisition. Ephes. 1/13, 14.

Q. 160.

What is Baptism of blood?

Baptism of blood is the shedding of one's blood for the faith of Christ.

He that shall lose his life for me, shall find it. Matt. 10/39 & 16/25; Mark 8/35; Luke 9/24 & 17/33.

These are they who are come out of great tribulation, and have washed their robes, and have made them white in the blood of the Lamb. Apoc. 7/14.

They loved not their lives unto death. Apoc. 12/11.

And (Herod) sending killed all the men-children that were in Bethlehem. Matt. 2/16.

I saw under the altar the souls of them that were slain for the word of God, and for the testimony which they held. Apoc. 6/9 & 20/4.

Blessed are the dead who die in the Lord. Apoc. 14/13.

Q. 161.

Is Baptism of desire or of blood sufficient to produce the effects of Baptism of water?

Baptism of desire or of blood is sufficient to produce the effects of the Baptism of water, if it is impossible to receive the Baptism of water.

Behold, how they are numbered among the children of God, and their lot is among the saints. Wis. 5/5.

You shall seek me, and shall find me: when you shall seek me with all your heart. Jer. 29/13.

He that shall lose his life for me, shall find it. Matt. 10/39.

Blessed are they that suffer persecution for justice sake: for theirs is the kingdom of heaven. Matt. 5/10.

Q. 162.

What do we promise in Baptism?

In Baptism we promise to renounce the devil with all his works and pomps.

Whatsoever is born of God, overcometh the world. 1 John 5/4.

For this purpose the Son of God appeared, that he might destroy the works of the devil. 1 John 3/8.

And let every one depart from iniquity who nameth the name of the Lord. 2 Tim. 2/19.

Now we have received not the spirit of this world, but the Spirit that is of God: that we may know the things that are given us from God. 1 Cor. 2/12.

And many of them who had followed curious arts, brought together their books, and burnt them before all. Acts 19/19.

Our wrestling is not against flesh and blood: but against principalities and powers. Ephes. 6/12.

Be sober, and watch: because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, goeth about, seeking whom he may devour. 1 Pet. 5/8.

Love not the world, nor the things which are in the world. 1 John 2/15.

Q. 163.

Why is the name of a saint given in Baptism?

The name of a saint is given in Baptism in order that the person baptized may imitate his virtues and have him for a protector.

The Lord God shall . . . call his servants by another name. Isai. 65/15.

And thou shalt be called by a new name, which the mouth of the Lord shall name. Isai. 62/2.

To him that overcometh, I will give the hidden manna, and will give him a white counter; and in the counter, a new name written. Apoc. 2/17.

Abraham. Gen. 17/5.
Israel. Gen. 32/28.
John. Luke 1/63.
Jesus. Luke 1/31.
Peter. John 1/42.
Paul. Acts 13/9.

Q. 164.

Why are godfathers and godmothers given in Baptism?

Godfathers and godmothers are given in Baptism in order that they may promise, in the name of the child, what the child itself would promise if it had the use of reason.

All that could understand, promising for their brethren, with their chief men; and they came to promise, and swear that they would walk in the law of God, which he gave in the hand of Moses, the servant of God, that they would do and keep all the commandments of the Lord our God, and his judgments, and his ceremonies. 2 Esdras 10/29.

But if any man have not care of his own, and especially of those of his house, he hath denied the faith, and is worse than an infidel. 1 Tim. 5/8.

He that instructeth his son, shall be praised in him. Eccus. 30/2.

He desireth not a multitude of faithless and unprofitable children. Eccus. 15/22.

Hast thou children? instruct them. Eccus. 7/25.

Q. 165.

What is the obligation of a godfather and a godmother?

The obligation of a godfather and a godmother is to instruct the child in its religious duties, if the parents neglect to do so or die.

His father is dead, and he is as if he were not dead: for he hath left one behind him that is like himself. Eccus. 30/4.

They that instruct many to justice, (shall shine) as stars for all eternity. Dan. 12/3.

I . . . will not cease to instruct their offspring even to the holy age. Eccus. 24/46.

That the land of all most dear to thee, might receive a worthy colony of the children of God. Wis. 12/7.

Lesson Fifteenth.

ON CONFIRMATION.

Q. 166.

What is Confirmation?

Confirmation is a Sacrament through which we receive the Holy Ghost to make us strong and perfect Christians and soldiers of Jesus Christ.

(See 137.)

They sent unto them Peter and John. Who, when they were come, prayed for them, that they might receive the Holy Ghost. For he was not as yet come upon any of them: but they were only baptized. . . . Then they laid their hands upon them, and they received the Holy Ghost. Acts 8/14-17.

When Paul had imposed his hands on them, the Holy Ghost came upon them. Acts 19/6.

Of the doctrine of baptisms, and imposition of hands. Heb. 6/2.

Now he that confirmeth us with you in Christ, and that hath anointed us, is God: who also hath sealed us, and given the pledge of the Spirit in our hearts. 2 Cor. 1/21, 22.

Believing (in Christ) you were signed with the holy Spirit of promise. Ephes. 1/13.

We have received . . . the Spirit that is of God: that we may know the things that are given us from God. 1 Cor. 2/12.

Confirm, O God, what thou hast wrought in us. Ps. 67/29.

The spirit of the Lord shall rest upon him: the spirit of wisdom, and of understanding, etc. Isai. 11/2.

Labour as a good soldier of Christ Jesus. 2 Tim. 2/3.
Be you therefore perfect, as also your heavenly Father is perfect. Matt. 5/48.

Q. 167.

Who administers Confirmation?
The bishop is the ordinary minister of Confirmation.

They sent unto them Peter and John. Who, when they were come, prayed for them, that they might receive the Holy Ghost. Acts 8/14, 15.
By the imposition of the hands of the apostles, the Holy Ghost was given. Acts 8/18.
When Paul had imposed his hands on them, the Holy Ghost came upon them. Acts 19/6.
We sent Timothy . . . to confirm you. 1 Thess. 3/2.

Q. 168.

How does the bishop give Confirmation?
The bishop extends his hands over those who are to be confirmed, prays that they may receive the Holy Ghost, and anoints the forehead of each with holy chrism in the form of a cross.

Who, when they were come, prayed for them, that they might receive the Holy Ghost. Acts 8/15.
Then they laid their hands upon them, and they received the Holy Ghost. Acts 8/17 & 19/6.

Q. 169.

What is holy chrism?
Holy chrism is a mixture of olive-oil and balm, consecrated by the bishop.

Take spices, of principal and chosen myrrh five hundred sicles, and of cinnamon half so much, . . . of calamus in like manner two hundred and fifty, and of cassia five hundred sicles by the weight of the sanctuary, of oil of olives the measure hin: and thou shalt make the holy oil of unction. Exod. 30/23-25.

This oil of unction shall be holy unto me throughout your generations. Exod. 30/31.

Thou shalt consecrate all with the oil of unction, that they may be most holy. Exod. 40/11.

Q. 170.

What does the bishop say in anointing the person he confirms?

In anointing the person he confirms the bishop says: "I sign thee with the sign of the cross, and I confirm thee with the chrism of salvation, in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost."

Peter and John. Who, when they were come, prayed for them, that they might receive the Holy Ghost. Acts 8/15.

Then they laid their hands upon them, and they received the Holy Ghost. Acts 8/17.

You were signed with the holy Spirit of promise. Ephes. 1/13.

Q. 171.

What is meant by anointing the forehead with chrism in the form of a cross?

By anointing the forehead with chrism in the form of a cross is meant, that the Christian who is confirmed must openly profess and practise his faith, never be ashamed of it, and rather die than deny it.

Thou hast anointed my head with oil. Ps. 22/5.

With my holy oil I have anointed him. For my hand shall help him. Ps. 88/21, 22.

And as for you, let the unction which you have received from him abide in you. 1 John 2/27.

God, thy God, hath anointed thee with the oil of gladness. Ps. 44/8.

Every one . . . that shall confess me before men, I will also confess him before my Father who is in heaven. Matt. 10/32.

Let us hold fast the confession of our hope without wavering. Heb. 10/23.

For he that wavereth is like a wave of the sea, which is moved and carried about by the wind. James 1/6.

Q. 172.

Why does the bishop give the person he confirms a slight blow on the cheek?

The bishop gives the person he confirms a slight blow on the cheek, to put him in mind that he must be ready to suffer everything, even death, for the sake of Christ.

For unto you it is given for Christ, not only to believe in him, but also to suffer for him. Philip. 1/29.

I count all things to be but loss for the excellent knowledge of Jesus Christ my Lord; for whom I have suffered the loss of all things. Philip. 3/8.

Who is he that can hurt you, if you be zealous of good? But if also you suffer any thing for justice sake, blessed are ye. 1 Pet. 3/13, 14.

Q. 173.

To receive Confirmation worthily is it necessary to be in the state of grace?

To receive Confirmation worthily it is necessary to be in the state of grace.

Wisdom will not enter into a malicious soul, nor dwell in a body subject to sins. Wis. 1/4.

For the Holy Spirit of discipline will flee from the deceitful, and will withdraw himself from thoughts that are without understanding, and he shall not abide when iniquity cometh in. Wis. 1/5.

To him that shall blaspheme against the Holy Ghost, it shall not be forgiven. Luke 12/10; Matt. 12/32; Mark 3/29.

Grieve not the holy Spirit of God. Ephes. 4/30. (See Heb. 6/4, 6.)

Q. 174.

What special preparation should be made to receive Confirmation?

Persons of an age to learn should know the chief mysteries of faith and the duties of a Christian, and be instructed in the nature and effects of this Sacrament.

Being ready always to satisfy every one that asketh you a reason of that hope which is in you. 1 Pet. 3/15.

There is nothing so much worth as a well-instructed soul. Eccus. 26/18.

Q. 175.

Is it a sin to neglect Confirmation?

It is a sin to neglect Confirmation, especially in these evil days when faith and morals are exposed to so many and such violent temptations.

How shall we escape, if we neglect so great salvation. Heb. 2/3.

I will pour out my spirit upon all flesh. Joel 2/28; Acts 2/17.

Be strengthened in the Lord, and in the might of his power. Put you on the armour of God, that you may be able to stand against the deceits of the devil. Ephes. 6/10, 11 & 6/13.

For our wrestling is not against flesh and blood: but against principalities and powers, against the rulers of the world of this darkness, against the spirits of wickedness in the high places. Ephes. 6/12.

Your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, goeth about, seeking whom he may devour. Whom resist ye, strong in faith. 1 Pet. 5/8, 9.

Lesson Sixteenth.

ON THE GIFTS AND FRUITS OF THE HOLY GHOST.

Q. 176.

Which are the effects of Confirmation?

The effects of Confirmation are an increase of sanctifying grace, the strengthening of our faith, and the gifts of the Holy Ghost.

By whom he hath given us most great and precious promises: that by these you may be made partakers of the divine nature. 2 Pet. 1/4.

Every best gift, and every perfect gift, is from above, coming down from the Father of lights. James 1/17.

There are diversities of graces, but the same Spirit. 1 Cor. 12/4.

For who distinguisheth thee? Or what hast thou that thou hast not received? 1 Cor. 4/7.

Then they laid their hands upon them, and they received the Holy Ghost. Acts 8/17.

Be strengthened in the Lord, and in the might of his power. Put you on the armour of God, that you may be able to stand against the deceits of the devil. Ephes. 6/10, 11 & 6/13.

Q. 177.

Which are the gifts of the Holy Ghost?

The gifts of the Holy Ghost are Wisdom, Understanding, Counsel, Fortitude, Knowledge, Piety, and Fear of the Lord.

And the spirit of the Lord shall rest upon him: the spirit of wisdom, and of understanding, the spirit of

counsel, and of fortitude, the spirit of knowledge, and of godliness, and he shall be filled with the spirit of the fear of the Lord. Isai. 11/2, 3.

I will give you spirit, and you shall live. Ezech. 37/6.

And hath filled him with the spirit of God, with wisdom, and understanding, and knowledge, and all learning. Exod. 35/31.

Where is thy fear, thy fortitude, thy patience, and the perfection of thy ways? Job 4/6.

The manifestation of the Spirit is given to every man unto profit. 1 Cor. 12/7.

Be zealous for spiritual gifts. 1 Cor. 14/1.

Q. 178.

Why do we receive the gift of Fear of the Lord?

We receive the gift of Fear of the Lord to fill us with a dread of sin.

And I will give my fear in their heart, that they may not revolt from me. Jer. 32/40.

And Moses said to the people: Fear not; for God is come to prove you, and that the dread of him might be in you, and you should not sin. Exod. 20/20.

The fear of the Lord is a fountain of life, to decline from the ruin of death. Prov. 14/27.

And thy heart hath been moved to fear, and thou hast humbled thyself before the Lord. 4 Kings 22/19.

Let the fear of the Lord be with you, and do all things with diligence. 2 Paral. 19/7.

The fear of the Lord hateth evil. Prov. 8/13.

The fear of the Lord driveth out sin. Eccus. 1/27.

No evils shall happen to him that feareth the Lord, but in temptation God will keep him, and deliver him from evils. Eccus. 33/1.

And Josaphat, being seized with fear, betook himself wholly to pray to the Lord. 2 Paral. 20/3.

O how great is the multitude of thy sweetness, O Lord, which thou hast hidden for them that fear thee! Ps. 30/20.

The eyes of the Lord are on them that fear him. Ps. 32/18.

The unjust hath said within himself, that he would sin: there is no fear of God before his eyes. Ps. 35/2.

Give place to the fear of the Most High: for the fear of God is all wisdom. Eccus. 19/18.

The soul of him that feareth the Lord is blessed. Eccus. 34/17.

Man knoweth not whether he be worthy of love or hatred. Ecces. 9/1.

The fear of the Lord is honour, and glory, and gladness, and a crown of joy. Eccus. 1/11 *et seq.*

They that fear the Lord, will seek after the things that are well pleasing to him. Eccus. 1/19.

He that feareth God, neglecteth nothing. Ecces. 7/19.

He that feareth God, will do good. Eccus. 15/1.

The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom. Ps. 110/10; Prov. 1/7 & 9/10; Eccus. 1/16.

The fear of God is the beginning of his love: the beginning of faith is to be fast joined unto it. Eccus. 25/16.

The fear of the Lord is the lesson of wisdom. Prov. 15/33.

For this end thou hast put thy fear in our hearts, to the intent that we should call upon thy name. Baruch 3/7.

With him that feareth the Lord, it shall go well in the latter end, and in the day of his death he shall be blessed. Eccus. 1/13.

With fear and trembling work out your salvation. Philip. 2/12. (See 1 Pet. 1/17.)

Fear him that can destroy both soul and body in hell. Matt. 10/28; Luke 12/5.

Pierce thou my flesh with thy fear: for I am afraid of thy judgments. Ps. 118/120.

Blessed is the man that feareth the Lord: he shall delight exceedingly in his commandments. Ps. 111/1; Prov. 28/14.

He hath blessed all that fear the Lord, both little and great. Ps. 113/13b.

Q. 179.

Why do we receive the gift of Piety?

We receive the gift of Piety to make us love God as a Father and obey Him because we love Him.

You have received the spirit of adoption of sons, whereby we cry: Abba, (Father). Rom. 8/15.

Let us therefore love God, because God first hath loved us. 1 John 4/19.

Thy name shall be named to thee . . . the . . . honour of piety. Baruch 5/4.

And we know that to them that love God, all things work together unto good, to such as, according to his purpose, are called to be saints. Rom. 8/28.

For the Father himself loveth you. John 16/27.

Godliness is profitable to all things, having promise of the life that now is, and of that which is to come. 1 Tim. 4/8.

Be ye therefore followers of God, as most dear children: and walk in love, as Christ also hath loved us. Ephes. 5/1.

Whosoever are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God. Rom. 8/14.

They that love him, will keep his way. They . . . shall be filled with his law. Eccus. 2/18, 19.

Q. 180.

Why do we receive the gift of Knowledge?

We receive the gift of Knowledge to enable us to discover the will of God in all things.

Knowledge is a fountain of life to him that possesseth it. Prov. 16/22.

Where there is no knowledge of the soul, there is no good. Prov. 19/2.

Lord, open his eyes, that he may see. 4 Kings 6/17.

Make the way known to me, wherein I should walk. Ps. 142/8. (See 142/10.)

Give me wisdom and knowledge, that I may come in and go out before thy people. 2 Paral. 1/10; Wis. 9/10.

The knowledge of the holy is prudence. Prov. 9/10.

Man knoweth not his own end: but as fishes are taken with the hook, . . . so men are taken in the evil time. Eccles. 9/12.

Now this is eternal life: that they may know thee, the only true God, and Jesus Christ, whom thou hast sent. John 17/3.

We . . . cease not to pray for you, . . . that you may be filled with the knowledge of his will, in all wisdom, and spiritual understanding. Col. 1/9.

The unwise hate knowledge. Prov. 1/22.

Who have said to God: Depart from us, we desire not the knowledge of thy ways. Job 21/14.

Therefore is my people led away captive because they had not knowledge. . . . Therefore hath hell enlarged her soul, and opened her mouth without any bounds. Isai. 5/13, 14.

Q. 181.

Why do we receive the gift of Fortitude?

We receive the gift of Fortitude to strengthen us to do the will of God in all things.

Do you, therefore, take courage, and let not your hands be weakened: for there shall be a reward for your work. 2 Paral. 15/7.

For we are the children of saints, and look for that life which God will give to those that never change their faith from him. Tob. 2/18.

Be not rebellious against the Lord: and fear ye not the people of this land, for we are able to eat them up as bread. Num. 14/9.

If thou say in thy heart: These nations are more than I, how shall I be able to destroy them? Fear not, but remember what the Lord thy God did to Pharao, and to all the Egyptians. Deut. 7/17, 18.

What man is there, that is fearful, and faint-hearted? let him go, and return to his house, lest he make the hearts of his brethren to fear. Deut. 20/8; Judges 7/3.

The Lord, who is your leader, he himself will be with thee: he will not leave thee, nor forsake thee: fear not, neither be dismayed. Deut. 31/8.

Do manfully, and be of good heart. Deut. 31/6.

Take thou courage, and shew thyself a man. 3 Kings 2/2.

Act like a man, and take courage, and do: fear not, and be not dismayed; for the Lord thy God will be with thee, and will not leave thee, nor forsake thee. 1 Paral. 28/20.

Behave like men. . . . for there are many more with us than with him. 2 Paral. 32/7.

The just man shall hold on his way, and he that hath clean hands shall be stronger and stronger. Job 17/9.

The success of war is not in the multitude of the army, but strength cometh from heaven. 1 Mach. 3/19.

The trying of your faith worketh patience. And patience hath a perfect work. James 1/3, 4.

And they indeed went from the presence of the council, rejoicing that they were accounted worthy to suffer reproach for the name of Jesus. Acts 5/41.

He shall not be moved for ever that dwelleth in Jerusalem. Ps. 124/1, 2.

Strive for justice for thy soul, and even unto death fight for justice, and God will overthrow thy enemies for thee. Eccus. 4/33.

The Spirit also helpeth our infirmity. Rom. 8/26.

I can do all things in him who strengtheneth me. Philip. 4/13.

Q. 182.

Why do we receive the gift of Counsel?

We receive the gift of Counsel to warn us of the deceits of the devil, and of the dangers to salvation.

Counsel shall keep thee, and prudence shall preserve thee, that thou mayst be delivered from the evil way, and from the man that speaketh perverse things: . . . that thou mayst walk in a good way: and mayst keep the paths of the just. Prov. 2/11, 12, 20.

My son, do nothing without counsel, and thou shalt not repent when thou hast done. Eccus. 32/24.

Give ear, my son, and take wise counsel, and cast not away my advice. Eccus. 6/24.

In all thy works let the true word go before thee, and steady counsel before every action. Eccus. 37/20.

Advise not with fools, for they cannot love but such things as please them. Eccus. 8/20.

Wherefore he that thinketh himself to stand, let him take heed lest he fall. 1 Cor. 10/12.

You have despised all my counsel, and have neglected my reprehensions. I also will laugh in your destruction, and will mock when that shall come to you which you feared. Prov. 1/25, 26.

Your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, goeth about, seeking whom he may devour. 1 Pet. 5/8.

Be ye, therefore, wise as serpents, and simple as doves. Matt. 10/16.

The thoughts of mortal men are fearful, and our counsels uncertain. Wis. 9/14.

Put you on the armour of God, that you may be able to stand against the deceits of the devil. Ephes. 6/11.

Bless God at all times: and desire of him to direct thy ways, and that all thy counsels may abide in him. Tob. 4/20.

They that do all things with counsel, are ruled by wisdom. Prov. 13/10.

The prudent man doth all things with counsel. Prov. 13/16.

Designs are brought to nothing where there is no counsel. Prov. 15/22.

Q. 183.

Why do we receive the gift of Understanding?

We receive the gift of Understanding to enable us to know more clearly the mysteries of faith.

And hardly do we guess aright at things that are upon earth: and with labour do we find the things that are before us. But the things that are in heaven, who shall search out? And who shall know thy thought, except thou give wisdom, and send thy Holy Spirit from above? Wis. 9/16, 17.

The Lord will give thee in all things understanding. 2 Tim. 2/7.

I will give thee understanding. Ps. 31/8.

Give, therefore, to thy servant, an understanding heart, to . . . discern between good and evil. 3 Kings 3/9.

Give me understanding, and I will search thy law, and I will keep it with my whole heart. Ps. 118/34.

Give me understanding, and I shall live. Ps. 118/144.

I confess to thee, O Father, Lord of heaven and earth, because thou hast hid these things from the wise and prudent, and hast revealed them to little ones. Matt. 11/25.

That henceforward you walk not as also the Gentiles

walk in the vanity of their mind, having their understanding darkened, being alienated from the life of God through the ignorance that is in them, because of the blindness of their hearts. Ephes. 4/17, 18.

We have received . . . the Spirit that is of God: that we may know the things that are given us from God. 1 Cor. 2/12.

He filled them with the knowledge of understanding. Eccus. 17/5.

Then he opened their understanding, that they might understand the scriptures. Luke 24/45.

The declaration of thy words giveth light: and giveth understanding to little ones. Ps. 118/130.

Q. 184.

Why do we receive the gift of Wisdom?

We receive the gift of Wisdom to give us a relish for the things of God, and to direct our whole life and all our actions to His honor and glory.

Be not conformed to this world, but be reformed in the newness of your mind, that you may prove what is the good, and the acceptable, and the perfect will of God. Rom. 12/2.

All wisdom is from the Lord God, and hath been always with him, and is before all time. Eccus. 1/1.

Wisdom inspireth life into her children, and protecteth them that seek after her, and will go before them in the way of justice. . . They that hold her fast, shall inherit life: and whithersoever she entereth, God will give a blessing. They that serve her, shall be servants to the holy one: and God loveth them that love her. Eccus. 4/12, 14, 15.

And God said to Solomon: Because this choice hath pleased thy heart, and thou hast not asked riches, and wealth, and glory, nor the lives of them that hate thee, nor many days of life, but hast asked wisdom and knowledge, . . . wisdom and knowledge are granted to thee, and I will give thee riches, and wealth, and glory, so that none of the kings before thee, nor after thee, shall be like thee. 2 Paral. 1/11, 12.

I will give you a mouth and wisdom, which all your adversaries shall not be able to resist. Luke 21/15.

But the wisdom that is from above, first indeed is chaste, then peaceable, modest, easy to be persuaded, consenting to the good, full of mercy and good fruits, without judging, without dissimulation. James 3/17.

Where is wisdom to be found, and where is the place of understanding? Job 28/12.

Blessed is the man that findeth wisdom, and is rich in prudence. Prov. 3/13.

She is more precious than all riches: and all the things that are desired, are not to be compared to her. Prov. 3/15.

He that shall find me, shall find life, and shall have salvation from the Lord. Prov. 8/35.

A wise man shall hear, and shall be wiser: and he that understandeth, shall possess governments. Prov. 1/5.

I called upon God, and the spirit of wisdom came upon me. Wis. 7/7.

Get wisdom, because it is better than gold. Prov. 16/16.

Wisdom is better than strength. Wis. 6/1; Ecces. 9/16.

Better is wisdom than weapons of war. Ecces. 9/18.

Wisdom hath strengthened the wise more than ten princes of the city. Ecces. 7/20.

If any of you want wisdom, let him ask of God, who giveth to all men abundantly, and upbraideth not: and it shall be given him. James 1/5.

A wise woman buildeth her house: but the foolish will pull down with her hands that also which is built. Prov. 14/1.

Now, all good things came to me together with her, and innumerable riches through her hands. Wis. 7/11.

For she is a vapour of the power of God, and a certain pure emanation of the glory of the almighty God. Wis. 7/25.

Son, if thou desire wisdom, keep justice, and God will give her to thee. Eccus. 1/33.

Who is a wise man, and endued with knowledge among you? Let him shew, by a good conversation, his work in the meekness of wisdom. James 3/13.

The desire of wisdom bringeth to the everlasting kingdom. Wis. 6/21.

To be allied to wisdom is immortality. Wis. 8/17.

And because they had not wisdom, they perished through their folly. Baruch 3/28.

Who shall know thy thought, except thou give wisdom, and send thy Holy Spirit from above: and so the ways of them that are upon earth may be corrected, and men may learn the things that please thee? Wis. 9/17, 18.

Wisdom will not enter into a malicious soul, nor dwell in a body subject to sins. Wis. 1/4.

She is an infinite treasure to men: which they that use, become the friends of God, being commended for the gift of discipline. Wis. 7/14.

(Wisdom) conducted the just, . . . through the right ways, and shewed him the kingdom of God, and gave him the knowledge of the holy things, made him honourable in his labours, and accomplished his labours. Wis. 10/10.

She will strengthen him, and make a straight way to him, and give him joy. Eccus. 4/20.

Q. 185.

Which are the Beatitudes?

The Beatitudes are:

1. **Blessed are the poor in spirit, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.** (Matt. 5/3 & 6/20.)

(See 59, PRIDE and COVETOUSNESS.)

Let this mind be in you, which was also in Christ Jesus. Philip. 2/5.

In humility, let each esteem others better than themselves. Philip. 2/3.

For if any man think himself to be something, whereas he is nothing, he deceiveth himself. Gal. 6/3.

He will save the humble of spirit. Ps. 33/19.

And Mary said: My soul doth magnify the Lord: . . . Because he hath regarded the humility of his handmaid. Luke 1/46, 48.

I am a poor man, and of small ability. 1 Kings 18/23.

Before the Lord . . . I will both play and make myself meaner than I have done; and I will be little in my own eyes. 2 Kings 6/21, 22.

Who am I, O Lord God, and what is my house, that thou hast brought me thus far? 2 Kings 7/18.

The prayer of the humble and the meek hath always pleased thee. Judith 9/16.

We have rejoiced for the days in which thou hast humbled us: for the years in which we have seen evils. Ps. 89/15.

It is good for me that thou hast humbled me. Ps. 118/71.

The bones that have been humbled shall rejoice. Ps. 50/10.

Be not wise in thy own conceit. Prov. 3/7; Rom. 12/16.

Have they made thee ruler? be not lifted up: be among them as one of them. Eccus. 32/1.

If a man desire to be first, he shall be the last of all, and the minister of all. Mark 9/34; Matt. 20/26.

The greater thou art, the more humble thyself in all things. Eccus. 3/20; Mark 10/44. (See Mark 10/43; Luke 22/26.)

By the grace of God I am what I am. 1 Cor. 15/10.

And do ye all insinuate humility one to another, for God resisteth the proud, but to the humble he giveth grace. Be you humbled, therefore, under the mighty hand of God, that he may exalt you in the time of visitation. 1 Pet. 5/5, 6; James 4/6 & 4/10.

Seek not the things that are too high for thee. Eccus. 3/22.

Whosoever shall exalt himself, shall be humbled. Matt. 23/12; Luke 14/11 & 18/14.

And many that are first shall be last: and the last shall be first. Matt. 19/30 & 20/16; Mark 10/31; Luke 13/30.

He that is the lesser among you all, he is the greater. Luke 9/48.

Thou hast hid these things from the wise and prudent, and hast revealed them to little ones. Matt. 11/25.

Amen I say to you, whosoever shall not receive the kingdom of God as a little child, shall not enter into it. Mark 10/15; Luke 18/17.

What hath pride profited us? or what advantage hath the boasting of riches brought us? Wis. 5/8.

The foolish things of the world hath God chosen, that he may confound the wise: and the weak things of the world hath God chosen, that he may confound the strong. 1 Cor. 1/27.

Charge the rich of this world not to be highminded. 1 Tim. 6/17.

He hath had regard to the prayer of the humble. Ps. 101/18.

He that hath been humbled, shall be in glory. Job 22/29; Prov. 29/23.

Humility goeth before glory. Prov. 15/33.

Better is a little to the just, than the great riches of the wicked. Ps. 36/16; Prov. 16/8.

Better is the poor man who walketh in his simplicity, than a rich man that is perverse in his lips, and unwise. Prov. 19/1.

If thou wilt be perfect, go sell what thou hast, and give to the poor. Matt. 19/21.

Do not possess gold, nor silver, nor money, in your purses. Matt. 10/9; Mark 6/8; Luke 9/3 & 10/4.

Every one that hath left house, or brethren, or sisters, or father, . . . for my name's sake: shall receive an hundred-fold. Matt. 19/29.

How hardly shall they that have riches, enter into the kingdom of God! Mark 10/23; Matt. 19/23; Luke 18/24.

The foxes have holes, and the birds of the air nests; but the Son of Man hath not where to lay his head. Luke 9/58; Matt. 8/20.

Every one of you that doth not renounce all that he possesseth, cannot be my disciple. Luke 14/33.

Their very deep poverty hath abounded unto the riches of their simplicity. 2 Cor. 8/2.

One is as it were rich when he hath nothing: and another is as it were poor when he hath great riches. Prov. 13/7.

For you know the grace of our Lord Jesus Christ, that being rich, he became poor for your sakes; that through his poverty you might be rich. 2 Cor. 8/9.

If riches abound, set not your heart upon them. Ps. 61/11.

Riches are good to him that hath no sin in his conscience. Eccus. 13/30.

The Lord is the portion of my inheritance and of my cup. Ps. 15/5.

2. **Blessed are the meek, for they shall possess the land.** (Matt. 5/4; Ps. 36/11.)

(See 366.)

The Lord lifteth up the meek: and bringeth the wicked down even to the ground. Ps. 146/6.

He will exalt the meek unto salvation. Ps. 149/4.

He shall scorn the scorners, but to the meek he will give grace. Prov. 3/34.

A mild answer breaketh wrath: but a harsh word stirreth up fury. Prov. 15/1.

Thou hast taught thy people . . . that they must be just and humane. Wis. 12/19.

My son, do thy works in meekness, and thou shalt be beloved above the glory of men. Eccus. 3/19.

If a man be overtaken in any fault, you, who are spiritual, instruct such a one in the spirit of meekness, considering thyself, lest thou also be tempted. Gal. 6/1.

And Jesus said: Neither will I condemn thee. Go, and now sin no more. John 8/11.

My son, keep thy soul in meekness, and give it honour according to its desert. Eccus. 10/31.

The bruised reed he shall not break, and smoking flax he shall not quench. Isai. 42/3; Matt. 12/20.

Learn of me, because I am meek, and humble of heart. Matt. 11/29.

Unless you be converted, and become as little children, you shall not enter into the kingdom of heaven. Matt. 18/3; Mark 10/15.

I have set a guard to my mouth, when the sinner stood against me. Ps. 38/2.

Shall not the dew assuage the heat? so also the good word is better than the gift. Eccus. 18/16.

He that keepeth his mouth, keepeth his soul: but he that hath no guard on his speech shall meet with evils. Prov. 13/3 & 21/23.

3. **Blessed are they that mourn, for they shall be comforted.** (Matt. 5/5.)

And Jesus wept. John 11/35.

He hath sent me to preach to the meek, . . . to comfort all that mourn. Isai. 61/1, 2.

The cry of the children of Israel is come unto me: and I have seen their affliction. Exod. 3/9.

But this every one is sure of that worshippeth thee, that his life, if it be under trial, shall be crowned: and if it be under tribulation, it shall be delivered: and if it be under correction, it shall . . . come to thy mercy. Tob. 3/21.

Who setteth up the humble on high, and comforteth . . . those that mourn. Job 5/11.

Thou hast turned for me my mourning into joy: thou hast cut my sackcloth, and hast compassed me with gladness. Ps. 29/12.

How long wilt thou feed us with the bread of tears: and give us for our drink tears in measure? Ps. 79/6.

Going they went and wept, casting their seeds. But coming they shall come with joyfulness, carrying their sheaves. Ps. 125/6, 7.

They that sow in tears, shall reap in joy. Ps. 125/5.

For I sent you forth with mourning and weeping: but the Lord will bring you back to me with joy and gladness for ever. Baruch 4/23.

It is better to go to the house of mourning than to the house of feasting. Eccles. 7/3.

Blessed are ye that weep now: for you shall laugh. Luke 6/21.

Receiving the word with much tribulation, with joy of the Holy Ghost. 1 Thess. 1/6.

I have compassion on the multitudes. Matt. 15/32.

For the sorrow that is according to God worketh penance steadfast unto salvation. 2 Cor. 7/10.

According to the multitude of my sorrows in my heart, thy comforts have given joy to my soul. Ps. 93/19.

After tears and weeping thou pourest in joyfulness. Tob. 3/22.

And I will turn their mourning into joy, and will comfort them, and make them joyful after their sorrow. Jer. 31/13; Job 5/11.

Your sorrow shall be turned into joy. John 16/20.

Rejoice with them that rejoice, weep with them that weep. Rom. 12/15.

Is any of you sad? Let him pray. James 5/13.

The sufferings of this time are not worthy to be compared with the glory to come. Rom. 8/18.

God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes: and death shall be no more, nor mourning, nor crying, nor sorrow. Apoc. 21/4. (See Apoc. 7/17; Isai. 25/8.)

4. **Blessed are they that hunger and thirst after justice, for they shall be filled.** (Matt. 5/6.)

And the work of justice shall be peace, and the service of justice, quietness, and security for ever. Isai. 32/17.

The just man shall hold on his way, and he that hath clean hands shall be stronger and stronger. Job 17/9.

For he hath satisfied the empty soul, and hath filled the hungry with good things. Ps. 106/9; Luke 1/53.

The just shall be in everlasting remembrance. Ps. 111/7.

Blessed are they that search his testimonies: that seek him with their whole heart. Ps. 118/2.

Blessed are ye that hunger now: for you shall be filled. Luke 6/21.

To him that thirsteth, I will give of the fountain of the water of life freely. Apoc. 21/6.

The zeal of thy house hath eaten me up. Ps. 68/10; John 2/17.

He who causeth a sinner to be converted from the error of his way, shall save his soul from death, and shall cover a multitude of sins. James 5/20.

Who is he that can hurt you, if you be zealous of good? 1 Pet. 3/13.

I would thou wert cold or hot. Apoc. 3/15.

But if you have a bitter zeal, and there be contentions in your hearts; . . . this is not wisdom, descending from above: but earthly. James 3/14, 15.

Not every one that saith to me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven. Matt. 7/21. (See Matt. 25/11; Luke 6/46.)

It is now the hour for us to rise from sleep. Rom. 13/11.

5. **Blessed are the merciful, for they shall obtain mercy.** (Matt. 5/7.)

(See 20, 222, 223; 308, "And forgive us our debts.")

According to thy ability be merciful. Tob. 4/8.

She opened it, and seeing within it an infant crying, having compassion on it, she said: This is one of the babes of the Hebrews. Exod. 2/6.

And David said to him: Fear not, for I will surely shew thee mercy for Jonathan thy father's sake. 2 Kings 9/7.

Mercy shall be built up for ever in the heavens. Ps. 88/3.

Acceptable is the man that sheweth mercy and lendeth. Ps. 111/5.

A merciful man doth good to his own soul. Prov. 11/17.

He that sheweth mercy to the poor, shall be blessed. Prov. 14/21.

He that hath mercy on the poor, lendeth to the Lord. Prov. 19/17.

He that stoppeth his ear against the cry of the poor, shall also cry himself, and shall not be heard. Prov. 21/13.

He that followeth justice and mercy, shall find life, justice, and glory. Prov. 21/21.

In judging, be merciful to the fatherless as a father, and as a husband to their mother. Eccus. 4/10.

Man to man reserveth anger, and doth he seek remedy of God? Eccus. 28/3.

Forgive us our debts, as we also forgive our debtors. Matt. 6/12.

He hath no mercy on a man like himself, and doth he entreat for his own sins? Eccus. 28/4.

Be ye kind one to another, merciful, forgiving one another, even as God hath forgiven you. Ephes. 4/32.

If you will not forgive men, neither will your Father forgive you your offences. Matt. 6/15 & 18/35; Mark 11/26.

I desired mercy, and not sacrifice. Osee 6/6.

And seeing the multitudes, he had compassion on them: because they were distressed, and lying like sheep that have no shepherd. Matt. 9/36.

And Jesus said: Neither will I condemn thee. John 8/11.

Be ye therefore merciful, as your Father also is merciful. Luke 6/36.

The Father of mercies. 2 Cor. 1/3.

I will be merciful to their iniquities, and their sins I will remember no more. Heb. 8/12; Jer. 31/34.

Love your enemies. Luke 6/27 & 6/35; Matt. 5/44.

Judge not, that you may not be judged. Matt. 7/1; Luke 6/37. (See Rom. 2/1.)

By mercy and truth iniquity is redeemed. Prov. 16/6 & 15/27.

6. **Blessed are the clean of heart, for they shall see God.** (Matt. 5/8.)

(See 186, CHASTITY; 269, 382.)

He that loveth cleanness of heart, for the grace of his lips shall have the king for his friend. Prov. 22/11.

He that walketh in justices, and speaketh truth, . . . and shutteth his eyes, that he may see no evil. He shall dwell on high. . . . His eyes shall see the king in his beauty, they shall see the land far off. Isai. 33/15-17.

O how beautiful is the chaste generation with glory! for the memory thereof is immortal. Wis. 4/1.

The soul of a holy man discovereth sometimes true things, more than seven watchmen that sit in a high place to watch. Eccus. 37/18.

Know you not, that your members are the temple of the Holy Ghost? 1 Cor. 6/19 & 3/17; 2 Cor. 6/16.

He that hath clean hands shall be stronger and stronger. Job 17/9.

Blessed are the undefiled in the way, who walk in the law of the Lord. Ps. 118/1.

The sensual man perceiveth not these things that are of the Spirit of God. 1 Cor. 2/14.

Whose end is destruction; whose God is their belly; and whose glory is their shame; who mind earthly things. Philip. 3/19.

I beseech you, therefore, brethren, by the mercy of God, that you present your bodies a living sacrifice, holy, pleasing unto God, your reasonable service. Rom. 12/1.

Thy heart has been strengthened, because thou hast loved chastity. Judith 15/11.

No price is worthy of a continent soul. Eccus. 26/20.

Who shall ascend into the mountain of the Lord: or who shall stand in his holy place? The innocent in hands, and clean of heart. Ps. 23/3, 4.

Create a clean heart in me, O God. Ps. 50/12.

He that keepeth his soul keepeth his way. Prov. 16/17.

Why do you think evil in your hearts? Matt. 9/4.

Evil thoughts are an abomination to the Lord: and pure words most beautiful shall be confirmed by him. Prov. 15/26.

Take away the rust from silver, and there shall come forth a most pure vessel. Prov. 25/4.

Let us cleanse ourselves from all defilement of the flesh and of the spirit, perfecting sanctification in the fear of God. 2 Cor. 7/1.

For God hath not called us unto uncleanness, but unto sanctification. 1 Thess. 4/7.

Who can say: My heart is clean, I am pure from sin? Prov. 20/9.

7. **Blessed are the peacemakers, for they shall be called the children of God.** (Matt. 5/9.)

(See 186, PEACE; 366.)

Into whatsoever house you enter, first say: Peace be to this house. Luke 10/5.

My people shall sit in the beauty of peace. Isai. 32/18.

What hast thou to do with peace? 4 Kings 9/18.

The son that shall be born to thee, shall be a most quiet man: . . . he shall be called Peaceable. 1 Paral. 22/9.

With them that hated peace I was peaceable. Ps. 119/7.

Pray ye for the things that are for the peace of Jerusalem. Ps. 121/6.

Glory to God in the highest: and on earth peace to men of good will. Luke 2/14.

Behold, how good and how pleasant it is for brethren to dwell together in unity. Ps. 132/1.

As he that taketh a dog by the ears, so is he that passeth by in anger, and meddleth with another man's quarrel. Prov. 26/17.

How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings, and that preacheth peace! Isai. 52/7; Nahum 1/15; Rom. 10/15.

God sent the word to the children of Israel, preaching peace by Jesus Christ. Acts 10/36.

He made peace in the land, . . . And every man sat under his vine, and under his fig tree. 1 Mach. 14/11, 12.

Love your enemies, do good to them that hate you: and pray for them that persecute and calumniate you. Matt. 5/44; Luke 6/27. (See Rom. 12/20.)

Therefore let us follow after the things that are of peace. Rom. 14/19.

The fruit of justice is sown in peace to them that make peace. James 3/18.

The whisperer and the doubletongued is accursed: for he hath troubled many that were at peace. Eccus. 28/15.

Love ye truth and peace. Zach. 8/19.

If it be possible, as much as is in you, having peace with all men. Rom. 12/18.

Follow peace with all men, and holiness; without which no man shall see God. Heb. 12/14.

For God is not the God of dissension, but of peace. 1 Cor. 14/33.

Peace I leave with you, my peace I give unto you. John 14/27.

Shall not the dew assuage the heat? so also the good word is better than the gift. Eccus. 18/16.

A peaceable tongue is a tree of life. Prov. 15/4.

Seek after peace, and pursue it. Ps. 33/15.

Grace to you, and peace. Rom. 1/7; 1 Cor. 1/3; 2 Cor. 1/2; Gal. 1/3; Ephes. 1/2, *et passim.*

And the peace of God, which surpasseth all understanding, keep your hearts and minds in Christ Jesus. Philip. 4/7. (See Num. 6/26; Col. 3/15.)

8. **Blessed are they that suffer persecution for justice' sake, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.** (Matt. 5/10.)

All that will live godly in Christ Jesus, shall suffer persecution. 2 Tim. 3/12.

For I reckon, that the sufferings of this time are not worthy to be compared with the glory to come. Rom. 8/18.

Yet so if we suffer with him, that we may be also glorified with him. Rom. 8/17.

If God be for us, who is against us? Rom. 8/31.

We glory also in tribulations, knowing that tribulation worketh patience. Rom. 5/3; James 1/3.

Bless them that persecute you. Rom. 12/14.

To no man rendering evil for evil. Rom. 12/17.

But this every one is sure of that worshippeth thee, that his life, if it be under trial, shall be crowned: and if it be under tribulation, it shall be delivered. Tob. 3/21.

I was stolen away out of the land of the Hebrews, and here without any fault was cast into the dungeon. Gen. 40/15.

And Saul endeavoured to nail David to the wall with his spear. 1 Kings 19/10.

In my distress I will call upon the Lord, and I will cry to my God. 2 Kings 22/7.

Put this man in prison, and feed him with bread of affliction, and water of distress. 3 Kings 22/27.

And because thou wast acceptable to God, it was necessary that temptation should prove thee. Tob. 12/13.

May the Lord hear thee in the day of tribulation: may the name of the God of Jacob protect thee. Ps. 19/2.

For thy sake, we are killed all the day long: we are counted as sheep for the slaughter. Ps. 43/22; Rom. 8/36.

Our God is our refuge and strength: a helper in troubles. Ps. 45/1.

From heaven the Lord hath looked upon the earth. That he might hear the groans of them that are in fetters: that he might release the children of the slain. Ps. 101/20, 21.

He that walketh in the right way, and feareth God, is despised by him that goeth by an infamous way. Prov. 14/2.

For gold and silver are tried in the fire, but acceptable men in the furnace of humiliation. Eccus. 2/5. (See Wis. 3/6.)

For what glory is it, if committing sin, and being buffeted for it, you endure? But if doing well you suffer patiently; this is thanksworthy before God. 1 Pet. 2/20.

If also you suffer any thing for justice sake, blessed are ye. 1 Pet. 3/14.

Love your enemies, do good to them that hate you: and pray for them that persecute and calumniate you. Matt. 5/44; Luke 6/27, 28.

They will deliver you up in councils, and they will scourge you in their synagogues. Matt. 10/17.

And you shall be hated by all men for my name's sake: but he that shall persevere unto the end, he shall be saved. Matt. 10/22.

If they have called the goodman of the house Beelzebub, how much more them of his household? Matt. 10/25.

Blessed shall you be when men shall hate you, and when they shall separate you, and shall reproach you, and cast

out your name as evil, for the Son of Man's sake. Luke 6/22; Matt. 5/11.

In the world you shall have distress: but have confidence; I have overcome the world. John 16/33. (See Acts 5/18 & 12/1 & 14/18.)

Through many tribulations we must enter into the kingdom of God. Acts 14/21.

We labour, working with our own hands: we are reviled, and we bless: we are persecuted, and we suffer it. 1 Cor. 4/12.

In all things let us exhibit ourselves as the ministers of God, in much patience, in tribulation, in necessities, in distresses. 2 Cor. 6/4.

If you be reproached for the name of Christ, you shall be blessed. 1 Pet. 4/14.

Knowing that as you are partakers of the sufferings, so shall you be also of the consolation. 2 Cor. 1/7.

In all things we suffer tribulation, but are not distressed: we are straitened, but are not destitute: we suffer persecution, but are not forsaken: we are cast down, but we perish not. 2 Cor. 4/8, 9.

And others had trial of mockeries and stripes, moreover also of bands and prisons. Heb. 11/36.

If you partake of the suffering of Christ, rejoice that when his glory shall be revealed, you may also be glad with exceeding joy. 1 Pet. 4/13.

If we suffer, we shall also reign with him. 2 Tim. 2/12.

Many are the afflictions of the just: but out of them all will the Lord deliver them. Ps. 33/20.

And though, in the sight of men, they suffered torments, their hope is full of immortality. Afflicted in few things, in many they shall be well rewarded: because God hath tried them, and found them worthy of himself. Wis. 3/4, 5.

Q. 186.

Which are the twelve fruits of the Holy Ghost?

The twelve fruits of the Holy Ghost are Charity, Joy, Peace, Patience, Benignity, Goodness, Long-Suffering, Mildness, Faith, Modesty, Continency, and Chastity.

The fruit of the Spirit is, charity, joy, peace, patience, benignity, goodness, longanimity, mildness, faith, modesty, continency, chastity. Gal. 5/22, 23.

The tree of life, bearing twelve fruits, yielding its fruits every month, and the leaves of the tree were for the healing of the nations. Apoc. 22/2.

And by the torrent on the banks thereof, on both sides, shall grow all trees that bear fruit: their leaf shall not fall off, and their fruit shall not fail: every month shall they bring forth first fruits, because the waters thereof shall issue out of the sanctuary: and the fruits thereof shall be for food, and the leaves thereof for medicine. Ezech. 47/12.

Every best gift, and every perfect gift, is from above. James 1/17.

In all things let us exhibit ourselves as the ministers of God, in much patience, in tribulation, in necessities, in distresses, in stripes, in prisons, in seditions, in labours, in watchings, in fastings, in chastity, in knowledge, in long-suffering, in sweetness, in the Holy Ghost, in charity unfeigned. 2 Cor. 6/4-6.

Put ye on, therefore, as the elect of God, holy, and beloved, the bowels of mercy, benignity, humility, modesty, patience: . . . above all these things have charity, which is the bond of perfection. Col. 3/12, 14.

In this is my Father glorified; that you bring forth very much fruit, and become my disciples. John 15/8.

CHARITY. (See 109, 311, 330.)

He that abideth in charity, abideth in God, and God in him. 1 John 4/16.

The charity of God is poured forth in our hearts, by the Holy Ghost who is given to us. Rom. 5/5.

He set in order charity in me. Cant. 2/4.

Many waters cannot quench charity, neither can the floods drown it: if a man should give all the substance of his house for love, he shall despise it as nothing. Cant. 8/7.

Love one another, as I have loved you. John 13/34 & 15/12 & 15/17.

Walk in love, as Christ also hath loved us. Ephes. 5/2.

Charity . . . is the bond of perfection. Col. 3/14.

Follow after charity. 1 Cor. 14/1.

JOY.

Better is a dry morsel with joy, than a house full of victims with strife. Prov. 17/1.

A joyful mind maketh age flourishing: a sorrowful spirit drieth up the bones. Prov. 17/22.

The joyfulness of the heart, is the life of a man, and a never-failing treasure of holiness: and the joy of a man is length of life. Eccus. 30/23.

I exceedingly abound with joy in all our tribulation. 2 Cor. 7/4.

They that sow in tears, shall reap in joy. Ps. 125/5.

In the joy of the just there is great glory. Prov. 28/12.

The sadness of the heart is every plague. Eccus. 25/17.

Nothing is better than for a man to rejoice in his work. Eccles. 3/22.

Give not up thy soul to sadness, and afflict not thyself in thy own counsel. Eccus. 30/22.

A cheerful and good heart is always feasting. Eccus. 30/27.

A glad heart maketh a cheerful countenance: but by grief of mind the spirit is cast down. Prov. 15/13.

Be glad in the Lord, and rejoice, ye just: and glory, all ye right of heart. Ps. 31/11.

Let the heavens rejoice, and let the earth be glad, . . . the fields, and all things that are in them, shall be joyful. Ps. 95/11, 12.

Rejoice in the Lord always; again, I say, rejoice. Philip. 4/4.

PEACE. (See 185, 7th.)

Peace be to you. John 20/19; Luke 24/36.

I will give peace in your coasts. Levit. 26/6.

The work of justice shall be peace. Isai. 32/17.

Lord, thou wilt give us peace. Isai. 26/12.

Can there be peace for Zambri, that hath killed his master? 4 Kings 9/31.

On earth peace to men of good will. Luke 2/14.

Peace I leave with you, my peace I give unto you. John 14/27.

There is no peace to the wicked. Isai. 48/22 & 57/21.

They will seek for peace, and there shall be none. Ezech. 7/25.

Much peace have they that love thy law; and to them there is no stumblingblock. Ps. 118/165.

If thou hadst walked in the way of God, thou hadst surely dwelt in peace for ever. Baruch 3/13.

He that feareth the commandment, shall dwell in peace. Prov. 13/13.

And the peace of God, which surpasseth all understanding, keep your hearts and minds in Christ Jesus. . . . The things which you have both learned, and received, and heard, and seen in me, these do ye, and the God of peace shall be with you. Philip. 4/7, 9.

PATIENCE.

In your patience you shall possess your souls. Luke 21/19.

The patient man is better than the valiant: and he that ruleth his spirit, than he that taketh cities. Prov. 16/32.

Wait on God with patience. Eccus. 2/3.

For patience is necessary for you: that, doing the will of God, you may receive the promise. Heb. 10/36.

Take all that shall be brought upon thee: and in thy sorrow endure, and in thy humiliation keep patience. Eccus. 2/4.

Blessed is the man whom God correcteth: refuse not, therefore, the chastising of the Lord. Job 5/17.

The learning of a man is known by patience: and his glory is to pass over wrongs. Prov. 19/11.

Here is the patience of the saints, who keep the commandments of God, and the faith of Jesus. Apoc. 14/12.

Why hath a living man murmured, man *suffering* for his sins? Lam. 3/39.

Let us run by patience to the fight proposed to us. Heb. 12/1.

Be patient towards all men. 1 Thess. 5/14.

From him is my patience. Ps. 61/6.

Patience hath a perfect work. James 1/4.

BENIGNITY.

Knowest thou not that the benignity of God leadeth thee to penance? Rom. 2/4.

Put ye on, therefore, as the elect of God, holy, and beloved, the bowels of mercy, benignity, etc. Col. 3/12.

GOODNESS.

Teach me goodness, . . . for I have believed thy commandments. Ps. 118/66.

For the Lord will give goodness: and our earth shall yield her fruit. Ps. 84/13.

He that is good, shall draw grace from the Lord. Prov. 12/2.

Rich or poor, if his heart is good, his countenance shall be cheerful at all times. Eccus. 26/4.

In all things shew thyself an example of good works. Titus 2/7.

Do not forget to do good and to impart. Heb. 13/16.

And may the God of peace, . . . fit you in all goodness, that you may do his will. Heb. 13/20, 21.

LONG-SUFFERING.

Humble thy heart, and endure. Eccus. 2/2.

For unto you it is given for Christ, not only to believe in him, but also to suffer for him. Philip. 1/29.

Strengthened with all might, according to the power of his glory, in all patience and long suffering. Col. 1/11.

In thy sorrow endure. Eccus. 2/4.

MILDNESS.

A mild answer breaketh wrath. Prov. 15/1 & 25/15.

The servant of the Lord must . . . be mild towards all men. 2 Tim. 2/24.

Shewing all mildness towards all men. Titus 3/2.

I . . . beseech you, that you walk worthy of the vocation in which you are called. With all humility and mildness. Ephes. 4/1, 2.

He will guide the mild in judgment. Ps. 24/9.

FAITH. (See 107.)

Without faith it is impossible to please God. Heb. 11/6.

Amen I say to you, if you have faith as a grain of mustard seed, . . . nothing shall be impossible to you. Matt. 17/19; Luke 17/6.

We in spirit by faith, wait for the hope of justice. Gal. 5/5.

In all things taking the shield of faith. Ephes. 6/16.

My just man liveth by faith. Heb. 10/38; Rom. 1/17; Gal. 3/11.

MODESTY.

Let your modesty be known to all men. Philip. 4/5.

With modesty admonishing them that resist the truth. 2 Tim. 2/25.

CONTINENCY.

No price is worthy of a continent soul. Eccus. 26/20.

And as I knew that I could not otherwise be continent, except God gave it, and this also was a point of wisdom, to know whose gift it was: I went to the Lord, and besought him. Wis. 8/21.

I say to the unmarried, and to the widows: it is good for them if they so continue, even as I. 1 Cor. 7/8.

CHASTITY. (See 185, 6th.)

Blessed are the clean of heart: for they shall see God. Matt. 5/8.

How beautiful is the chaste generation with glory! Wis. 4/1.

Thou hast done manfully, and thy heart has been strengthened, because thou hast loved chastity. Judith 15/11.

Keep thyself chaste. 1 Tim. 5/22.

Lesson Seventeenth.

ON THE SACRAMENT OF PENANCE.

Q. 187.

What is the Sacrament of Penance?

Penance is a Sacrament in which the sins committed after Baptism are forgiven.

(See 114, 137; 12, Art. 10.)

A throne shall be prepared in mercy. Isai. 16/5.

Thou hast made a way even in the sea, and a most sure path among the waves, shewing that thou art able to save out of all things. Wis. 14/3.

He hath mercy on him that receiveth the discipline of mercy, and that maketh haste in his judgments. Eccus. 18/14.

If the wicked do penance for all his sins which he hath committed, and keep all my commandments, and do judgment, and justice, living, he shall live. Ezech. 18/21.

My son, hast thou sinned? do so no more: but for thy former sins also pray that they may be forgiven thee. Eccus. 21/1.

If we do not penance, we shall fall into the hands of the Lord. Eccus. 2/22.

To the penitent he hath given the way of justice. Eccus. 17/20.

Turn to the Lord, and forsake thy sins. Eccus. 17/21.

How great is the mercy of the Lord, and his forgiveness to them that turn to him! Eccus. 17/28.

If thy people Israel shall fly before their enemies, (because they will sin against thee,) and doing penance, and confession to thy name, shall come, and pray, and

make supplications to thee in this house: then hear thou in heaven, and forgive the sin of thy people. 3 Kings 8/33, 34 & 8/47-49.

Hear, I beseech you, my words, and do penance. Job 21/2.

I will declare my iniquity: and I will think for my sin. Ps. 37/19.

O forgive me, that I may be refreshed, before I go hence, and be no more. Ps. 38/14.

Have mercy on me, O God, according to thy great mercy. And according to the multitude of thy tender mercies, blot out my iniquity. Ps. 50/1.

Create a clean heart in me, O God: and renew a right spirit within my bowels. Ps. 50/12.

The harvest is past, the summer is ended, and we are not saved. . . . Is there no balm in Galaad? Jer. 8/20, 22.

Do penance: for the kingdom of heaven is at hand. Matt. 3/2 & 4/17; Mark 1/4; Luke 3/3.

Son, thy sins are forgiven thee. Mark 2/5; Luke 5/20; Matt. 9/2.

Who can forgive sins, but God only? Mark 2/7; Luke 5/21.

The Son of Man hath power on earth to forgive sins. Mark 2/10; Luke 5/24; Matt. 9/6.

I came not to call the just, but sinners to penance. Luke 5/32.

If he do penance, forgive him. Luke 17/3.

There shall be joy in heaven upon one sinner that doth penance. Luke 15/17.

Do penance . . . from this thy wickedness. Acts 8/22.

I preach, that they should do penance, and turn to God, doing works worthy of penance. Acts 26/20; Mark 6/12.

The Lord . . . dealeth patiently for your sake, not willing that any should perish, but that all should return to penance. 2 Pet. 3/9.

Knowest thou not that the benignity of God leadeth thee to penance? Rom. 2/4.

He who causeth a sinner to be converted from the error of his way, shall save his soul from death, and shall cover a multitude of sins. James 5/20.

Draw nigh to God, and he will draw nigh to you.

Cleanse your hands, ye sinners: and purify your hearts, ye double-minded. James 4/8.

Wash yourselves, be clean, take away the evil of your devices from my eyes. Isai. 1/16.

Unless you shall do penance, you shall all likewise perish. Luke 13/3.

Be zealous, therefore, and do penance. Apoc. 3/19.

Be mindful, therefore, from whence thou art fallen: and do penance, and do the first works. Apoc. 2/5.

Blessed are they whose iniquities are forgiven, and whose sins are covered. Ps. 31/1.

Q. 188.

How does the Sacrament of Penance remit sin, and restore to the soul the friendship of God?

The Sacrament of Penance remits sin and restores the friendship of God to the soul by means of the absolution of the priest.

Whose sins you shall forgive, they are forgiven them: and whose sins you shall retain, they are retained. John 20/23.

Let a man so account of us as of the ministers of Christ, and the dispensers of the mysteries of God. 1 Cor. 4/1.

For Christ therefore, we are ambassadors. 2 Cor. 5/20.

God . . . hath given to us the ministry of reconciliation. 2 Cor. 5/18.

Whatsoever you shall bind upon earth, shall be bound also in heaven: and whatsoever you shall loose upon earth, shall be loosed also in heaven. Matt. 18/18.

Purge out the old leaven, that you may be a new paste. 1 Cor. 5/7.

Who can make him clean that is conceived of unclean seed? is it not thou who only art? Job 14/4.

Turn away thy face from my sins, and blot out all my iniquities. Create a clean heart in me, O God: and renew a right spirit within my bowels. Ps. 50/11, 12.

And a throne shall be prepared in mercy, and one shall sit upon it in truth in the tabernacle of David, judging and seeking judgment, and quickly rendering that which is just. Isai. 16/5.

Go, shew thyself to the priest. Matt. 8/4; Mark 1/44; Luke 5/14.

Behold, the hand of the Lord is not shortened, that it cannot save, neither is his ear heavy, that he cannot hear. Isai. 59/1 & 50/2.

As I live, saith the Lord God, I desire not the death of the wicked, but that the wicked turn from his way, and live. Ezech. 33/11 & 18/23 & 18/32.

Q. 189.

How do you know that the priest has the power of absolving from the sins committed after Baptism?

I know that the priest has the power of absolving from the sins committed after Baptism, because Jesus Christ granted that power to the priests of His Church when He said: "Receive ye the Holy Ghost. Whose sins you shall forgive, they are forgiven them; whose sins you shall retain, they are retained."

(John 20/22, 23.)

The Son of Man hath power on earth to forgive sins. Matt. 9/6; Mark 2/10; Luke 5/24.

As the Father hath sent me, I also send you. John 20/21.

All power is given to me in heaven and in earth. Matt. 28/18.

And I will give to thee the keys of the kingdom of heaven. And whatsoever thou shalt bind upon earth, shall be bound also in heaven: and whatsoever thou shalt loose on earth, it shall be loosed also in heaven. Matt. 16/19 & 18/18.

Moreover for his sin he shall offer a ram without blemish out of the flock, and shall give it to the priest, according to the estimation and measure of the offence: and he shall pray for him before the Lord, and he shall have forgiveness for every thing in doing of which he hath sinned. Levit. 6/6, 7. (See Levit. 19/21, 22.)

That you may have knowledge to discern between holy and unholy, between unclean and clean. Levit. 10/10.

And he said to her: Thy sins are forgiven thee. And they that sat at meat with him began to say within themselves: Who is this that forgiveth sins also? Luke 7/48, 49.

Not that we are sufficient to think any thing of our-

selves, as of ourselves; but our sufficiency is from God. Who also hath made us fit ministers of the new testament. 2 Cor. 3/5, 6.

And hath given to us the ministry of reconciliation. 2 Cor. 5/18.

Blessed are they whose iniquities are forgiven. Ps. 31/1.

I . . . have already judged . . . him that hath so done, in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ, . . . with the power of our Lord Jesus. 1 Cor. 5/3, 4.

Having, therefore, these promises, dearly beloved, let us cleanse ourselves from all defilement of the flesh and of the spirit, perfecting sanctification in the fear of God. 2 Cor. 7/1.

He that resisteth the power, resisteth the ordinance of God. And they that resist, purchase to themselves damnation. Rom. 13/2.

Q. 190.

How do the priests of the Church exercise the power of forgiving sins?

The priests of the Church exercise the power of forgiving sins by hearing the confession of sins, and granting pardon for them as ministers of God and in His name.

For what I have pardoned, if I have pardoned anything, for your sakes have I done it in the person of Christ. 2 Cor. 2/10.

God . . . hath given to us the ministry of reconciliation. 2 Cor. 5/18.

For Christ therefore, we are ambassadors. 2 Cor. 5/20.

Your sins are forgiven you for his name's sake. 1 John 2/12.

I have acknowledged my sin to thee, and my injustice I have not concealed. Ps. 31/5.

If the wicked do penance for all his sins which he hath committed, . . . he shall live. Ezech. 18/21.

While I was yet speaking, and praying, and confessing my sins, and the sins of the people, etc. Dan. 9/20.

And Jesus said: Neither will I condemn thee. Go, and now sin no more. John 8/11.

If we say that we have no sin; we deceive ourselves, and the truth is not in us. If we confess our sins; he is faith-

ful and just to forgive us our sins, and to cleanse us from all iniquity. 1 John 1/8, 9.

Confess, therefore, your sins one to another. James 5/16.

Be not ashamed to confess thy sins, but submit not thyself to every man for sin. Eccus. 4/31.

Open not thy heart to every man. Eccus. 8/22.

And many of them that believed, came confessing and declaring their deeds. Acts 19/18.

Q. 191.

What must we do to receive the Sacrament of Penance worthily?

To receive the Sacrament of Penance worthily we must do five things:

1. **We must examine our conscience.**

He will give a law to sinners in the way. Ps. 24/8.

I have thought on my ways: and turned my feet unto thy testimonies. Ps. 118/59.

And returning to himself, he said: . . . I will arise, and will go to my father. Luke 15/17, 18.

How many are my iniquities and sins? make me know my crimes and offences. Job 13/23.

Enlighten my eyes that I never sleep in death. Ps. 12/4.

Let us search our ways, and seek, and return to the Lord. Lam. 3/40.

Let every one prove his own work. Gal. 6/4.

Thus saith the Lord of hosts: Set your hearts to consider your ways. Aggeus 1/5.

You shall remember your ways, and all your wicked doings with which you have been defiled. Ezech. 20/43.

2. **We must have sorrow for our sins.**

Thy father and I have sought thee sorrowing. Luke 2/48.

And be renewed in the spirit of your mind. Ephes. 4/23.

And I meditated in the night with my own heart: and I was exercised, and I swept my spirit. Ps. 76/7.

I will speak in the bitterness of my soul. Job 10/1.

The Lord is nigh unto them that are of a contrite heart. Ps. 33/19.

Rend your hearts, and not your garments. Joel 2/13.

Be penitent, therefore, and be converted, that your sins may be blotted out. Acts 3/19.

You were made sorrowful unto penance. 2 Cor. 7/9.

For the sorrow that is according to God worketh penance steadfast unto salvation. 2 Cor. 7/10.

If we do not penance, we shall fall into the hands of the Lord. Eccus. 2/22.

And you shall be displeased with yourselves in your own sight, for all your wicked deeds which you committed. Ezech. 20/43.

3. **We must make a firm resolution never more to offend God.**

My son, hast thou sinned? do so no more. Eccus. 21/1.

He that washeth himself after touching the dead, if he toucheth him again, what doth his washing avail? Eccus. 34/30. (See Eccus. 34/31.)

To depart from injustice, is to offer a propitiatory sacrifice for injustices, and a begging of pardon for sins. Eccus. 35/3.

Let the wicked forsake his way, and the unjust man his thoughts, and let him return to the Lord, and he will have mercy on him, . . . for he is bountiful to forgive. Isai. 55/7.

Behold, thou art made whole: sin no more, lest some worse thing happen to thee. John 5/14.

I said: I will take heed to my ways: that I sin not with my tongue. Ps. 38/2.

Cease to do perversely, learn to do well. Isai. 1/16, 17.

I have thought on my ways: and turned my feet unto thy testimonies. I am ready, and am not troubled: that I may keep thy commandments. Ps. 118/59, 60.

4. **We must confess our sins to the priest.** (See 208.)

Give an account of thy stewardship. Luke 16/2.

He that hideth his sins shall not prosper: but he that shall confess, and forsake them, shall obtain mercy. Prov. 28/13.

Confess, therefore, your sins one to another. James 5/16.

And now make confession to the Lord, the God of your fathers, and do his pleasure, and separate yourselves from the people of the land. 1 Esdras 10/11. (See Jer. 3/13.)

If we confess our sins; he is faithful and just to forgive us our sins, and to cleanse us from all iniquity. 1 John 1/9.

I did eat. Gen. 3/12.

The serpent deceived me, and I did eat. Gen. 3/13.

At length the chief butler remembering, said: I confess my sin. Gen. 41/9.

And they talked one to another: We deserve to suffer these things, because we have sinned against our brother. Gen. 42/21.

Hear my voice, ye wives of Lamech, hearken to my speech: for I have slain a man. Gen. 4/23.

When a man or woman shall have committed any of all the sins that men are wont to commit, and by negligence shall have transgressed the commandment of the Lord, and offended, they shall confess their sins, and restore the principal itself. Num. 5/6, 7.

And Josue said to Achan: My son, give glory to the Lord God of Israel, and confess, and tell me what thou hast done, hide it not. Josue 7/19.

And I prayed to the Lord my God, and I made my confession, and said. Dan. 9/4.

We have sinned, we have committed iniquity, we have done wickedly, and have revolted. Dan. 9/5.

And (they) were baptized by him in the Jordan, confessing their sins. Matt. 3/6; Mark 1/5.

Go, shew thyself to the priest. Matt. 8/4; Levit. 14/2; Luke 5/14; Mark 1/44.

Whatsoever you shall loose upon earth, shall be loosed also in heaven. Matt. 18/18; John 20/23.

And many of them that believed, came confessing and declaring their deeds. Acts 19/18.

I will let go my speech against myself, I will speak in the bitterness of my soul. Job 10/1.

I have acknowledged my sin to thee, and my injustice I have not concealed. Ps. 31/5.

For I will declare my iniquity. Ps. 37/19.

I will arise, and will go to my father, and say to him: Father, I have sinned against heaven, and before thee. Luke 15/18.

And they said there: We have sinned against the Lord. 1 Kings 7/6.

If the stroke of the leprosy be in a man, he shall be brought to the priest. Levit. 13/9.

They shall pine away in their iniquities, . . . until they confess their iniquities and the iniquities of their ancestors, whereby they have transgressed against me. Levit. 26/39, 40.

Be not ashamed to confess thy sins, but submit not thyself to every man for sin. Eccus. 4/31.

God . . . hath given to us the ministry of reconciliation. 2 Cor. 5/18.

It seemeth to me unreasonable to send a prisoner, and not to signify the things laid to his charge. Acts 25/27.

5. We must accept the penance which the priest gives us.

Bring forth, therefore, fruits worthy of penance. Luke 3/8.

Reject not the correction of the Lord: and do not faint when thou art chastised by him. Prov. 3/11.

For, after thou didst convert me, I did penance. Jer. 31/19.

Make your ways and your doings good. Jer. 7/3.

Amend your ways, and your doings. Jer. 26/13.

Go, shew thyself to the priest, and offer the gift which Moses commanded. Matt. 8/4; Mark 1/44; Luke 5/14.

They should do penance, and turn to the Lord, doing works worthy of penance. Acts 26/20.

All should everywhere do penance. Acts 17/30.

Redeem thou thy sins with alms, and thy iniquities with works of mercy to the poor. Dan. 4/24.

By mercy and truth iniquity is redeemed. Prov. 16/6.

Q. 192.

What is the examination of conscience?

The examination of conscience is an earnest effort to recall to mind all the sins we have committed since our last worthy confession.

And the Lord God called Adam, and said to him: Where art thou? Gen. 3/9.

Before judgment examine thyself, and thou shalt find mercy in the sight of God. Eccus. 18/20.

Behold, my witness is in heaven, and he that knoweth my conscience is on high. Job 16/20.

Whereas wickedness is fearful, it beareth witness of its condemnation: for a troubled conscience always forecasteth grievous things. Wis. 17/10.

Our wicked doings are with us, and we have known our iniquities. Isai. 59/12.

How happeneth it, O Israel, that thou art in thy enemies' land? Baruch 3/10.

Q. 193.

How can we make a good examination of conscience?

We can make a good examination of conscience by calling to memory the commandments of God, the precepts of the Church, the seven capital sins, and the particular duties of our state in life, to find out the sins we have committed.

How many are my iniquities and sins? make me know my crimes and offences. Job 13/23.

Dearly beloved, if our heart do not reprehend us, we have confidence towards God. 1 John 3/21.

A troubled conscience always forecasteth grievous things. Wis. 17/10.

I will write it (my law) in their heart. Jer. 31/33; Heb. 8/10 & 10/16.

By the law is the knowledge of sin. Rom. 3/20.

Lay open thy works to the Lord: and thy thoughts shall be directed. Prov. 16/3.

It is the part of man to prepare the soul: and of the Lord to govern the tongue. Prov. 16/1.

Q. 194.

What should we do before beginning the examination of conscience?

Before beginning the examination of conscience we should pray to God to give us light to know our sins and grace to detest them.

He will open his mouth in prayer, and will make supplication for his sins. Eccus. 39/7.

Ask, and it shall be given you: seek, and you shall find:

knock, and it shall be opened to you. Matt. 7/7 & 21/22; Mark 11/24; Luke 11/9. (See John 14/13; James 1/6.)

For this shall every one that is holy pray to thee in a seasonable time. Ps. 31/6.

The free offerings of my mouth make acceptable, O Lord: and teach me thy judgments. Ps. 118/108.

Lord, that I may see. Luke 18/41; Ps. 17/29.

Unless the Lord build the house, they labour in vain that build it. Ps. 126/1.

Enlighten my eyes that I never sleep in death. Ps. 12/4.

The searcher of hearts and reins is God. Ps. 7/10.

And Nathan said to David: Thou art the man. 2 Kings 12/7.

And (the ten lepers) lifted up their voice, saying: Jesus, master, have mercy on us. Luke 17/13.

Have mercy on me, O Lord, for I have cried to thee all the day. Ps. 85/3.

Help us, O God, our saviour: and for the glory of thy name, O Lord, deliver us: and forgive us our sins for thy name's sake. Ps. 78/9.

If thou wilt, thou canst make me clean. Matt. 8/2.

Lesson Eighteenth.

ON CONTRITION.

Q. 195.

What is contrition, or sorrow for sin?

Contrition, or sorrow for sin, is a hatred of sin and a true grief of the soul for having offended God, with a firm purpose of sinning no more.

(See 191, 2nd.)

Not every one that saith to me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven. Matt. 7/21.

Except you will be converted, he will brandish his sword. Ps. 7/13.

A sacrifice to God is an afflicted spirit: a contrite and humbled heart, O God, thou wilt not despise. Ps. 50/19.

I will recount to thee all my years in the bitterness of my soul. Isai. 38/15.

If so be they will hearken and be converted every one from his evil way; that I may repent me of the evil that I think to do unto them for the wickedness of their doings. Jer. 26/3.

This wicked man prayed to the Lord, of which he was not like to obtain mercy. 2 Mach. 9/13.

In their affliction they will rise early to me: Come, and let us return to the Lord. Osee 6/1. (See Eccus. 20/4.)

The men of Nineve shall rise in judgment with this generation, and shall condemn it: because they did penance at the preaching of Jonas. Matt. 12/41. (See Jonas 3/5.)

You shall seek me, and shall not find me. John 7/34.

I have heard thy prayer, and I have seen thy tears: and, behold, I have healed thee. 4 Kings 20/5.

Wo to us, because we have sinned. Therefore is our heart sorrowful, therefore are our eyes become dim. Lam. 5/17.

He that sinneth against his own soul, shall repent. Eccus. 19/6.

Q. 196.

What kind of sorrow should we have for our sins?

The sorrow we should have for our sins should be interior, supernatural, universal, and sovereign.

Let us draw near with a true heart in fulness of faith, having our hearts sprinkled from an evil conscience. Heb. 10/22.

Rend your hearts, and not your garments. Joel 2/13.

Turn away from injustice, and greatly hate abomination. Eccus. 17/23.

For the sorrow that is according to God worketh penance steadfast unto salvation: but the sorrow of the world worketh death. 2 Cor. 7/10.

Convert us, O Lord, to thee, and we shall be converted. Lam. 5/21.

Q. 197.

What do you mean by saying that our sorrow should be interior?

When I say that our sorrow should be interior, I mean that it should come from the heart, and not merely from the lips.

This people honoureth me with their lips: but their heart is far from me. Matt. 15/8; Mark 7/6; Isai. 29/13.

Rend your hearts, and not your garments, and turn to the Lord your God. Joel 2/13.

It is easier for heaven and earth to pass, than one tittle of the law to fall. Luke 16/17; Matt. 5/18.

And returning to himself, he said: . . . I will arise, . . . I am not now worthy to be called thy son. Luke 15/17-19.

When he (Esau) desired to inherit the benediction, he was rejected: for he found no place of repentance, although with tears he had sought it. Heb. 12/17. (See Gen. 27/38.)

Let us lift up our hearts with our hands to the Lord in the heavens. Lam. 3/41.

Whatsoever you do, do it from the heart as to the Lord, and not to men. Col. 3/23. (See Ps. 118/58.)

He that followeth after words only, shall have nothing. Prov. 19/7.

Q. 198.

What do you mean by saying that our sorrow should be supernatural?

When I say that our sorrow should be supernatural, I mean that it should be prompted by the grace of God, and excited by motives which spring from faith, and not by merely natural motives.

Unless the Lord build the house, they labour in vain that build it. Ps. 126/1.

For the sorrow that is according to God worketh penance steadfast unto salvation: but the sorrow of the world worketh death. 2 Cor. 7/10.

O God, be merciful to me, a sinner. Luke 18/13.

Q. 199.

What do you mean by saying that our sorrow should be universal?

When I say that our sorrow should be universal, I mean that we should be sorry for all our mortal sins without exception.

The things you say in your hearts, be sorry for them upon your beds. Ps. 4/5.

I will recount to thee all my years in the bitterness of my soul. Isai. 38/15.

Turn away thy face from my sins, and blot out all my iniquities. Ps. 50/11.

O God, I have declared to thee my life: thou hast set my tears in thy sight, as also in thy promise. Ps. 55/8, 9.

Forgive me all my sins. Ps. 24/18.

Q. 200.

What do you mean when you say that our sorrow should be sovereign?

When I say that our sorrow should be sovereign, I mean that we should grieve more for having offended God than for any other evil that can befall us.

Although he should kill me, I will trust in him. Job 13/15.

For I am ready for scourges: and my sorrow is continually before me. Ps. 37/18.

Therefore do I weep, and my eyes run down with water: because the comforter, the relief of my soul, is far from me. Lam. 1/16. (See Ps. 118/136.)

O, all ye that pass by the way, attend, and see if there be any sorrow like to my sorrow. Lam. 1/12.

Q. 201.

Why should we be sorry for our sins?

We should be sorry for our sins, because sin is the greatest of evils and an offence against God our Creator, Preserver, and Redeemer, and because it shuts us out of heaven and condemns us to the eternal pains of hell.

O forgive me, that I may be refreshed, before I go hence, and be no more. Ps. 38/14.

I have gone astray like a sheep that is lost: seek thy servant. Ps. 118/176.

There is no peace to the wicked. Isai. 48/22 & 57/21.

Let my eyes shed down tears night and day, and let them not cease, because the virgin daughter of my people is afflicted with a great affliction, with an exceeding grievous evil. Jer. 14/17.

No, father Abraham, but if one went to them from the dead, they will do penance. And he said to him: If they hear not Moses and the prophets, neither will they believe if one rise again from the dead. Luke 16/30, 31.

Let us therefore love God, because God first hath loved us. 1 John 4/19.

For thou lovest all things that are, and hatest none of the things which thou hast made: for thou didst not appoint, or make any thing hating it. Wis. 11/25.

There is no peace for my bones, because of my sins. For my iniquities are gone over my head: and, as a heavy burden, are become heavy upon me. Ps. 37/4, 5.

He may let loose his hand, and cut me off? Job 6/9.

Thy own wickedness shall reprove thee, and thy apostacy shall rebuke thee. Know thou, and see, that it is an evil and a bitter thing for thee, to have left the Lord thy God. Jer. 2/19.

Q. 202.

How many kinds of contrition are there?

There are two kinds of contrition: perfect contrition and imperfect contrition.

Be penitent, therefore, and be converted, that your sins may be blotted out. Acts 3/19.

Many sins are forgiven her, because she hath loved much. But to whom less is forgiven, he loveth less. Luke 7/47.

Q. 203.

What is perfect contrition?

Perfect contrition is that which fills us with sorrow and hatred for sin, because it offends God, who is infinitely good in Himself and worthy of all love.

My eyes have sent forth springs of water: because they have not kept thy law. Ps. 118/136.

The soul that is sorrowful for the greatness of evil she hath done, and goeth bowed down, and feeble, and the eyes that fail, and the hungry soul giveth glory and justice to thee the Lord. Baruch 2/18.

Rend your hearts, and not your garments. Joel 2/13.

Many sins are forgiven her, because she hath loved much. Luke 7/47.

The sorrow that is according to God worketh penance steadfast unto salvation. 2 Cor. 7/10.

When thou shalt seek there the Lord thy God, thou shalt find him: yet so, if thou seek him with all thy heart, and all the affliction of thy soul. Deut. 4/29.

The Lord is nigh unto them that are of a contrite heart. Ps. 33/19.

He that loveth God, shall obtain pardon for his sins by prayer, and shall refrain himself from them. Eccus. 3/4.

Charity covereth all sins. Prov. 10/12.

And going forth, he (Peter) wept bitterly. Matt. 26/75.

And the publican, standing afar off, would not so much as lift up his eyes towards heaven; but struck his breast, saying: O God, be merciful to me, a sinner. Luke 18/13.

Q. 204.

What is imperfect contrition?

Imperfect contrition is that by which we hate what offends God, because by it we lose heaven and deserve hell; or because sin is so hateful in itself.

My heart is troubled within me: and the fear of death is fallen upon me. Ps. 54/5.

We fear thee, and seek thy face. Dan. 3/41.

He may let loose his hand, and cut me off? Job 6/9.

We pour out our prayers, and beg mercy in thy sight, O Lord our God: . . . because thou hast sent out thy wrath, and thy indignation upon us. Baruch 2/19, 20.

Have mercy on me, O Lord, for I am afflicted. Ps. 30/10.

When distress cometh upon them, they will seek for peace, and there shall be none. Ezech. 7/25.

The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom. Ps. 110/10; Prov. 1/7 & 9/10.

Q. 205.

Is imperfect contrition sufficient for a worthy confession?

Imperfect contrition is sufficient for a worthy confession, but we should endeavor to have perfect contrition.

A throne shall be prepared in mercy. Isai. 16/5.

And many a time did he turn away his anger: . . . And he remembered that they are flesh. Ps. 77/38, 39.

There is a shame that bringeth glory and grace. Eccus. 4/25.

The fear of the Lord driveth out sin. Eccus. 1/27.

Wash me yet more from my iniquity, and cleanse me from my sin. Ps. 50/4.

Be not without fear about sin forgiven. Eccus. 5/5.

Q. 206.

What do you mean by a firm purpose of sinning no more?

By a firm purpose of sinning no more I mean a fixed resolve not only to avoid all mortal sin, but also its near occasions.

Let the wicked forsake his way, and the unjust man his thoughts, and let him return to the Lord, and he will have mercy on him, and to our God: for he is bountiful to forgive. Isai. 55/7.

As you have yielded your members to serve uncleanness and iniquity, unto iniquity; so now yield your members to serve justice, unto sanctification. Rom. 6/19.

He . . . hath ceased from sins: that now he may live the rest of his time in the flesh, not after the desires of men, but according to the will of God. 1 Pet. 4/2.

My son, hast thou sinned? do so no more. Eccus. 21/1.

Flee from sins as from the face of a serpent. Eccus. 21/2.

Behold, thou art made whole: sin no more, lest some worse thing happen to thee. John 5/14.

If the wicked do penance for all his sins which he hath committed, and keep all my commandments, and do judgment, and justice, living, he shall live. Ezech. 18/21.

As I live, saith the Lord God, I desire not the death of the wicked, but that the wicked turn from his way, and live. Ezech. 33/11 & 18/23 & 18/32.

For as it was your mind to go astray from God; so, when you return again, you shall seek him ten times as much. Baruch 4/28.

If you turn to the Lord with all your heart, put away the strange gods from among you. 1 Kings 7/3.

Go not in the way of ruin, and thou shalt not stumble against the stones. Eccus. 32/25.

A wise heart, and which hath understanding, will abstain from sin, and in the works of justice shall have success. Eccus. 3/32.

The beginning of a good way is to do justice: and this is more acceptable with God than to offer sacrifices. Prov. 16/5.

Be renewed in the spirit of your mind. Ephes. 4/23.

So shall I always keep thy law, for ever and ever. Ps. 118/44.

Q. 207.

What do you mean by the near occasions of sin?

By the near occasions of sin I mean all the persons, places, and things that may easily lead us into sin.

Use not much the company of her that is a dancer, and hearken not to her, lest thou perish by the force of her charms. Eccus. 9/4.

With the holy, thou wilt be holy; and with the innocent man thou wilt be innocent. Ps. 17/26.

When all went to the golden calves, . . . he alone fled the company of all. Tob. 1/5.

Arise, take thy wife, and the two daughters that thou hast: lest thou also perish in the wickedness of the city. Gen. 19/15.

And Dina the daughter of Lia went out to see the women of that country. Gen. 34/1.

Beware thou never join in friendship with the inhabitants of that land, which may be thy ruin. Exod. 34/12. (See Deut. 7/2.)

Depart from the tents of these wicked men, and touch nothing of theirs, lest thou be involved in their sins. Num. 16/26.

Cursed be he that maketh the blind to wander out of his way. Deut. 27/18.

And they followed the nations that were round about them, concerning which the Lord had commanded them that they should not do as they did. 4 Kings 17/15.

Thou art joined in friendship with them that hate the Lord, and therefore, thou didst deserve indeed the wrath of the Lord. 2 Paral. 19/2.

I am doing a great work, and I cannot come down, lest it be neglected whilst I come, and go down to you. 2 Esdras 6/3.

My son, if sinners shall entice thee, consent not to them. Prov. 1/10.

Be not delighted in the paths of the wicked, neither let the way of evil men please thee. Prov. 4/14.

Her house is the way to hell, reaching even to the inner chambers of death. Prov. 7/27.

And they were mingled among the heathens, and learned their works: and served their idols, and it became a stumblingblock to them. Ps. 105/35, 36.

He that loveth danger shall perish in it. Eccus. 3/27.

Who will pity an enchanter struck by a serpent, or any that come near wild beasts? so is it with him that keepeth company with a wicked man, and is involved in his sins. Eccus. 12/13.

He that toucheth pitch, shall be defiled with it. Eccus. 13/1.

There is that will destroy his own soul through shamefacedness. Eccus. 20/24.

Flee from sins as from the face of a serpent: for if thou comest near them, they will take hold of thee. Eccus. 21/2.

There is a way that seemeth to a man right: but the ends thereof lead to death. Prov. 16/25.

If thy right eye scandalize thee, pluck it out, and cast it from thee. Matt. 5/29 & 18/9; Mark 9/46.

For death is come up through our windows. Jer. 9/21.

Evil communications corrupt good manners. 1 Cor. 15/33.

A man that is a heretic, . . . avoid. Titus 3/10.

Seek not to be like evil men, neither desire to be with them. Prov. 24/1.

Winnow not with every wind, and go not into every way. Eccus. 5/11.

Can a man hide fire in his bosom, and his garments not burn? Prov. 6/27.

Or can he walk upon hot coals, and his feet not be burnt? Prov. 6/28

He that walketh with the wise shall be wise. Prov. 13/20.

Turn away my eyes, that they may not behold vanity. Ps. 118/37.

We charge you, brethren, in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ, that you withdraw yourselves from every brother walking disorderly, and not according to the tradition which they have received of us. 2 Thess. 3/6.

Lesson Nineteenth.

ON CONFESSION.

Q. 208.

What is Confession?

Confession is the telling of our sins to a duly authorized priest, for the purpose of obtaining forgiveness.

(See 191, 4th; 12, Art. 10.)

He that hideth his sins shall not prosper: but he that shall confess, and forsake them, shall obtain mercy. Prov. 28/13.

Be not ashamed to confess thy sins. Eccus. 4/31.

God . . . hath given to us the ministry of reconciliation. . . . For Christ therefore, we are ambassadors. 2 Cor. 5/18, 20.

Purge out the old leaven. 1 Cor. 5/7.

Hear my voice, ye wives of Lamech, hearken to my speech: for I have slain a man. Gen. 4/23.

And I did eat. Gen. 3/12.

The serpent deceived me, and I did eat. Gen. 3/13.

But he . . . said: She is juster than I. Gen. 38/26.

I confess my sin. Gen. 41/9.

I have sinned this time also, the Lord is just: I and my people are wicked. Exod. 9/27.

I have sinned against the Lord your God, and against you. Exod. 10/16.

When a man or woman shall have committed any of all the sins that men are wont to commit, and by negligence shall have transgressed the commandment of the Lord, and offended, they shall confess their sins, and restore the principal itself, and the fifth part over and above, to him against whom they have sinned. Num. 5/6, 7.

And were baptized by him in the Jordan, confessing their sins. Matt. 3/6.

I have sinned, in betraying innocent blood. Matt. 27/4.

And many of them that believed, came confessing and declaring their deeds. Acts 19/18.

And putting both hands upon his head, let him confess all the iniquities of the children of Israel, and all their offences and sins: and praying that they may light on his head, he shall turn him out by a man ready for it, into the desert. Levit. 16/21. (See Levit. 16/34.)

And Josue said to Achan: My son, give glory to the Lord God of Israel, and confess, and tell me what thou hast done, hide it not. Josue 7/19.

And they cried to the Lord, and said: We have sinned against thee, because we have forsaken the Lord our God, and have served Baalim. Judges 10/10.

And he said to David: Thou art more just than I: for thou hast done good to me, and I have rewarded thee with evil. 1 Kings 24/18.

And Saul said . . . : I have sinned. 1 Kings 15/24.

And David said to Nathan: I have sinned against the Lord. 2 Kings 12/13.

For I, thy servant, acknowledge my sin. 2 Kings 19/20.

It is I; I am he that have sinned: I have done wickedly. 2 Kings 24/17.

They came to Moses, and said: We have sinned. Num. 21/7.

And now make confession to the Lord, the God of your fathers, and do his pleasure. 1 Esdras 10/11.

I confess the sins of the children of Israel, by which they have sinned against thee: I and my father's house have sinned. 2 Esdras 1/6. (See 1 Kings 12/10; 2 Esdras 9/2; Tob. 3/4.)

We have sinned with our fathers, we have done unjustly, we have committed iniquity. Judith 7/19.

If, as a man, I have hid my sin, and have concealed my iniquity in my bosom. Job 31/33.

I will recount to thee all my years in the bitterness of my soul. Isai. 38/15.

I will reprove my ways in his sight. And he shall be my saviour. Job 13/15 16.

I will declare my iniquity: and I will think for my sin. Ps. 37/19.

For hell shall not confess to thee. Isai. 38/18.

We have sinned before the Lord our God, and have not believed him, nor put our trust in him. Baruch 1/17.

We have sinned, we have done wickedly, we have acted unjustly, O Lord our God, against all thy justices. Baruch 2/12; Ps. 105/6. (See 1 Kings 7/6.)

We have sinned, we have committed iniquity, we have done wickedly, and have revolted: and we have gone aside from thy commandments, and thy judgments. Dan. 9/5.

They shall pine away in their iniquities, in the land of their enemies, . . . until they confess their iniquities and the iniquities of their ancestors, whereby they have transgressed against me. Levit. 26/39, 40.

O Lord, be thou merciful to me: heal my soul, for I have sinned against thee. Ps. 40/5.

Confess, therefore, your sins one to another. James 5/16.

Open not thy heart to every man. Eccus. 8/22 & 4/31.

If we confess our sins; he is faithful and just to forgive us our sins, and to cleanse us from all iniquity. 1 John 1/9.

Receive ye the Holy Ghost: whose sins you shall forgive, they are forgiven them: and whose sins you shall retain, they are retained. John 20/22, 23; Matt. 18/18.

Because I was silent, my bones grew old; whilst I cried out all the day long. For day and night thy hand was heavy upon me: I am turned in my anguish, whilst the thorn is fastened. Ps. 31/3, 4.

Let us go, therefore, with confidence to the throne of grace: that we may obtain mercy, and find grace in seasonable aid. Heb. 4/16.

Q. 209.

What sins are we bound to confess?

We are bound to confess all our mortal sins, but it is well also to confess our venial sins.

(See 54, 57, 213.)

Lord, . . . I will recount to thee all my years in the bitterness of my soul. Isai. 38/15.

Humble thyself before thou art sick, and in the time of sickness shew thy conversation. Eccus. 18/21.

And every one that beareth fruit, he will purge it, that it may bring forth more fruit. John 15/2.

Forgive me all my sins. Ps. 24/18.

Q. 210.

Which are the chief qualities of a good Confession?

The chief qualities of a good Confession are three: it must be humble, sincere, and entire.

(See 211 *et seq.*)

The heart of the wise shall instruct his mouth; and shall add grace to his lips. Prov. 16/23.

My God, I am confounded and ashamed to lift up my face to thee: for our iniquities are multiplied over our heads, and our sins are grown up even unto heaven. 1 Esdras 9/6.

Peter said: Ananias, why hath satan tempted thy heart, that thou shouldst lie to the Holy Ghost . . . ? Acts 5/3.

Confess, and tell me what thou hast done, hide it not. Josue 7/19.

The queen of Saba, having heard of the fame of Solomon in the name of the Lord, came to try him with hard questions. 3 Kings 10/1.

Who shall confess to thee in hell? Ps. 6/6.

He hath sent me to heal the contrite of heart. Luke 4/18; Isai. 61/1.

Q. 211.

When is our Confession humble?

Our Confession is humble, when we accuse ourselves of our sins, with a deep sense of shame and sorrow for having offended God.

And the publican, standing afar off, would not so much as lift up his eyes towards heaven; but struck his breast, saying: O God, be merciful to me, a sinner. Luke 18/13.

My God, I am confounded and ashamed to lift up my face to thee: for our iniquities are multiplied over our heads. 1 Esdras 9/6.

Have mercy on me, O God, according to thy great mercy. And according to the multitude of thy tender mercies, blot out my iniquity. Ps. 50/1.

He hath had regard to the prayer of the humble: and he hath not despised their petition. Ps. 101/18.

Be humbled in the sight of the Lord, and he will exalt you. James 4/10.

Be not without fear about sin forgiven. Eccus. 5/5.

There is a shame that bringeth sin, and there is a shame that bringeth glory and grace. Eccus. 4/25.

O Lord, to us belongeth confusion of face. Dan. 9/8.

Behold, we are before thee in our sin. 1 Esdras 9/15.

The Lord is nigh unto them that are of a contrite heart: and he will save the humble of spirit. Ps. 33/19.

Q. 212.

When is our Confession sincere?

Our Confession is sincere, when we tell our sins honestly and truthfully, neither exaggerating nor excusing them.

If we would judge ourselves, we should not be judged. 1 Cor. 11/31.

The just is first accuser of himself. Prov. 18/17.

Beware ye of the leaven of the Pharisees, which is hypocrisy. For there is nothing covered that shall not be revealed: nor hidden that shall not be known. Luke 12/1, 2; Matt. 10/26; Mark 4/22; Luke 8/17.

Come not to him with a double heart . . . and let not thy lips be a stumblingblock to thee. Eccus. 1/36, 37.

Be not ashamed to confess thy sins. Eccus. 4/31.

There is a shame that bringeth sin, and there is a shame that bringeth glory and grace. Eccus. 4/25.

God is witness of his reins, and he is a true searcher of his heart, and a hearer of his tongue. Wis. 1/6.

For, behold, my witness is in heaven, and he that knoweth my conscience is on high. Job 16/20.

Why hath satan tempted thy heart, that thou shouldst lie to the Holy Ghost . . . ? Acts 5/3.

Enlighten my eyes that I never sleep in death. Ps. 12/4.

For thy soul, be not ashamed to say the truth. Eccus. 4/24.

Incline not my heart to evil words; to make excuses in sins. Ps. 140/4.

Whatsoever you do, do it from the heart as to the Lord, and not to men. Col. 3/23.

Keep yourselves, therefore, from murmuring, which profiteth nothing, and refrain your tongue from detraction, for an obscure speech shall not go for nought: and the mouth that belieth, killeth the soul. Wis. 1/11.

And when thou shalt seek there the Lord thy God, thou shalt find him: yet so, if thou seek him with all thy heart, and all the affliction of thy soul. Deut. 4/29.

There is one that uttereth an exact word telling the truth. There is one that humbleth himself wickedly, and his interior is full of deceit. Eccus. 19/23.

Justify not thyself before God, for he knoweth the heart. Eccus. 7/5.

Q. 213.

When is our Confession entire?

Our Confession is entire when we tell the number and kinds of our sins and the circumstances which change their nature.

I will recount to thee all my years. Isai. 38/15.

If, as a man, I have hid my sin, and have concealed my iniquity in my bosom . . . Let thistles grow up to me instead of wheat. Job 31/33, 40.

I have acknowledged my sin to thee, and my injustice I have not concealed. Ps. 31/5.

He that hideth his sins shall not prosper: but he that shall confess, and forsake them, shall obtain mercy. Prov. 28/13.

He that speaketh that which he knoweth, sheweth forth justice: but he that lieth, is a deceitful witness. Prov. 12/17.

Q. 214.

What should we do if we cannot remember the number of our sins?

If we cannot remember the number of our sins, we should tell the number as nearly as possible, and say how often we may have sinned in a day, a week, or a month, and how long the habit or practice has lasted.

A contrite and humbled heart, O God, thou wilt not despise. Ps. 50/19.

God will not cast away the simple. Job 8/20.

He that speaketh that which he knoweth, sheweth forth justice. Prov. 12/17.

That as your mind is forward to be willing, so it may be also to perform, out of that which you have. 2 Cor. 8/11.

Q. 215.

Is our Confession worthy if, without our fault, we forget to confess a mortal sin?

If without our fault we forget to confess a mortal sin, our Confession is worthy, and the sin is forgiven; but it must be told in Confession if it again comes to our mind.

For if the will be forward, it is accepted according to that which a man hath, not according to that which he hath not. 2 Cor. 8/12.

Who can understand sins? from my secret ones cleanse me, O Lord. Ps. 18/13.

You shall seek me, and shall find me: when you shall seek me with all your heart. Jer. 29/13.

Turn ye to me, saith the Lord of hosts: and I will turn to you, saith the Lord of hosts. Zach. 1/3.

Blessed is the man to whom the Lord hath not imputed sin, and in whose spirit there is no guile. Ps. 31/2.

As a father hath compassion on his children, so hath the Lord compassion on them that fear him: for he knoweth our frame. He remembereth that we are dust. Ps. 102/13, 14.

Q. 216.

Is it a grievous offence wilfully to conceal a mortal sin in Confession?

It is a grievous offence wilfully to conceal a mortal sin in Confession, because we thereby tell a lie to the Holy Ghost, and make our Confession worthless.

Who will justify him that sinneth against his own soul? and who will honour him that dishonoureth his own soul? Eccus. 10/32.

Because thou camest to the Lord wickedly, and thy heart is full of guile and deceit. Eccus. 1/40.

The mouth that belieth, killeth the soul. Wis. 1/11.

The slipping of a false tongue is as one that falleth on the pavement. Eccus. 20/20.

Why hast thou conceived this thing in thy heart? Thou hast not lied to men, but to God. Acts 5/4.

There is that will destroy his own soul through shamefacedness. Eccus. 20/24.

He that with fixed eyes deviseth wicked things, biting his lips, bringeth evil to pass. Prov. 16/30.

Confess, and tell me what thou hast done, hide it not. Josue 7/19.

Wo to you that are deep of heart, to hide your counsel from the Lord: and their works are in the dark, and they say: Who seeth us, and who knoweth us? Isai. 29/15. (See Eccus. 2/14.)

Nothing deceiveth the keeper of thy soul, and he shall render to a man according to his works. Prov. 24/12.

He that hideth his sins shall not prosper. Prov. 28/13.

God hath given him place for penance, and he abuseth it unto pride: but his eyes are upon his ways. Job 24/23; Apoc. 2/21.

Add not sin upon sin. Eccus. 5/5.

Nor bind sin to sin: for even in one thou shalt not be unpunished. Eccus. 7/8.

Q. 217.

What must he do who has wilfully concealed a mortal sin in Confession?

He who has wilfully concealed a mortal sin in Confession must not only confess it, but must also repeat all the sins he has committed since his last worthy Confession.

Return to the Lord. Eccus. 17/23.

Let him do penance for his sin. Levit. 5/5.

Unless you shall do penance, you shall all likewise perish. Luke 13/3.

Wash yourselves, be clean, take away the evil of your devices from my eyes: cease to do perversely. Isai. 1/16.

He that sinneth against his own soul, shall repent. Eccus. 19/6.

They shall be afflicted for the sins of their fathers, and their own: until they confess their iniquities. Levit. 26/39, 40.

Q. 218.

Why does the priest give us a penance after Confession?

The priest gives us a penance after Confession, that we may satisfy God for the temporal punishment due to our sins.

Take heed what you do: for you exercise not the judgment of man, but of the Lord: and whatsoever you judge, it shall redound to you. 2 Paral. 19/6.

For the sins that you have committed before God, you shall be carried away captives into Babylon. Baruch 6/1.

Thou hast corrected man for iniquity. Ps. 38/12.

In their affliction they will rise early to me: . . . for he hath taken us, and he will heal us: he will strike, and he will cure us. Osee 6/1, 2.

Be converted to me with all your heart, in fasting, and in weeping, and in mourning. Joel 2/12.

Mortify, therefore, your members which are upon the earth. Col. 3/5.

For he that doth wrong, shall receive for that which he hath done wrongfully. Col. 3/25.

Such as I love, I rebuke and chastise. Be zealous, therefore, and do penance. Apoc. 3/19.

Esteeming these very punishments to be less than our sins deserve, let us believe that these scourges of the Lord, with which, like servants, we are chastised, have happened for our amendment, and not for our destruction. Judith 8/27.

Q. 219.

Does not the Sacrament of Penance remit all punishment due to sin?

The Sacrament of Penance remits the eternal punishment due to sin, but it does not always remit the temporal punishment which God requires as satisfaction for our sins.

(See 414.)

He that sinneth in the sight of his Maker, shall fall into the hands of the physician. Eccus. 38/15.

We have sinned, do thou unto us whatsoever pleaseth thee. Judges 10/15.

The Lord also hath taken away thy sin: . . . Neverthe-

less, . . . for this thing the child . . . shall surely die. 2 Kings 12/13, 14.

I have forgiven according to thy word . . . But yet all the men that . . . have tempted me . . . shall not see the land. Num. 14/20-23.

I said, I will confess against myself my injustice to the Lord; and thou hast forgiven the wickedness of my sin. Ps. 31/5.

The Lord chastising, hath chastised me: but he hath not delivered me over to death. Ps. 117/18.

He exacteth much less of thee, than thy iniquity deserveth. Job 11/6.

Q. 220.

Why does God require a temporal punishment as a satisfaction for sin?

God requires a temporal punishment as a satisfaction for sin, to teach us the great evil of sin and to prevent us from falling again.

To the end, that when we judge we may think on thy goodness: and when we are judged, we may hope for thy mercy. Wis. 12/22.

For day and night thy hand was heavy upon me: I am turned in my anguish, whilst the thorn is fastened. Ps. 31/4.

If any man's work burn, he shall suffer loss: but he himself shall be saved, yet so as by fire. 1 Cor. 3/15.

And Moses, the servant of the Lord, died there, in the land of Moab, by the commandment of the Lord. Deut. 34/5.

Go, and say to David: Thus saith the Lord: I will give thee thy choice of three things, choose one of them which thou wilt, that I may do it to thee. 2 Kings 24/12.

I am ready for scourges: and my sorrow is continually before me. Ps. 37/18.

For the sins that you have committed before God, you shall be carried away captives into Babylon. Baruch 6/1.

I beseech you, therefore, brethren, by the mercy of God, that you present your bodies a living sacrifice, holy, pleasing unto God, your reasonable service. Rom. 12/1.

Q. 221.

Which are the chief means by which we satisfy God for the temporal punishment due to sin?

The chief means by which we satisfy God for the temporal punishment due to sin are: Prayer, Fasting, Almsgiving, all spiritual and corporal works of mercy, and the patient suffering of the ills of life.

(See 222, 223, 303, 395; 185, 8th.)

Prayer is good with fasting and alms, more than to lay up treasures of gold. Tob. 12/8.

When thou didst pray with tears, and didst bury the dead, . . . I offered thy prayer to the Lord. Tob. 12/12.

Neglect not to pray, and to give alms. Eccus. 7/10.

Stretch out thy hand to the poor, that thy expiation and thy blessing may be perfected. Eccus. 7/36.

A gift hath grace in the sight of all the living, and restrain not grace from the dead. Eccus. 7/37.

Thy prayers and thy alms have ascended for a memorial in the sight of God. Acts 10/4.

I humbled my soul with fasting. Ps. 34/13.

I was clothed with haircloth. Ps. 34/13.

When thou shalt pour out thy soul to the hungry, and shalt satisfy the afflicted soul, then shall thy light rise up in darkness, and thy darkness shall be as the noonday. Isai. 58/10.

Shut up alms in the heart of the poor, and it shall obtain help for thee against all evil. Eccus. 29/15.

Redeem thou thy sins with alms, and thy iniquities with works of mercy to the poor. Dan. 4/24.

For alms delivereth from death, and the same is that which purgeth away sins, and maketh to find mercy and life everlasting. Tob. 12/9.

And do not forget to do good and to impart; for by such sacrifices God's favour is obtained. Heb. 13/16.

For alms deliver from all sin, and from death, and will not suffer the soul to go into darkness. Tob. 4/11.

Alms shall be a great confidence before the most high God, to all them that give it. Tob. 4/12.

Water quencheth a flaming fire, and alms resisteth sins. Eccus. 3/33. (See Eccus. 4, *passim.*)

Eat thy bread with the hungry and the needy, and with thy garments cover the naked. Tob. 4/17.

We lead indeed a poor life, but we shall have many good things if we fear God, and depart from all sin, and do that which is good. Tob. 4/23.

Reprove thy neighbour, for it may be he hath not said it: and if he hath said it, that he may not say it again. Eccus. 19/14.

Count it all joy, when you shall fall into divers temptations. James 1/2.

Man born of a woman, living for a short time, is filled with many miseries. Job 14/1.

The life of man upon earth is a warfare. Job 7/1.

Instead of making me a return of love, they detracted me; but I gave myself to prayer. Ps. 108/4.

Because thou wast acceptable to God, it was necessary that temptation should prove thee. Tob. 12/13.

Whom the Lord loveth, he chastiseth. Heb. 12/6.

Through many tribulations we must enter into the kingdom of God. Acts 14/21.

Yet so if we suffer with him, that we may be also glorified with him. Rom. 8/17.

Perhaps the Lord may look upon my affliction, and the Lord may render me good for the cursing of this day. 2 Kings 16/12.

Thou didst deserve indeed the wrath of the Lord: but good works are found in thee. 2 Paral. 19/2, 3.

Blessed is the man whom God correcteth. Job 5/17.

The Lord gave, and the Lord hath taken away: as it hath pleased the Lord, so is it done. Job 1/21.

A grievous sickness maketh the soul sober. Eccus. 31/2.

I will bear the wrath of the Lord, because I have sinned against him. Micheas 7/9.

He that taketh not up his cross, and followeth me, is not worthy of me. Matt. 10/38.

I am ready, not only to be bound, but to die also in Jerusalem, for the name of the Lord Jesus. Acts 21/13.

For I have learned, in whatsoever state I am, to be content therewith. Philip. 4/11.

For I reckon, that the sufferings of this time are not worthy to be compared with the glory to come. Rom. 8/18.

Wherefore, brethren, labour the more, that by good works, you may make sure your calling and election. 2 Pet. 1/10.

O how good and sweet is thy spirit, O Lord, in all things! And therefore thou chastisest them that err, by little and little: and admonishest them, and speakest to them, concerning the things wherein they offend: that leaving their wickedness, they may believe in thee, O Lord. Wis. 12/1, 2.

Q. 222.

Which are the chief spiritual works of mercy?

The chief spiritual works of mercy are seven: To admonish the sinner, to instruct the ignorant, to counsel the doubtful, to comfort the sorrowful, to bear wrongs patiently, to forgive all injuries, and to pray for the living and the dead.

He who causeth a sinner to be converted from the error of his way, shall save his soul from death, and shall cover a multitude of sins. James 5/20.

He, therefore, went to all that were in captivity, and gave them wholesome admonitions. Tob. 1/15.

Cry, cease not, lift up thy voice like a trumpet, and shew my people their wicked doings, and the house of Jacob their sins. Isai. 58/1.

To speak a word in due time, is like apples of gold on beds of silver. Prov. 25/11.

If a man be overtaken in any fault, you, who are spiritual, instruct such a one in the spirit of meekness, considering thyself, lest thou also be tempted. Gal. 6/1.

With modesty admonishing them that resist the truth. 2 Tim. 2/25.

I will teach the unjust thy ways: and the wicked shall be converted to thee. Ps. 50/15.

They that instruct many to justice, (shall shine) as stars for all eternity. Dan. 12/3.

Seek counsel always of a wise man. Tob. 4/19.

Tobias daily went among all his kindred, and comforted them. Tob. 1/19.

I was a comforter of them that mourned. Job 29/25.

I wept heretofore for him that was afflicted, and my soul had compassion on the poor. Job 30/25.

Be not wanting in comforting them that weep, and walk with them that mourn. Eccus. 7/38.

Rebuke the unquiet, comfort the feebleminded, support the weak, be patient towards all men. 1 Thess. 5/14.

When the Lord had seen, being moved with mercy towards her, he said to her: Weep not. Luke 7/13.

According to thy ability be merciful. Tob. 4/8; Eccus. 35/12.

Take all that shall be brought upon thee: and in thy sorrow endure, and in thy humiliation keep patience. Eccus. 2/4.

Persevere under discipline. Heb. 12/7.

Bearing with one another, and forgiving one another, if any have a complaint against another. Even as the Lord hath forgiven you, so you also. Col. 3/13.

Pray one for another. James 5/16.

Restrain not grace from the dead. Eccus. 7/37.

Q 223.

Which are the chief corporal works of mercy?

The chief corporal works of mercy are seven: To feed the hungry, to give drink to the thirsty, to clothe the naked, to ransom the captive, to harbor the harborless, to visit the sick, and to bury the dead.

Religion clean and undefiled . . . is this: To visit the fatherless and widows in their tribulation: and to keep one's self unspotted from this world. James 1/27.

If a brother or sister be naked, and want daily food: and one of you say to them: Go in peace, be you warm and filled: . . . what shall it profit? James 2/15, 16.

Alms shall be a great confidence before the most high God, to all them that give it. Tob. 4/12.

If thou have much, give abundantly: if thou have little, take care even so to bestow willingly a little. Tob. 4/9.

He fed the hungry, and gave clothes to the naked, and was careful to bury the dead. Tob. 1/20 & 1/3 & 12/12.

Eat thy bread with the hungry and the needy, and with thy garments cover the naked. Tob. 4/17.

Some distribute their own goods, and grow richer: others take away what is not their own, and are always in want. Prov. 11/24.

He that giveth to the poor shall not want: he that despiseth his entreaty shall suffer indigence. Prov. 28/27.

Do not forget to do good and to impart. Heb. 13/16.

If thy enemy be hungry, give him to eat: if he thirst, give him drink. Rom. 12/20.

Give to every one that asketh thee. Luke 6/30.

He that hath the substance of this world, and shall see his brother in need, and shall put up his bowels from him: how doth the charity of God abide in him? 1 John 3/17.

Blessed is he that understandeth concerning the needy and the poor. Ps. 40/2.

In thy sweetness, O God, thou hast provided for the poor. Ps. 67/11.

If thou wilt be perfect, go sell what thou hast, and give to the poor. Matt. 19/21.

He that hath two coats, let him give to him that hath none; and he that hath meat, let him do in like manner. Luke 3/11.

Deal thy bread to the hungry, and bring the needy and the harbourless into thy house: when thou shalt see one naked, cover him. Isai. 58/7.

Be not slow to visit the sick. Eccus. 7/39.

Remember them that are in bands, as if you were bound with them. Heb. 13/3.

Make unto you friends of the mammon of iniquity. Luke 16/9.

Give alms out of thy substance, and turn not away thy face from any poor person. Tob. 4/7.

Whosoever shall give to drink to one of these little ones a cup of cold water, only in the name of a disciple, amen I say to you, he shall not lose his reward. Matt. 10/42; Mark 9/40.

Come, ye blessed of my Father, . . . For I was hungry, and you gave me to eat: I was thirsty, and you gave me to drink: I was a stranger, and you took me in: naked, and you covered me: sick, and you visited me: I was in prison, and you came to me. Matt. 25/34-36.

Lesson Twentieth.

ON THE MANNER OF MAKING A GOOD CONFESSION.

Q. 224.

What should we do on entering the confessional?

On entering the confessional we should kneel, make the sign of the Cross, and say to the priest, "Bless me, father;" then add, "I confess to almighty God and to you, father, that I have sinned."

As I live, saith the Lord, every knee shall bow to me; and every tongue shall confess to God. Rom. 14/11. (See Isai. 45/24; Philip. 2/10.)

Father, I have sinned against heaven, and before thee. Luke 15/21.

I have gone astray like a sheep that is lost. Ps. 118/176.

Heal my soul, for I have sinned against thee. Ps. 40/5.

Q. 225.

Which are the first things we should tell the priest in Confession?

The first things we should tell the priest in Confession are the time of our last Confession, and whether we said the penance and went to Holy Communion.

The just is first accuser of himself. Prov. 18/17.

I will recount to thee all my years in the bitterness of my soul. Isai. 38/15.

We have sinned, we have committed iniquity, we have done wickedly, and have revolted: and we have gone aside from thy commandments, and thy judgments. Dan. 9/5. (See Baruch 2/12; Ps. 105/6; Judith 7/19.)

Q. 226.

After telling the time of our last Confession and Communion what should we do?

After telling the time of our last Confession and Communion we should confess all the mortal sins we have since committed, and all the venial sins we may wish to mention.

Incline not my heart to evil words; to make excuses in sins. Ps. 140/4.

Justify not thyself before God, for he knoweth the heart. Eccus. 7/5.

I said, I will confess against myself. Ps. 31/5.

I will let go my speech against myself, I will speak in the bitterness of my soul. Job 10/1.

He that cleareth up a question, shall prepare what to say. Eccus. 33/4.

Q. 227.

What must we do when the confessor asks us questions?

When the confessor asks us questions we must answer them truthfully and clearly.

Refrain not to speak in the time of salvation. Eccus. 4/28.

For thy soul, be not ashamed to say the truth. Eccus. 4/24.

Gird up thy loins like a man: I will ask thee, and answer thou me. Job 38/3.

Return a true answer with wisdom. Eccus. 5/13.

What will they do, when the Lord shall begin to examine? Eccus. 2/17.

Will a wise man answer as if he were speaking in the wind . . . ? Job 15/2.

For they were examined for the remembrance of thy words, and were quickly healed, lest, falling into deep forgetfulness, they might not be able to use thy help. Wis. 16/11.

Q. 228.

What should we do after telling our sins?

After telling our sins we should listen with attention to the advice which the confessor may think proper to give.

My son, hear the instruction of thy father. Prov. 1/8.

Hear instruction, and be wise, and refuse it not. Prov. 8/33.

Give ear, my son, and take wise counsel, and cast not away my advice. Eccus. 6/24.

Hear, ye children, the instruction of a father, and attend, that you may know prudence. Prov. 4/1.

Be meek to hear the word, that thou mayst understand. Eccus. 5/13.

My son, do thou nothing without counsel, and thou shalt not repent when thou hast done. Eccus. 32/24.

It is better to be rebuked by a wise man, than to be deceived with the flattery of fools. Ecces. 7/6.

Hearken to me, my son, and learn the discipline of understanding, and attend to my words in thy heart. Eccus. 16/24.

Hear in silence, and for thy reverence good grace shall come to thee. Eccus. 32/9.

Good instruction shall give grace. Prov. 13/15.

Q. 229.

How should we end our Confession?

We should end our Confession by saying, "I also accuse myself of all the sins of my past life," telling, if we choose, one or several of our past sins.

Be not without fear about sin forgiven. Eccus. 5/5.

Wash me yet more from my iniquity, and cleanse me from my sin. Ps. 50/4.

For thy former sins also pray that they may be forgiven thee. Eccus. 21/1.

Q. 230.

What should we do while the priest is giving us absolution?

While the priest is giving us absolution we should from our heart renew the Act of Contrition.

Have mercy on me, O God, according to thy great mercy. And according to the multitude of thy tender mercies, blot out my iniquity. Ps. 50/1.

Lesson Twenty-First.

ON INDULGENCES.

Q. 231.

What is an Indulgence?

An Indulgence is the remission in whole or in part of the temporal punishment due to sin.

(See 219, 221, 414, 415.)

For what I have pardoned, if I have pardoned anything, for your sakes have I done it in the person of Christ. 2 Cor. 2/10.

Redeem thou thy sins with alms, and thy iniquities with works of mercy to the poor. Dan. 4/24.

A throne shall be prepared in mercy. Isai. 16/5.

The Lord also hath taken away thy sin: . . . Nevertheless . . . 2 Kings 12/13, 14.

He hath not dealt with us according to our sins; nor rewarded us according to our iniquities. For according to the height of the heaven above the earth: he hath strengthened his mercy towards them that fear him. Ps. 102/10, 11.

(Temporal punishment: 1 Cor. 3/15; Apoc. 21/27.)

Q. 232.

Is an Indulgence a pardon of sin, or a license to commit sin?

An Indulgence is not a pardon of sin, nor a license to commit sin, and one who is in a state of mortal sin cannot gain an Indulgence.

He hath commanded no man to do wickedly, and he hath given no man license to sin. Eccus. 15/21.

All things of his divine power, which appertain to life

and godliness, are given us, . . . he hath given us most great and precious promises. 2 Pet. 1/3, 4.

We know that to them that love God, all things work together unto good. Rom. 8/28.

Q. 233.

How many kinds of Indulgences are there?

There are two kinds of Indulgences—Plenary and Partial.

To every one of us is given grace according to the measure of the giving of Christ. Ephes. 4/7.

Q. 234.

What is a Plenary Indulgence?

A Plenary Indulgence is the full remission of the temporal punishment due to sin.

I forgave thee all the debt. Matt. 18/32.

Upon this day shall be the expiation for you, and the cleansing from all your sins: you shall be cleansed before the Lord. Levit. 16/30.

Q. 235.

What is a Partial Indulgence?

A Partial Indulgence is the remission of a part of the temporal punishment due to sin.

Shall not the dew assuage the heat? Eccus. 18/16.

For what I have pardoned, if I have pardoned anything, for your sakes have I done it in the person of Christ. 2 Cor. 2/10.

Q. 236.

How does the Church by means of Indulgences remit the temporal punishment due to sins?

The Church by means of Indulgences remits the temporal punishment due to sin by applying to us the merits of Jesus Christ, and the superabundant satisfactions of the Blessed Virgin Mary and of the saints; which merits and satisfactions are its spiritual treasury.

You shall draw waters with joy out of the Saviour's fountains. Isai. 12/3.

By whose stripes you were healed. 1 Pet. 2/24; Isai. 53/5.

Whatsoever you shall bind upon earth, shall be bound also in heaven: and whatsoever you shall loose upon earth, shall be loosed also in heaven. Matt. 18/18 & 16/19.

I have laid upon thee the years of their iniquity, according to the number of the days, . . . and thou shalt bear the iniquity of the house of Israel. Ezech. 4/5.

I . . . fill up those things that are wanting of the sufferings of Christ, in my flesh for his body, which is the church. Col. 1/24.

A good man, out of a good treasure, bringeth forth good things. Matt. 12/35.

Much more therefore, being now justified by his blood, shall we be saved from wrath through him. Rom. 5/9.

Give thanks to Onias, the priest: because, for his sake, the Lord hath granted thee life. 2 Mach. 3/33.

Q. 237.

What must we do to gain an Indulgence?

To gain an Indulgence we must be in the state of grace and perform the works enjoined.

If the prophet had bid thee do some great thing, surely thou shouldst have done it: how much rather what he now hath said to thee: Wash, and thou shalt be clean? 4 Kings 5/13.

They . . . will prepare their hearts, and in his sight will sanctify their souls. Eccus. 2/20.

Alms delivereth from death, and the same is that which purgeth away sins, and maketh to find mercy and life everlasting. Tob. 12/9.

Prayer is good with fasting and alms, more than to lay up treasures of gold. Tob. 12/8.

Lesson Twenty-Second.

ON THE HOLY EUCHARIST.

Q. 238.

What is the Holy Eucharist?

The Holy Eucharist is the Sacrament which contains the body and blood, soul and divinity, of our Lord Jesus Christ under the appearances of bread and wine.

(See 137.)

The bread of angels. Ps. 77/25. (See Wis. 16/20.)

The bread of life. John 6/48.

The true bread from heaven. John 6/32.

The living bread . . . from heaven. John 6/41.

The corn of the elect, and wine springing forth virgins. Zach. 9/17.

And they spoke ill of God; they said: Can God furnish a table in the wilderness? Ps. 77/19.

How can this man give us his flesh to eat? John 6/53.

Take ye, and eat: this is my body. Matt. 26/26.

For this is my blood of the new testament. Matt. 26/28; Mark 14/24.

Behold, I have prepared my dinner; . . . come ye to the marriage. Matt. 22/4.

Except you eat the flesh of the Son of Man, and drink his blood, you shall not have life in you. John 6/54.

This is my body which is given for you. Luke 22/19.

This is the chalice, the new testament in my blood, which shall be shed for you. Luke 22/20. (See Exod. 24/8.)

The chalice of benediction which we bless, is it not the communion of the blood of Christ? And the bread which we break, is it not the partaking of the body of the Lord? 1 Cor. 10/16.

This is my body which shall be delivered for you. 1 Cor. 11/24.

This chalice is the new testament in my blood. 1 Cor. 11/25.

Therefore whosoever shall eat this bread, or drink the chalice of the Lord unworthily, shall be guilty of the body and of the blood of the Lord. 1 Cor. 11/27.

Blessed are they that are called to the marriage-supper of the Lamb. Apoc. 19/9. (See Luke 14/16.)

Q. 239.

When did Christ institute the Holy Eucharist?

Christ instituted the Holy Eucharist at the Last Supper, the night before He died.

Whilst they were at supper. Matt. 26/26.

On the first day of the unleavened bread. Mark 14/12.

When evening was come. Mark 14/17.

Whilst they were eating. Mark 14/22.

And the day of the unleavened bread came. Luke 22/7.

Before the festival-day of the pasch, . . . And when supper was done. John 13/1, 2.

The same night in which he was betrayed. 1 Cor. 11/23.

After he had supped. 1 Cor. 11/25.

Q. 240.

Who were present when our Lord instituted the Holy Eucharist?

When our Lord instituted the Holy Eucharist the twelve Apostles were present.

But when it was evening, he sat down with his twelve disciples. Matt. 26/20.

And whilst they were at supper, Jesus took bread, and blessed, and broke. Matt. 26/26.

And when evening was come, he cometh with the twelve. Mark 14/17.

And whilst they were eating, Jesus took bread. Mark 14/22.

And when the hour was come, he sat down, and the twelve apostles with him. Luke 22/14.

Q. 241.

How did our Lord institute the Holy Eucharist?

Our Lord instituted the Holy Eucharist by taking bread, blessing, breaking, and giving to His Apostles, saying: "Take ye and eat. This is my body"; and then by taking the cup of wine, blessing and giving it, saying to them: "Drink ye all of this. This is my blood which shall be shed for the remission of sins. Do this for a commemoration of me."

For I have received of the Lord that which also I delivered unto you, that the Lord Jesus, the same night in which he was betrayed, took bread, and giving thanks, broke, and said: Take ye, and eat: this is my body which shall be delivered for you: this do for the commemoration of me. In like manner also the chalice, after he had supped, saying: This chalice is the new testament in my blood. 1 Cor. 11/23-25.

And whilst they were at supper, Jesus took bread, and blessed, and broke: and gave to his disciples, and said: Take ye, and eat: this is my body. And taking the chalice, he gave thanks; and gave to them, saying: Drink ye all of this. For this is my blood of the new testament, which shall be shed for many unto remission of sins. Matt. 26/26-28.

And whilst they were eating, Jesus took bread: and blessing, broke, and gave to them, and said: Take ye; this is my body. And having taken the chalice, giving thanks, he gave it to them. And they all drank of it. And he said to them: This is my blood of the new testament, which shall be shed for many. Mark 14/22-24.

And taking bread, he gave thanks, and brake: and gave to them, saying: This is my body which is given for you. Do this for a commemoration of me. In like manner the chalice also, after he had supped, saying: This is the chalice, the new testament in my blood, which shall be shed for you. Luke 22/19, 20.

Q. 242.

What happened when our Lord said, "This is my body; this is my blood"?

When our Lord said, "This is my body," the substance of the

bread was changed into the substance of His body; when He said, "This is my blood," the substance of the wine was changed into the substance of His blood.

In thy sweetness, O God, thou hast provided for the poor. Ps. 67/11.

O taste, and see that the Lord is sweet. Ps. 33/9.

Thou didst feed thy people with the food of angels. Wis. 16/20; Ps. 77/24; John 6/31.

Q. 243.

Is Jesus Christ whole and entire both under the form of bread and under the form of wine?

Jesus Christ is whole and entire both under the form of bread and under the form of wine.

Is Christ divided? 1 Cor. 1/13.

Therefore whosoever shall eat this bread, *or* drink the chalice of the Lord unworthily, shall be guilty of the body *and* of the blood of the Lord. 1 Cor. 11/27.

Q. 244.

Did anything remain of the bread and wine after their substance had been changed into the substance of the body and blood of our Lord?

After the substance of the bread and wine had been changed into the substance of the body and blood of our Lord there remained only the appearances of bread and wine.

The things which are seen are temporal: but the things which are not seen are eternal. 2 Cor. 4/18.

Q. 245.

What do you mean by the appearances of bread and wine?

By the appearances of bread and wine I mean the figure, the color, the taste, and whatever appears to the senses.

The sensual man perceiveth not these things that are of the Spirit of God: for it is foolishness to him. 1 Cor. 2/14.

He . . . eateth and drinketh . . . not discerning the body of the Lord. 1 Cor. 11/29.

We look not at the things which are seen, but at the things which are not seen. 2 Cor. 4/18.

Q. 246.

What is this change of the bread and wine into the body and blood of our Lord called?

This change of the bread and wine into the body and blood of our Lord is called Transubstantiation.

The pot of meal wasted not, and the cruise of oil was not diminished, according to the word of the Lord, which he spoke in the hand of Elias. 3 Kings 17/16.

Cana of Galilee, where he made the water wine. John 4/46.

Q. 247.

How was the substance of the bread and wine changed into the substance of the body and blood of Christ?

The substance of the bread and wine was changed into the substance of the body and blood of Christ by His almighty power.

(See 19.)

And they spoke ill of God; they said: Can God furnish a table in the wilderness? Ps. 77/19.

They understood not concerning the loaves; for their heart was blinded. Mark 6/52.

Is there any thing hard to God? Gen. 18/14.

He taketh away the first, that he may establish that which followeth. Heb. 10/9.

The foolish things of the world hath God chosen, that he may confound the wise. 1 Cor. 1/27.

Thou hast prepared their food. Ps. 64/10.

Q. 248.

Does this change of bread and wine into the body and blood of Christ continue to be made in the Church?

This change of bread and wine into the body and blood of Christ continues to be made in the Church by Jesus Christ through the ministry of His priests.

From the rising of the sun even to the going down, my name is great among the Gentiles, and in every place there is sacrifice, and there is offered to my name a clean oblation: for my name is great among the Gentiles, saith the Lord of hosts. Mal. 1/11.

I will set my tabernacle in the midst of you, and my soul shall not cast you off. Levit. 26/11.

And it came to pass, whilst he was at table with them, he took bread, and blessed, and brake, and gave to them. And their eyes were opened, and they knew him. Luke 24/30, 31.

And they were persevering in the doctrine of the apostles, and in the communication of the breaking of bread. Acts 2/42.

And continuing daily with one accord in the temple, and breaking bread from house to house. Acts 2/46.

You shall shew the death of the Lord until he come. 1 Cor. 11/26.

Q. 249.

When did Christ give His priests the power to change bread and wine into His body and blood?

Christ gave His priests the power to change bread and wine into His body and blood when He said to the Apostles, "Do this in commemoration of me." (Luke 22/19; 1 Cor. 11/24, 25.)

And the oblation of the Lord was in their hands. Eccus. 50/15.

Q. 250.

How do the priests exercise this power of changing bread and wine into the body and blood of Christ?

The priests exercise this power of changing bread and wine into the body and blood of Christ through the words of consecration in the Mass, which are the words of Christ: "This is my body; this is my blood."

The chalice of benediction which we bless, is it not the communion of the blood of Christ? And the bread which we break, is it not the partaking of the body of the Lord? 1 Cor. 10/16.

Lesson Twenty-Third.

ON THE ENDS FOR WHICH THE HOLY EUCHARIST WAS INSTITUTED.

Q. 251.

Why did Christ institute the Holy Eucharist?

Christ instituted the Holy Eucharist—

1. To unite us to Himself and to nourish our soul with his divine life.

I am the bread of life. John 6/48.

For my flesh is meat indeed: and my blood is drink indeed. John 6/56.

He that eateth my flesh, and drinketh my blood, abideth in me, and I in him. John 6/57.

By this hath the charity of God appeared towards us, because God hath sent his only begotten Son into the world, that we may live by him. 1 John 4/9.

He that eateth my flesh, and drinketh my blood, hath everlasting life. John 6/55.

He that eateth me, the same also shall live by me. John 6/58.

Arise, eat: for thou hast yet a great way to go. And he arose, and ate, and drank, and walked in the strength of that food forty days and forty nights, unto the mount of God, Horeb. 3 Kings 19/7, 8.

And they spoke ill of God; they said: Can God furnish a table in the wilderness? Ps. 77/19.

Because he struck the rock, and the waters gushed out, and the streams overflowed. Can he also give bread, or provide a table for his people? Ps. 77/20.

I have compassion on the multitudes, . . . I will not

send them away fasting, lest they faint in the way. Matt. 15/32; Mark 8/2, 3.

I will feed my sheep. Ezech. 34/15.

I will come to thee and will bless thee. Exod. 20/24.

My delights were to be with the children of men. Prov. 8/31.

I will set my tabernacle in the midst of you. Levit. 26/11.

Come to me, all you that labour, and are burdened, and I will refresh you. Matt. 11/28.

They that go far from thee shall perish. Ps. 72/27.

I am smitten as grass, and my heart is withered: because I forgot to eat my bread. Ps. 101/5.

Her conversation hath no bitterness. Wis. 8/16.

2. To increase sanctifying grace and all virtues in our soul.

In a swift hour his blessing beareth fruit. Eccus. 11/24.

For what have I in heaven? and besides thee what do I desire upon earth? Ps. 72/25.

Man eat the bread of angels: he sent them provisions in abundance. Ps. 77/25.

He that eateth me, the same also shall live by me. John 6/58.

3. To lessen our evil inclinations.

For what is the good thing of him, and what is his beautiful thing, but the corn of the elect, and wine springing forth virgins? Zach. 9/17.

And I shall be spotless with him: and shall keep myself from my iniquity. Ps. 17/24.

With the holy one thou wilt be holy. 2 Kings 22/26; Ps. 17/26.

4. To be a pledge of everlasting life.

He that eateth me, the same also shall live by me. John 6/58.

He that eateth my flesh, and drinketh my blood, hath everlasting life. John 6/55.

If any man eat of this bread, he shall live for ever. John 6/52.

If any man eat of it, he may not die. John 6/50.

For the bread of God is that which cometh down from heaven, and giveth life to the world. John 6/33.

Except you eat the flesh of the Son of Man, and drink his blood, you shall not have life in you. John 6/54.

He that eateth this bread, shall live for ever. John 6/59.

5. To fit our bodies for a glorious resurrection.

He that eateth my flesh, and drinketh my blood, hath everlasting life: and I will raise him up in the last day. John 6/55.

6. To continue the sacrifice of the Cross in His Church.

They were persevering . . . in the communication of the breaking of bread. Acts 2/42.

And continuing daily with one accord in the temple, and breaking bread from house to house. Acts 2/46.

The chalice of benediction which we bless, is it not the communion of the blood of Christ? And the bread which we break, is it not the partaking of the body of the Lord? 1 Cor. 10/16.

For as often as you shall eat this bread, and drink the chalice, you shall shew the death of the Lord until he come. 1 Cor. 11/26.

From the rising of the sun even to the going down, my name is great among the Gentiles, and in every place there is sacrifice, and there is offered to my name a clean oblation. Mal. 1/11.

Q. 252.

How are we united to Jesus Christ in the Holy Eucharist?

We are united to Jesus Christ in the Holy Eucharist by means of Holy Communion.

The chalice of benediction which we bless, is it not the communion of the blood of Christ? And the bread which we break, is it not the partaking of the body of the Lord? 1 Cor. 10/16.

For we being many, are one bread, one body, all that partake of one bread. 1 Cor. 10/17.

He that eateth my flesh, and drinketh my blood, abideth in me, and I in him. John 6/57.

They that eat me, shall yet hunger: and they that drink me, shall yet thirst. Eccus. 24/29. (See John 6/35.)

Instead of which things, thou didst feed thy people with the food of angels, and gavest them bread from heaven, prepared without labour; having in it all that is delicious, and the sweetness of every taste. Wis. 16/20.

The Lord is the portion of my inheritance and of my cup. Ps. 15/5.

Thou hast prepared a table before me. Ps. 22/5.

Q. 253.

What is Holy Communion?

Holy Communion is the receiving of the body and blood of Christ.

The marriage-supper of the Lamb. Apoc. 19/9.

The bread that I will give, is my flesh for the life of the world. John 6/52.

This is my body which is given for you. Luke 22/19; 1 Cor. 11/24.

The bread which we break, is it not the partaking of the body of the Lord? 1 Cor. 10/16.

Can God furnish a table in the wilderness? Ps. 77/19.

A certain man made a great supper. Luke 14/16.

Q. 254.

What is necessary to make a good Communion?

To make a good Communion it is necessary to be in the state of sanctifying grace and to be fasting from midnight.

They that fear the Lord, will prepare their hearts, and in his sight will sanctify their souls. Eccus. 2/20.

But let a man prove himself: and so let him eat of that bread, and drink of the chalice. For he that eateth and drinketh unworthily, eateth and drinketh judgment to himself, not discerning the body of the Lord. 1 Cor. 11/28, 29.

For this same was about to betray him, whereas he was one of the twelve. John 6/72.

When you come, therefore, together into one place, it is not now to eat the Lord's supper. For every one taketh before his own supper to eat. 1 Cor. 11/20, 21.

You cannot drink the chalice of the Lord, and the chalice of devils: you cannot be partakers of the table of the Lord, and of the table of devils. 1 Cor. 10/21.

You shall gird your reins, and you shall have shoes on your feet, holding staves in your hands, and you shall eat in haste. Exod. 12/11.

Prepare ye the way of the Lord . . . Every valley shall be exalted, and every mountain and hill shall be made low, and the crooked shall become straight, and the rough ways plain. Isai. 40/3, 4; Luke 3/4, 5.

If so be you have tasted that the Lord is sweet. 1 Pet. 2/3.

Let us draw near with a true heart in fulness of faith, having our hearts sprinkled from an evil conscience, and our bodies washed with clean water. Heb. 10/22.

Q. 255.

Does he who receives Communion in mortal sin receive the body and blood of Christ?

He who receives Communion in mortal sin receives the body and blood of Christ, but does not receive His grace, and he commits a great sacrilege.

Let a man prove himself: . . . For he that eateth and drinketh unworthily, eateth and drinketh judgment to himself, not discerning the body of the Lord. 1 Cor. 11/28, 29.

And after the morsel, satan entered into him. John 13/27.

Thou shalt eat, but shalt not be filled: and thy humiliation shall be in the midst of thee. Micheas 6/14.

What is the meaning that my beloved hath wrought much wickedness in my house? shall the holy flesh take away from thee thy crimes, in which thou hast boasted? Jer. 11/15.

Give not that which is holy to dogs; neither cast ye your pearls before swine. Matt. 7/6.

Q. 256.

Is it enough to be free from mortal sin to receive plentifully the graces of Holy Communion?

To receive plentifully the graces of Holy Communion it is

not enough to be free from mortal sin, but we should be free from all affection to venial sin, and should make acts of lively faith, of firm hope, and ardent love.

For what have I in heaven? and besides thee what do I desire upon earth? Ps. 72/25.

Lord, I am not worthy that thou shouldst enter under my roof: but only say the word. Matt. 8/8; Luke 7/6.

My soul hath thirsted after the strong living God. Ps. 41/3.

As the hart panteth after the fountains of waters; so my soul panteth after thee, O God. Ps. 41/2.

Let your loins be girt, and lamps burning in your hands. And you yourselves like to men who wait for their lord. Luke 12/35, 36.

My soul longeth and fainteth for the courts of the Lord. Ps. 83/3.

O God, my God, to thee do I watch at break of day. For thee my soul hath thirsted; for thee my flesh, O how many ways! Ps. 62/2.

Q. 257.

What is the fast necessary for Holy Communion?

The fast necessary for Holy Communion is the abstaining from midnight from everything which is taken as food or drink.

When you come, therefore, together into one place, it is not now to eat the Lord's supper. For every one taketh before his own supper to eat. 1 Cor. 11/20, 21.

The disciples prayed him, saying: Rabbi, eat. But he said to them: I have meat to eat which you know not. John 4/31, 32.

For he hath satisfied the empty soul, and hath filled the hungry soul with good things. Ps. 106/9.

Q. 258.

Is any one ever allowed to receive Holy Communion when not fasting?

Any one in danger of death is allowed to receive Communion when not fasting.

Stay with us, because it is towards evening, and the day is now far spent. Luke 24/29.

Come to me, all you that labour, and are burdened, and I will refresh you. Matt. 11/28.

For though I should walk in the midst of the shadow of death, I will fear no evils, for thou art with me . . . Thou hast prepared a table before me, against them that afflict me. Ps. 22/4, 5.

And he arose, and ate, and drank, and walked in the strength of that food . . . unto the mount of God. 3 Kings 19/8.

And brightness, like that of the noonday, shall arise to thee at evening: and when thou shalt think thyself consumed, thou shalt rise as the day-star. Job 11/17.

Q. 259.

When are we bound to receive Holy Communion?

We are bound to receive Holy Communion, under pain of mortal sin, during the Easter time and when in danger of death.

(See 400, 401.)

Except you eat the flesh of the Son of Man, and drink his blood, you shall not have life in you. John 6/54.

And he sent his servant at the hour of supper, to say to them that were invited, that they should come, for now all things are ready. Luke 14/17.

I am smitten as grass, and my heart is withered: because I forgot to eat my bread. Ps. 101/5.

There is a time and opportunity for every business. Eccles. 8/6.

If any man . . . did not make the phase, that soul shall be cut off from among his people. Num. 9/13.

Q. 260.

Is it well to receive Holy Communion often?

It is well to receive Holy Communion often, as nothing is a greater aid to a holy life than often to receive the Author of all grace and the Source of all good.

Lord, give us always this bread. John 6/34.

As the hart panteth after the fountains of waters; so my soul panteth after thee, O God. My soul hath thirsted after the strong living God. Ps. 41/2, 3.

The little ones have asked for bread, and there was none to break it unto them. Lam. 4/4.

And they were persevering in the doctrine of the apostles, and in the communication of the breaking of bread. Acts 2/42.

I am smitten as grass, and my heart is withered: because I forgot to eat my bread. Ps. 101/5.

Behold, he standeth behind our wall, looking through the windows, looking through the lattices. Cant. 2/9.

Behold, I stand at the gate and knock. If any man shall hear my voice, and open to me the door, I will come in to him, and will sup with him, and he with me. Apoc. 3/20.

Come to me, all you that labour, and are burdened, and I will refresh you. Matt. 11/28.

He that cometh to me, shall not hunger. John 6/35.

Come, eat my bread, and drink the wine which I have mingled for you. Prov. 9/5.

Eat, O friends, and drink. Cant. 5/1.

Now, all good things came to me together with her, and innumerable riches through her hands. Wis. 7/11.

For the earth, that drinketh in the rain which cometh often upon it, and bringeth forth herbs meet for them by whom it is tilled: receiveth blessing from God. Heb. 6/7.

Q. 261.

What should we do after Holy Communion?

After Holy Communion we should spend some time in adoring our Lord, in thanking Him for the grace we have received, and in asking Him for the blessings we need.

Thanks be to God for his unspeakable gift. 2 Cor. 9/15.

Come, let us praise the Lord with joy: let us joyfully sing to God our Saviour. Let us come before his presence with thanksgiving. Ps. 94/1, 2.

Bless the Lord, O my soul: and let all that is within me bless his holy name. Bless the Lord, O my soul, and never forget all he hath done for thee. Ps. 102/1, 2.

Come, let us adore, and fall down: . . . before the Lord that made us. Ps. 94/6.

What shall I render to the Lord, for all the things that he hath rendered to me? I will take the chalice of salva-

tion: and I will call upon the name of the Lord. Ps. 115/12, 13.

Come and hear, . . . and I will tell you what great things he hath done for my soul. Ps. 65/16.

Pray ye for the things that are for the peace of Jerusalem: and abundance for them that love thee. Ps. 121/6.

Pour out your hearts before him. Ps. 61/9; Lam. 2/19.

Adore ye the Lord in his holy court. Ps. 95/9.

Give glory to God with a good heart. Eccus. 35/10.

He that adoreth God with joy, shall be accepted, and his prayer shall approach even to the clouds. Eccus. 35/20.

Sanctify the Lord Christ in your hearts. 1 Pet. 3/15.

Let the peace of Christ rejoice in your hearts, . . . and be ye thankful. Col. 3/15.

Giving thanks always, for all things. Ephes. 5/20.

The hope of the unthankful shall melt away as the winter's ice, and shall run off as unprofitable water. Wis. 16/29.

Is this the return thou makest to the Lord, O foolish and senseless people? Deut. 32/6.

Were not ten made clean? and where are the nine? Luke 17/17.

We give thanks to thee, and we praise thy glorious name. 1 Paral. 29/13.

I will give thanks to thee in a great church. Ps. 34/18.

And I will joy in God, my Jesus. Habac. 3/18.

Lesson Twenty-Fourth.

ON THE SACRIFICE OF THE MASS.

Q. 262.

When and where are the bread and wine changed into the body and blood of Christ?

The bread and wine are changed into the body and blood of Christ at the Consecration in the Mass.

I will go in to the altar of God: to God who giveth joy to my youth. Ps. 42/4.

In every place there is sacrifice, and there is offered to my name a clean oblation. Mal. 1/11.

The chalice of benediction which we bless, is it not the communion of the blood of Christ? And the bread which we break, is it not the partaking of the body of the Lord? 1 Cor. 10/16.

He hath made a remembrance of his wonderful works, being a merciful and gracious Lord: he hath given food to them that fear him. Ps. 110/4, 5.

Beware lest thou offer thy holocausts in every place that thou shalt see. Deut. 12/13.

This do ye, as often as you shall drink, for the commemoration of me. 1 Cor. 11/25.

Q. 263.

What is the Mass?

The Mass is the unbloody sacrifice of the body and blood of Christ.

The sacrifice of praise. Ps. 49/23.

A clean oblation. Mal. 1/11.

Burnt-offering and sin-offering thou didst not require: then said I, Behold I come. Ps. 39/7, 8.

A body thou hast fitted to me. Heb. 10/5.

I am the living bread which came down from heaven. John 6/51.

We, therefore, at all times without ceasing, both in our festivals, and other days wherein it is convenient, remember you in the sacrifices that we offer. 1 Mach. 12/11.

For as often as you shall eat this bread, and drink the chalice, you shall shew the death of the Lord until he come. 1 Cor. 11/26.

Q. 264.

What is a sacrifice?

A sacrifice is the offering of an object by a priest to God alone, and the consuming of it to acknowledge that He is the Creator and Lord of all things.

Abel also offered of the firstlings of his flock. Gen. 4/4.

And Noe built an altar unto the Lord. Gen. 8/20.

(Jacob) offered sacrifices in the mountain. Gen. 31/54.

Nadab and Abiu, . . . taking their censers, put fire therein, and incense on it, offering before the Lord strange fire: which was not commanded them. Levit. 10/1.

And when thou offerest it to the Lord, thou shalt deliver it to the hands of the priest. Levit. 2/8.

Every high priest taken from among men, is ordained for men in the things that appertain to God, that he may offer up gifts and sacrifices for sins . . . Neither doth any man take the honour to himself, but he that is called by God. as Aaron was. Heb. 5/1-4.

Q. 265.

Is the Mass the same sacrifice as that of the Cross?

The Mass is the same sacrifice as that of the Cross.

(See 266.)

Do this for a commemoration of me. Luke 22/19.

As often as you shall eat this bread, and drink the chalice, you shall shew the death of the Lord until he come. 1 Cor. 11/26.

Q. 266.

How is the Mass the same sacrifice as that of the Cross?

The Mass is the same sacrifice as that of the Cross because

the offering and the priest are the same—Christ our Blessed Lord; and the ends for which the sacrifice of the Mass is offered are the same as those of the sacrifice of the Cross.

(See 267.)

Thou art a priest for ever, according to the order of Melchisedech. Heb. 7/17; Ps. 109/4.

But this, for that he continueth for ever, hath an everlasting priesthood. Heb. 7/24.

For it was fitting that we should have such a high priest. Heb. 7/26; Heb. 8/1.

Christ, being come an high priest of the good things to come. Heb. 9/11.

Behold I come. Heb. 10/7; Ps. 39/8.

We have an altar, whereof they have no power to eat who serve the tabernacle. Heb. 13/10.

Q. 267.

What were the ends for which the sacrifice of the Cross was offered?

The ends for which the sacrifice of the Cross was offered were:

1st. **To honor and glorify God.**

Now is the Son of Man glorified, and God is glorified in him. John 13/31.

Father, the hour is come, glorify thy Son, that thy Son may glorify thee. John 17/1.

I will sacrifice to thee the sacrifice of praise, and I will call upon the name of the Lord. Ps. 115/17.

The sacrifice of praise shall glorify me. Ps. 49/23.

2d. **To thank Him for all the graces bestowed on the whole world.**

He is the propitiation for our sins: and not for ours only, but also for those of the whole world. 1 John 2/2.

3d. **To satisfy God's justice for the sins of men.**

Christ was offered once to exhaust the sins of many. Heb. 9/28.

You were . . . redeemed . . . with the precious blood

of Christ, as of a lamb unspotted and undefiled. 1 Pet. 1/18, 19; 1 Cor. 6/20; 1 John 1/7; Apoc. 1/5.

4th. **To obtain all graces and blessings.** (See 102.)

We are sanctified by the oblation of the body of Jesus Christ once. Heb. 10/10.

We have an advocate with the Father. 1 John 2/1.

And of his fulness we all have received, . . . grace and truth came by Jesus Christ. John 1/16, 17.

Q. 268.

Is there any difference between the sacrifice of the Cross and the sacrifice of the Mass?

Yes; the manner in which the sacrifice is offered is different. On the Cross Christ really shed His blood and was really slain; in the Mass there is no real shedding of blood nor real death, because Christ can die no more; but the sacrifice of the Mass, through the separate consecration of the bread and the wine, represents His death on the Cross.

Knowing that Christ, rising again from the dead, dieth now no more, death shall no more have dominion over him. Rom. 6/9.

For as often as you shall eat this bread, and drink the chalice, you shall shew the death of the Lord until he come. 1 Cor. 11/26.

Q. 269.

How should we assist at Mass?

We should assist at Mass with great interior recollection and piety and with every outward mark of respect and devotion.

This people honoureth me with their lips: but their heart is far from me. Matt. 15/8; Isai. 29/13.

God is a spirit, and they that adore him, must adore him in spirit and in truth. John 4/24.

Thou shalt not appear empty in the sight of the Lord. Eccus. 35/6.

Then all the people together made haste, and fell down to the earth upon their faces, to adore the Lord their God, and to pray to the Almighty God, the Most High. And the singers lifted up their voices, and in the great house

the sound of sweet melody was increased. And the people in prayer besought the Lord, the Most High, until the worship of the Lord was perfected, and they had finished their office. Eccus. 50/19-21.

And kneeling down, he prayed. Luke 22/41.

I have loved, O Lord, the beauty of thy house; and the place where thy glory dwelleth. Ps. 25/8.

Q. 270.

Which is the best manner of hearing Mass?

The best manner of hearing Mass is to offer it to God with the priest for the same purpose for which it is said, to meditate on Christ's sufferings and death, and to go to Holy Communion.

They were persevering . . . in the communication of the breaking of bread. Acts 2/42.

With desolation is all the land made desolate: because there is none that considereth in the heart. Jer. 12/11.

For the thought of man shall give praise to thee: and the remainders of the thought shall keep holiday to thee. Vow ye, and pay to the Lord your God: all ye that are round about him bring presents. Ps. 75/11, 12.

What shall I render to the Lord, for all the things that he hath rendered to me? I will take the chalice of salvation: and I will call upon the name of the Lord. I will pay my vows to the Lord, before all his people. Ps. 115/12-14.

Lesson Twenty-Fifth.

ON EXTREME UNCTION AND HOLY ORDERS.

Q. 271.

What is the Sacrament of Extreme Unction?

Extreme Unction is the Sacrament which, through the anointing and prayer of the priest, gives health and strength to the soul, and sometimes to the body, when we are in danger of death from sickness.

Is any man sick among you? Let him bring in the priests of the church, and let them pray over him, anointing him with oil in the name of the Lord. And the prayer of faith shall save the sick man: and the Lord shall raise him up: and if he be in sins, they shall be forgiven him. James 5/14, 15.

In those days Ezechias was sick even to death, and he prayed to the Lord: and he heard him, and gave him a sign. 2 Paral. 32/24.

Take order with thy house, for thou shalt die, and not live. Isai. 38/1; 4 Kings 20/1.

Give thanks to Onias, the priest: because, for his sake, the Lord hath granted thee life. 2 Mach. 3/33.

And they cast out many devils, and anointed with oil many that were sick, and healed them. Mark 6/13.

They shall lay their hands upon the sick, and they shall recover. Mark 16/18.

And when he (Paul) had prayed, and laid his hands on him, he healed him. Acts 28/8.

Therefore my heart hath been glad, and my tongue hath rejoiced: moreover, my flesh also shall rest in hope. Ps. 15/9.

Q. 272.

When should we receive Extreme Unction?

We should receive Extreme Unction when we are in danger of death from sickness, or from a wound or accident.

Is any man sick among you? Let him bring in the priests of the church, and let them pray over him, anointing him with oil. James 5/14.

O forgive me, that I may be refreshed, before I go hence, and be no more. Ps. 38/14.

My daughter is at the point of death, come, lay thy hand upon her, that she may be safe, and may live. Mark 5/23.

When my strength shall fail, do not thou forsake me. Ps. 70/9.

And brightness, like that of the noonday, shall arise to thee at evening: and when thou shalt think thyself consumed, thou shalt rise as the day-star. Job 11/17.

Q. 273.

Should we wait until we are in extreme danger before we receive Extreme Unction?

We should not wait until we are in extreme danger before we receive Extreme Unction, but if possible we should receive it whilst we have the use of our senses.

The ruler saith to him: Lord, come down before that my son die. John 4/49.

I go, and you shall seek me, and you shall die in your sin. John 8/21.

My son, in thy sickness . . . Give a sweet savour, and a memorial of fine flour, and make a fat offering, and then give place to the physician. Eccus. 38/9-11.

He will give his heart to resort early to the Lord that made him, and he will pray in the sight of the Most High. He will open his mouth in prayer, and will make supplication for his sins. Eccus. 39/6, 7.

O God, be not thou far from me: O my God, make haste to my help. Ps. 70/12.

O Lord, make me know my end, and what is the number of my days: that I may know what is wanting to me. Ps. 38/5.

Q. 274.

Which are the effects of the Sacrament of Extreme Unction?

The effects of Extreme Unction are: 1st, To comfort us in the pains of sickness and to strengthen us against temptations; 2d, To remit venial sins and to cleanse our soul from the remains of sin; 3d, To restore us to health, when God sees fit.

He cured a few that were sick, laying his hands upon them. Mark 6/5.

And they cast out many devils, and anointed with oil many that were sick, and healed them. Mark 6/13.

And the prayer of faith shall save the sick man: and the Lord shall raise him up: and if he be in sins, they shall be forgiven him. James 5/15.

And thou shalt have confidence, hope being set before thee, and being buried, thou shalt sleep secure. Thou shalt rest, and there shall be none to make thee afraid. Job 11/18, 19.

Wash me yet more from my iniquity, and cleanse me from my sin. Ps. 50/4.

Strengthen me with a perfect spirit. Ps. 50/14.

For in thee I will run girded: in my God I will leap over the wall. 2 Kings 22/30.

I will appear before thy sight in justice; I shall be satisfied when thy glory shall appear. Ps. 16/15.

Q. 275.

What do you mean by the remains of sin?

By the remains of sin I mean the inclination to evil and the weakness of the will which are the result of our sins, and which remain after our sins have been forgiven.

As when one sifteth with a sieve, the dust will remain: so will the perplexity of a man in his thoughts. Eccus. 27/5.

I see another law in my members, fighting against the law of my mind. Rom. 7/23.

I know that there dwelleth not in me, that is to say, in my flesh, that which is good. Rom. 7/18.

The wages of sin is death. Rom. 6/23.

Q. 276.

How should we receive the Sacrament of Extreme Unction?

We should receive the Sacrament of Extreme Unction in the state of grace, and with lively faith and resignation to the will of God.

Turn away from sin, and order thy hands aright, and cleanse thy heart from all offence. Eccus. 38/10.

Lord, if thou wilt, thou canst make me clean. Matt. 8/2; Mark 1/40; Luke 5/12.

To live is Christ: and to die is gain. Philip. 1/21.

Turn, O my soul, into thy rest: for the Lord hath been bountiful to thee. For he hath delivered my soul from death: and my eyes from tears, my feet from falling. Ps. 114/7, 8.

For unto you it is given for Christ, not only to believe in him, but also to suffer for him. Philip. 1/29.

Be you . . . patient, and strengthen your hearts: for the coming of the Lord is at hand. James 5/8.

Lord Jesus, receive my spirit. Acts 7/58.

The souls of the just are in the hand of God, and the torment of death shall not touch them. Wis. 3/1.

Take all that shall be brought upon thee: and in thy sorrow endure. Eccus. 2/4.

My heart is ready, O God, my heart is ready. Ps. 56/8.

Father, into thy hands I commend my spirit. Luke 23/46; Ps. 30/6.

Q. 277.

Who is the minister of the Sacrament of Extreme Unction?

The priest is the minister of the Sacrament of Extreme Unction.

Let him bring in the priests of the church, and let them pray over him, anointing him with oil in the name of the Lord. James 5/14.

He called the twelve . . . and they cast out many devils, and anointed with oil many that were sick. Mark 6/7, 13.

Calling together the twelve apostles, he gave them power and authority over all devils, and to cure diseases. Luke 9/1.

Q. 278.

What is the Sacrament of Holy Orders?

Holy Orders is a Sacrament by which bishops, priests, and other ministers of the Church are ordained and receive the power and grace to perform their sacred duties.

And God indeed hath set some in the church, first apostles, secondly prophets, thirdly doctors. 1 Cor. 12/28.

He gave some apostles, and some prophets, and other some evangelists, and other some pastors and doctors. Ephes. 4/11.

For Christ therefore, we are ambassadors. 2 Cor. 5/20.

And I will set up pastors over them, and they shall feed them. Jer. 23/4.

And I will give you pastors according to my own heart, and they shall feed you with knowledge and doctrine. Jer. 3/15.

You have not chosen me: but I have chosen you; and have appointed you, that you should go, and should bring forth fruit. John 15/16.

The Holy Ghost said to them: Separate me Saul and Barnabas for the work whereunto I have taken them. Then they fasting, and praying, and imposing their hands upon them, sent them away. Acts 13/2, 3.

Thou shalt put on them the holy vestments, that they may minister to me, and that the unction of them may prosper to an everlasting priesthood. Exod. 40/13.

And thou shalt set the Levites in the sight of Aaron, and of his sons, and shalt consecrate them, being offered to the Lord. Num. 8/13.

Bishops and deacons. Philip. 1/1.

I have made thee a watchman to the house of Israel: and thou shalt hear the word out of my mouth, and shalt tell it them from me. Ezech. 3/17 & 33/7.

Every high priest taken from among men, is ordained for men in the things that appertain to God, that they may offer up gifts and sacrifices for sins. Heb. 5/1.

Between the porch and the altar, the priests, the Lord's ministers, shall weep, and shall say: Spare, O Lord, spare thy people: and give not thy inheritance to reproach. Joel 2/17.

The little ones have asked for bread, and there was none to break it unto them. Lam. 4/4.

My sheep were scattered, because there was no shepherd. Ezech. 34/5.

Should not the flocks be fed by the shepherds? Ezech. 34/1.

Pray ye, therefore, the Lord of the harvest, that he send forth labourers into his harvest. Matt. 9/38.

Receive ye the Holy Ghost. John 20/22.

Do this for a commemoration of me. Luke 22/19; 1 Cor. 11/24, 25.

Beware of false prophets. Matt. 7/15.

How shall they preach unless they be sent? Rom. 10/15.

Some going astray, are turned aside unto vain babbling: desiring to be teachers of the law, understanding neither the things they say, nor whereof they affirm. 1 Tim. 1/6, 7.

Q. 279.

What is necessary to receive Holy Orders worthily?

To receive Holy Orders worthily it is necessary to be in the state of grace, to have the necessary knowledge and a divine call to this sacred office.

(See Ps. 83 as a prayer for a vocation.)

Who shall ascend into the mountain of the Lord: or who shall stand in his holy place? The innocent in hands, and clean of heart, who hath not taken his soul in vain. Ps. 23/3, 4. (See Ps. 67/15.)

Lord, who shall dwell in thy tabernacle? or who shall rest in thy holy hill? He that walketh without blemish, and worketh justice. Ps. 14/1, 2.

Let thy priests be clothed with justice. Ps. 131/9.

Be ye clean, you that carry the vessels of the Lord. Isai. 52/11.

The priests also that come to the Lord, let them be sanctified, lest he strike them. Exod. 19/22.

It behoveth . . . a bishop to be blameless. 1 Tim. 3/1, 2.

For a bishop must be without crime, as the steward of God. Titus 1/7.

Here now it is required among the dispensers, that a man be found faithful. 1 Cor. 4/2.

I am made a minister, according to the gift of the grace of God, which is given to me according to the operation of his power. Ephes. 3/7.

Impose not hands lightly upon any man. 1 Tim. 5/22.

It doth not belong to thee, Ozias, to burn incense to the Lord, but to the priests, that is, to the sons of Aaron, who are consecrated for this ministry. 2 Paral. 26/18.

Neither doth any man take the honour to himself, but he that is called by God, as Aaron was. Heb. 5/4; Exod. 28/1.

You have not chosen me: but I have chosen you; and have appointed you. John 15/16.

Blessed is he whom thou hast chosen, and taken to thee: he shall dwell in thy courts. Ps. 64/5.

Be not negligent: the Lord hath chosen you to stand before him, and to minister to him, and to worship him, and to burn incense to him. 2 Paral. 29/11.

Son of man, I have made thee a watchman to the house of Israel: therefore thou shalt hear the word from my mouth, and shalt tell it them from me. Ezech. 33/7 & 3/17.

The lips of the priests shall keep knowledge. Mal. 2/7.

Let me have from among you wise and understanding men, and such whose conversation is approved among your tribes, that I may appoint them your rulers. Deut. 1/13.

(God;) who hath delivered us, and called us by his holy calling. 2 Tim. 1/9.

One thing I have asked of the Lord, this will I seek after; that I may dwell in the house of the Lord all the days of my life. That I may see the delight of the Lord, and may visit his temple. Ps. 26/4, 5.

And when he went up into the ship, he that had been troubled with the devil, began to beseech him that he might be with him. And he admitted him not. Mark 5/18, 19; Luke 8/38.

If any man minister to me, let him follow me. John 12/26.

Thou shalt consecrate the hands of them all, and shalt sanctify them, that they may do the office of priesthood unto me. Exod. 28/41 & 30/30.

Whosoever of the seed of Aaron the priest hath a blemish, he shall not approach to offer sacrifices to the Lord, nor bread to his God. Levit. 21/21.

You take too much upon you, ye sons of Levi. Num. 16/7.

Those sought the writing of their genealogy, and found

it not; and they were cast out of the priesthood. 1 Esdras 2/62.

Let us possess the sanctuary of God for an inheritance. Ps. 82/13.

I did not send prophets, yet they ran: I have not spoken to them, yet they prophesied. Jer. 23/21.

He that taketh authority to himself unjustly, shall be hated. Eccus. 20/8.

Amen, amen I say to you: he that entereth not by the door into the sheepfold, but climbeth up another way, the same is a thief and a robber. John 10/1.

Son, when thou comest to the service of God, stand in justice and in fear. Eccus. 2/1.

Cursed be he that doth the work of the Lord deceitfully. Jer. 48/10.

It is good for a man, when he hath borne the yoke from his youth. Lam. 3/27.

No stranger, uncircumcised in heart, and . . . flesh, shall enter into my sanctuary. Ezech. 44/9.

To you it is given to know the mystery of the kingdom of God. Luke 8/10; Matt. 13/11; Mark 4/11.

And there shall be like people like priest. Osee 4/9.

Because thou hast rejected knowledge, I will reject thee, and thou shalt not do the office of priesthood to me. Osee 4/6.

Carefully study to present thyself approved unto God, a workman that needeth not to be ashamed, rightly handling the word of truth. 2 Tim. 2/15.

And he chose priests without blemish, whose will was set upon the law of God. 1 Mach. 4/42.

But Jesus said to him: Follow me, and let the dead bury their dead. Matt. 8/22; Luke 9/60.

Be ye, therefore, wise as serpents, and simple as doves. Matt. 10/16.

Go you also into my vineyard. Matt. 20/7.

No man putting his hand to the plough, and looking back, is fit for the kingdom of God. Luke 9/62.

If the blind lead the blind, both fall into the pit. Matt. 15/14; Luke 6/39.

Look ye out among you . . . men of good reputation, full of the Holy Ghost and wisdom, whom we may appoint over this business. Acts 6/3.

Let thy priests . . . put on salvation. 2 Paral. 6/41.

Q. 280.

How should Christians look upon the priests of the Church?

Christians should look upon the priests of the Church as the messengers of God and the dispensers of His mysteries.

Let a man so account of us as of the ministers of Christ, and the dispensers of the mysteries of God. 1 Cor. 4/1.

For Christ therefore, we are ambassadors. 2 Cor. 5/20.

The lips of the priests shall keep knowledge, and they shall seek the law at his mouth. Mal. 2/7.

To you it is given to know the mystery of the kingdom of God. Luke 8/10; Matt. 13/11; Mark 4/11.

Thus saith the Lord of hosts: Ask the priests the law. Aggeus 2/12.

In all things let us exhibit ourselves as the ministers of God. 2 Cor. 6/4.

Remember your prelates who have spoken the word of God to you: whose faith follow. Heb. 13/7.

Obey your prelates, and be subject to them. Heb. 13/17.

With all thy soul fear the Lord, and reverence his priests. Eccus. 7/31.

With all thy strength love him that made thee: and forsake not his ministers. Eccus. 7/32.

Honour God with all thy soul, and give honour to the priests. Eccus. 7/33.

He that knoweth God, heareth us. 1 John 4/6.

Thou shalt do whatsoever they shall say that preside in that place, which the Lord shall choose, and what they shall teach thee. Deut. 17/10.

I am the good shepherd; and I know mine, and mine know me. John 10/14.

Touch not my anointed: and do no evil to my prophets. 1 Paral. 16/22; Ps. 104/15.

We are God's coadjutors: you are God's husbandry, you are God's building. 1 Cor. 3/9.

If the ministration of condemnation be glory, much more the ministration of justice aboundeth in glory. 2 Cor. 3/9.

You despised not, nor rejected: but received me as an angel of God, even as Christ Jesus. Gal. 4/14.

Let the priests that rule well be esteemed worthy of double honour. 1 Tim. 5/17.

You are the salt of the earth. Matt. 5/13.

You are the light of the world. Matt. 5/14.

How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings! Isai. 52/7; Nahum 1/15; Rom. 10/15.

He that is the keeper of his master shall be glorified. Prov. 27/18.

Pray ye, therefore, the Lord of the harvest, that he send labourers into his harvest. Luke 10/2.

And for me, that speech may be given me, that I may open my mouth with confidence, to make known the mystery of the gospel. Ephes. 6/19.

And I beseech you, brethren, to know them who labour among you, and are over you in the Lord, and admonish you: that you esteem them more abundantly for their work's sake. Have peace with them. 1 Thess. 5/12, 13.

Q. 281.

Who can confer the Sacrament of Holy Orders?
Bishops can confer the Sacrament of Holy Orders.

Neglect not the grace that is in thee, which was given thee by prophecy, with imposition of the hands of the priesthood. 1 Tim. 4/14.

Impose not hands lightly upon any man. 1 Tim. 5/22.

For this cause I left thee in Crete, that thou shouldest set in order the things that are wanting, and shouldest ordain priests in every city, as I also appointed thee. Titus 1/5.

Separate me Saul and Barnabas for the work whereunto I have taken them. Then they fasting, and praying, and imposing their hands upon them, sent them away. Acts 13/2, 3.

These (candidates for deaconship) they set before the apostles: and they praying, imposed hands upon them. Acts 6/6.

And when they (Paul and Barnabas) had ordained to them priests in every church, and had prayed with fasting, they commended them to the Lord. Acts 14/22.

Lesson Twenty-Sixth.

ON MATRIMONY.

Q. 282.

What is the Sacrament of Matrimony?

The Sacrament of Matrimony is the Sacrament which unites a Christian man and woman in lawful marriage.

This is a great sacrament. Ephes. 5/32.

Wherefore a man shall leave father and mother, and shall cleave to his wife: and they shall be two in one flesh. Gen. 2/24; Matt. 19/5; Mark 10/7, 8.

Every house is built by some man. Heb. 3/4.

Thy wife as a fruitful vine, on the sides of thy house. Thy children are as olive plants round about thy table. Behold, thus shall the man be blessed that feareth the Lord. Ps. 127/3, 4.

There was a marriage in Cana of Galilee: and the mother of Jesus was there. And Jesus also was invited, and his disciples, to the marriage. John 2/1, 2.

Q. 283.

Can a Christian man and woman be united in lawful marriage in any other way than by the Sacrament of Matrimony?

A Christian man and woman cannot be united in lawful marriage in any other way than by the Sacrament of Matrimony, because Christ raised marriage to the dignity of a sacrament.

(See 404-407.)

This is a great sacrament. Ephes. 5/32.

For we are the children of saints, and we must not be joined together like heathens that know not God. Tob. 8/5.

Q. 284.

Can the bond of Christian marriage be dissolved by any human power?

The bond of Christian marriage cannot be dissolved by any human power.

What, therefore, God hath joined together, let no man put asunder. Matt. 19/6; Mark 10/9.

He that shall marry her that is put away, committeth adultery. Matt. 19/9 & 5/32.

Whosoever shall put away his wife, and marry another, committeth adultery against her. Mark 10/11.

And if the wife shall put away her husband, and be married to another, she committeth adultery. Mark 10/12.

Every one that putteth away his wife, and that marrieth another, committeth adultery: and he that marrieth her that is put away from her husband, committeth adultery. Luke 16/18.

To them that are married, not I, but the Lord commandeth, that the wife depart not from her husband. 1 Cor. 7/10.

And if she depart, that she remain unmarried, or be reconciled to her husband. And let not the husband put away his wife. 1 Cor. 7/11.

A woman is bound by the law as long as her husband liveth: but if her husband die, she is at liberty. 1 Cor. 7/39. (See Rom. 7/2, 3.)

Depart not from a wise and good wife, whom thou hast gotten in the fear of the Lord. Eccus. 7/21.

Q. 285.

Which are the effects of the Sacrament of Matrimony?

The effects of the Sacrament of Matrimony are, 1st, To sanctify the love of husband and wife; 2d, To give them grace to bear with each other's weaknesses; 3d, To enable them to bring up their children in the fear and love of God.

Rachel died from me in the land of Chanaan in the very journey, and it was spring time: and I was going to Ephrata, and I buried her near the way of Ephrata. Gen. 48/7.

A wise woman buildeth her house. Prov. 14/1.

House and riches are given by parents: but a prudent wife is properly from the Lord. Prov. 19/14.

Who shall find a valiant woman? Prov. 31/10.

Happy is the husband of a good wife: for the number of his years is double. Eccus. 26/1.

Thy wife as a fruitful vine, on the sides of thy house. Thy children are as olive plants round about thy table. Behold, thus shall the man be blessed that feareth the Lord. Ps. 127/3, 4.

Q. 286.

To receive the Sacrament of Matrimony worthily is it necessary to be in the state of grace?

To receive the Sacrament of Matrimony worthily it is necessary to be in the state of grace, and it is necessary also to comply with the laws of the Church.

There was a marriage in Cana of Galilee: and the mother of Jesus was there. And Jesus also was invited, and his disciples. John 2/1, 2.

Friend, how camest thou in hither, not having on a wedding garment? Matt. 22/12.

They who, in such manner, receive matrimony, as to shut out God from themselves, and from their mind, and to give themselves to their lust, as the horse and mule, which have not understanding, over them the devil hath power. Tob. 6/17.

For we are the children of saints, and we must not be joined together like heathens that know not God. Tob. 8/5.

Q. 287.

Who has the right to make laws concerning the Sacrament of marriage?

The Church alone has the right to make laws concerning the Sacrament of marriage, though the state also has the right to make laws concerning the civil effects of the marriage contract.

(See 284, 403-407; 389, 6th.)

The Holy Ghost hath placed you bishops, to rule the church of God. Acts 20/28.

If he will not hear the church, let him be to thee as the heathen and publican. Matt. 18/17.

Who is he that hath commanded a thing to be done, when the Lord commandeth it not? Lam. 3/37.

The husband is the head of the wife. Ephes. 5/23.

Be ye not many masters, my brethren. James 3/1.

Husbands, love your wives, and be not bitter towards them. Col. 3/19.

Wives, be subject to your husbands, as it behoveth in the Lord. Col. 3/18; Ephes. 5/22; 1 Pet. 3/1

Marriage honourable in all. Heb. 13/4.

House and riches are given by parents: but a prudent wife is properly from the Lord. Prov. 19/14.

O Timothy, keep that which is committed to thy trust. 1 Tim. 6/20.

Q. 288.

Does the Church forbid the marriage of Catholics with persons who have a different religion or no religion at all?

The Church does forbid the marriage of Catholics with persons who have a different religion or no religion at all.

(See 389, 6th.)

The sons of God seeing the daughters of men, that they were fair, took to themselves wives. . . . And God said: My spirit shall not remain in man for ever. Gen. 6/2, 3.

Beware thou never join in friendship with the inhabitants of that land, which may be thy ruin. . . . Neither shalt thou take of their daughters a wife for thy son. Exod. 34/12, 16.

But if you will embrace the errors of these nations that dwell among you, and make marriages with them, . . . know ye, for a certainty, that the Lord your God will not destroy them before your face, but they shall be a pit and a snare in your way. Josue 23/12, 13. (See 1 Esdras 10/14.)

Now, therefore, give not your daughters to their sons, and take not their daughters for your sons. 1 Esdras 9/12; Deut. 7/3.

For to him who feareth God is thy daughter due to be his wife. Tob. 7/12.

Take not a wife for my son, of the daughters of the Chanaanites. Gen. 24/3 & 28/1.

Bear not the yoke with unbelievers. 2 Cor. 6/14.

Q. 289.

Why does the Church forbid the marriage of Catholics with persons who have a different religion or no religion at all?

The Church forbids the marriage of Catholics with persons who have a different religion or no religion at all, because such marriages generally lead to indifference, loss of faith, and to the neglect of the religious education of the children.

For we are the children of saints, and we must not be joined together like heathens that know not God. Tob. 8/5.

With the holy, thou wilt be holy; and with the innocent man thou wilt be innocent. Ps. 17/26.

And they were mingled among the heathens, and learned their works. Ps. 105/35.

Bear not the yoke with unbelievers. For what participation hath justice with injustice? Or what fellowship hath light with darkness? 2 Cor. 6/14. (See Exod. 34/16.)

For she will turn away thy son from following me, that he may rather serve strange gods. Deut. 7/4. (See Judges 3/6.)

And Samson said to his father: Take this woman for me, for she hath pleased my eyes. Judges 14/3.

And King Solomon loved many strange women. 3 Kings 11/1.

Women of other countries brought even him to sin. 2 Esdras 13/26. (See 3 Kings 11/4.)

For the daughter of Achab was his wife: and he did that which was evil in the sight of the Lord. 4 Kings 8/18; 2 Paral. 21/6.

I saw Jews that married wives, women of Azotus, and of Ammon, and of Moab. And their children spoke half in the speech of Azotus, and could not speak the Jews' language, but they spoke according to the language of this and that people. 2 Esdras 13/23, 24.

Q. 290.

Why do many marriages prove unhappy?

Many marriages prove unhappy because they are entered into hastily and without worthy motives.

For they who, in such manner, receive matrimony, as to shut out God from themselves, and from their mind, and

to give themselves to their lust, as the horse and mule, which have not understanding, over them the devil hath power. Tob. 6/17. (See also Tob. 8/9.)

They carried off for themselves every man his wife of them that were dancing. Judges 21/23.

And as they liked not to have God in their knowledge, God delivered them up to a reprobate sense, to do those things which are not convenient. Rom. 1/28.

Favour is deceitful, and beauty is vain: the woman that feareth the Lord, she shall be praised. Prov. 31/30.

It will be more agreeable to abide with a lion and a dragon, than to dwell with a wicked woman. Eccus. 25/23.

A good wife is a good portion: she shall be given in the portion of them that fear God. Eccus. 26/3.

A jealous woman is the grief and mourning of the heart. Eccus. 26/8.

The Lord hath been witness between thee and the wife of thy youth, whom thou hast despised: yet she was thy partner, and the wife of thy covenant. Mal. 2/14.

And the marriage was turned into mourning, and the noise of their musical instruments into lamentation. 1 Mach. 9/41.

So also ought men to love their wives as their own bodies. He that loveth his wife, loveth himself. Ephes. 5/28.

Q. 291.

How should Christians prepare for a holy and happy marriage?

Christians should prepare for a holy and happy marriage by receiving the Sacraments of Penance and Holy Eucharist; by begging God to grant them a pure intention and to direct their choice; and by seeking the advice of their parents and the blessing of their pastors.

Take care of a good name: for this shall continue with thee, more than a thousand treasures precious and great. Eccus. 41/15.

Favour is deceitful, and beauty is vain. Prov. 31/30.

Whose adorning let it not be the outward plaiting of the hair, or the wearing of gold, or the putting on of apparel. 1 Pet. 3/3; 1 Tim. 2/9.

For we are the children of saints, and we must not be joined together like heathens that know not God. Tob. 8/5.

And when all had said, Amen: they went to the feast, but the marriage-feast they celebrated also with the fear of the Lord. Tob. 9/12.

And the parents, taking their daughter, kissed her, and let her go: admonishing her to honour her father and mother-in-law, to love her husband, to take care of the family, to govern the house, and to behave herself irreprehensibly. Tob. 10/12, 13.

My son, do thou nothing without counsel, and thou shalt not repent when thou hast done. Eccus. 32/24.

Make straight the path for thy feet, and all thy ways shall be established. Prov. 4/26.

But above all these things, pray to the Most High, that he may direct thy way in truth. Eccus. 37/19.

Lesson Twenty-Seventh.

ON THE SACRAMENTALS.

Q. 292.

What is a sacramental?

A sacramental is anything set apart or blessed by the Church to excite good thoughts and to increase devotion, and through these movements of the heart to remit venial sin.

For every creature of God is good, and nothing to be rejected that is received with thanksgiving: for it is sanctified by the word of God and prayer. 1 Tim. 4/4, 5.

Thou shalt make the holy oil of unction. . . . This oil of unction shall be holy unto me throughout your generations. Exod. 30/25, 31.

Thou shalt take the oil of unction and anoint the tabernacle with its vessels, that they may be sanctified. Exod. 40/9.

Thou shalt consecrate all with the oil of unction, that they may be most holy. Exod. 40/11.

Samuel took the horn of oil, and anointed him. 1 Kings 16/13.

He compounded also the oil for the ointment of sanctification, and incense of the purest spices. Exod. 37/29.

Most holy shall this incense be unto you. Exod. 30/36.

And he shall take holy water in an earthen vessel. Num. 5/17.

In all thy oblations thou shalt offer salt. Levit. 2/13.

He went out to the spring of the waters, and cast the salt into it, and said: Thus saith the Lord: I have healed these waters, and there shall be no more in them death or barrenness. 4 Kings 2/21.

And a man that is clean shall gather up the ashes of the cow, and shall pour them forth without the camp in a most clean place, that they may be reserved for the multitude of the children of Israel, and for a water of aspersion. Num. 19/9.

He that toucheth the corpse of a man . . . shall be sprinkled with this water. Num. 19/11, 12. (See Num. 19/18, 19.)

For he that turned to it (the brazen serpent), was not healed by that which he saw, but by thee, the Saviour of all. Wis. 16/7.

Q. 293.

What is the difference between the Sacraments and the sacramentals?

The difference between the Sacraments and the sacramentals is: 1st. The Sacraments were instituted by Jesus Christ and the sacramentals were instituted by the Church; 2d. The Sacraments give grace of themselves when we place no obstacle in the way; the sacramentals excite in us pious dispositions, by means of which we may obtain grace.

That Christ instituted the Sacraments, and that they give grace, see: For

Baptism: Matt. 28/19; John 3/5; Mark 16/16.
Confirmation: John 14/16; Acts 8/14.
Penance: John 20/23; 2 Cor. 5/18; Acts 19/18.
Eucharist: Matt. 26/26; 1 Cor. 11/23.
Extreme Unction: James 5/14; Mark 6/7, 13.
Holy Orders: 1 Cor. 12/28; Titus 1/5; Ephes. 4/11.
Matrimony: Ephes. 5/32; Matt. 19/6.

Q. 294.

Which is the chief sacramental used in the Church?

The chief sacramental used in the Church is the sign of the cross.

The sign of the Son of Man. Matt. 24/30.

The sign of the living God. Apoc. 7/2.

In the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost. Matt. 28/19.

God forbid that I should glory, save in the cross of our Lord Jesus Christ; by whom the world is crucified to me, and I to the world. Gal. 6/14.

Blessed is the wood, by which justice cometh. Wis. 14/7.

Having a sign of salvation, to put them in remembrance of the commandment of thy law. Wis. 16/6; Col. 2/14.

Go through the midst of the city, through the midst of Jerusalem: and mark Thau upon the foreheads of the men. Ezech. 9/4.

Q. 295.

How do we make the sign of the cross?

We make the sign of the cross by putting the right hand to the forehead, then on the breast, and then to the left and right shoulders, saying, "In the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost. Amen."

In the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost. Matt. 28/19.

Mark Thau upon the foreheads. Ezech. 9/4.

The sign of the Son of Man. Matt. 24/30.

Q. 296.

Why do we make the sign of the cross?

We make the sign of the cross to show that we are Christians and to profess our belief in the chief mysteries of our religion.

(See 297 *et seq.*)

Hurt not the earth, nor the sea, nor the trees, till we sign the servants of our God in their foreheads. Apoc. 7/3.

And evidently great is the mystery of godliness, which was manifested in the flesh, was justified in the spirit, appeared unto angels, hath been preached unto the Gentiles, is believed in the world, is taken up in glory. 1 Tim. 3/16.

Q. 297.

How is the sign of the cross a profession of faith in the chief mysteries of our religion?

The sign of the cross is a profession of faith in the chief mysteries of our religion because it expresses the mysteries of

the Unity and Trinity of God and of the Incarnation and death of our Lord.

(See 298, 299.)

Now this is eternal life: that they may know thee, the only true God, and Jesus Christ, whom thou hast sent. John 17/3.

Q. 298.

How does the sign of the cross express the mystery of the Unity and Trinity of God?

The words, "In the name," express the Unity of God; the words that follow, "of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost," express the mystery of the Trinity.

And these three are one. 1 John 5/7.

Q. 299.

How does the sign of the cross express the mystery of the Incarnation and death of our Lord?

The sign of the cross expresses the mystery of the Incarnation by reminding us that the Son of God, having become man, suffered death on the Cross.

And through him to reconcile all things unto himself, making peace through the blood of his cross, both as to the things on earth, and the things that are in heaven. Col. 1/20.

Yet now he hath reconciled in the body of his flesh, through death. Col. 1/22.

Blotting out the handwriting of the decree that was against us, which was contrary to us. And he hath taken the same out of the way, fastening it to the cross. Col. 2/14.

Q. 300.

What other sacramental is in very frequent use?

Another sacramental in very frequent use is holy water.

And he shall take holy water in an earthen vessel. Num. 5/17.

He . . . shall dip all . . . in the living water, and he shall sprinkle the house seven times. Levit. 14/51.

Thou shalt sprinkle me with hyssop. Ps. 50/9.

Q. 301.

What is holy water?

Holy water is water blessed by the priest with solemn prayer to beg God's blessing on those who use it, and protection from the powers of darkness.

A water of aspersion. Num. 19/9.

For it is sanctified by the word of God and prayer. 1 Tim. 4/5.

He went out to the spring of the waters, and cast the salt into it, and said: Thus saith the Lord: I have healed these waters, and there shall be no more in them death or barrenness. 4 Kings 2/21.

He that went down first into the pond after the motion of the water, was made whole of whatsoever infirmity he lay under. John 5/4.

Q. 302.

Are there other sacramentals besides the sign of the cross and holy water?

Besides the sign of the cross and holy water there are many other sacramentals, such as blessed candles, ashes, palms, crucifixes, images, of the Blessed Virgin and of the saints, rosaries, and scapulars.

There was great mourning among the Jews, with fasting, wailing, and weeping, many using sackcloth and ashes for their bed. Esther 4/3.

Therefore I reprehend myself, and do penance in dust and ashes. Job 42/6.

He hath fed me with ashes. Lam. 3/16.

Sackcloth, and ashes. Dan. 9/3; Matt. 11/21; Luke 10/13.

Thou shalt make incense compounded by the work of the perfumer, . . . and most worthy of sanctification. Exod. 30/35.

This oil of unction shall be holy unto me throughout your generations. Exod. 30/31.

Command the children of Israel, that they bring unto

thee the finest and clearest oil of olives, to furnish the lamps continually. Levit. 24/2.

Others cut down boughs from the trees, and strewed them in the way. Mark 11/8; John 12/13.

In all thy oblations thou shalt offer salt. Levit. 2/13.

Bake twelve loaves. Levit. 24/5.

And he made in the oracle two cherubims of olive-tree. 3 Kings 6/23.

And all the walls of the temple round about he carved with divers figures and carvings. 3 Kings 6/29.

Moses therefore made a brazen serpent, and set it up for a sign: which when they that were bitten looked upon, they were healed. Num. 21/9.

Lesson Twenty-Eighth.

ON PRAYER.

Q. 303.

Is there any other means of obtaining God's grace than the Sacraments?

There is another means of obtaining God's grace, and it is prayer.

How much more will your Father from heaven give the good Spirit to them that ask him? Luke 11/13.

All things whatsoever you ask when you pray, believe that you shall receive: and they shall come unto you. Mark 11/24; Matt. 21/22; 1 John 3/22.

Whosoever shall call upon the name of the Lord, shall be saved. Rom. 10/13; Joel 2/32.

Not every one that saith to me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven. Matt. 7/21.

Ask, and it shall be given you. Matt. 7/7; Luke 11/9.

The holy angel of the Lord, Raphael, was sent to heal them both, whose prayers, at one time, were rehearsed in the sight of the Lord. Tob. 3/25.

Pray ye to the Lord to take away the frogs from me and from my people. Exod. 8/8.

And the priest shall pray for him, and for his sin, and it shall be forgiven him. Levit. 4/26.

Moses prayed to the Lord, and the fire was swallowed up. Num. 11/2.

My eyes also shall be open, and my ears attentive to the prayer of him that shall pray in this place. 2 Paral. 7/15.

And afterwards, all the people were called together, and they prayed all the night long within the church, desiring help of the God of Israel. Judith 6/21.

When I called upon him, the God of my justice heard me. Ps. 4/2.

The just cried, and the Lord heard them. Ps. 33/18.

The Lord is nigh unto all them that call upon him. Ps. 144/18.

Where there are two or three gathered together in my name, there am I in the midst of them. Matt. 18/20.

What wilt thou that I do to thee? But he said: Lord, that I may see. Luke 18/41; Mark 10/51.

Whatsoever you shall ask the Father in my name, that will I do. John 14/13 & 15/7 & 15/16 & 16/23.

Be nothing solicitous: but in every thing, by prayer and supplication. Philip. 4/6.

Pray one for another. James 5/16.

You shall pray to me, and I will hear you. Jer. 29/12.

I have heard thy prayer, and I have seen thy tears: and, behold, I have healed thee. 4 Kings 20/5.

Cornelius, thy prayer is heard, and thy alms are had in remembrance in the sight of God. Acts 10/31.

I have cried to thee, for thou, O God, hast heard me. Ps. 16/6; Isai. 65/24.

Q. 304.

What is prayer?

Prayer is the lifting up of our minds and hearts to God to adore Him, to thank Him for His benefits, to ask His forgiveness, and to beg of Him all the graces we need whether for soul or body.

And he was gone forth to meditate in the field. Gen. 24/63.

And it came to pass, as she multiplied prayers before the Lord, that Heli observed her mouth. Now Anna spoke in her heart. 1 Kings 1/12, 13.

I thought upon the days of old: and I had in my mind the eternal years. And I meditated in the night with my own heart. Ps. 76/6, 7.

I remember the works of the Lord: for I will be mindful of thy wonders from the beginning. And I will meditate on all thy works: and will be employed in thy inventions. Ps. 76/12, 13.

I will meditate on thy commandments: and I will consider thy ways. Ps. 118/15.

Ask, and it shall be given you. Matt. 7/7; Luke 11/9.

Thy prayers and thy alms have ascended for a memorial in the sight of God. Acts 10/4.

He that loveth God, shall obtain pardon for his sins by prayer. Eccus. 3/4.

He (the wise man) will open his mouth in prayer, and will make supplication for his sins. Eccus. 39/7.

In his prayer he will confess to the Lord. And he shall direct his counsel, and his knowledge, and in his secrets shall he meditate. Eccus. 39/9, 10.

In every thing, by prayer and supplication, with thanksgiving, let your petitions be made known to God. Philip. 4/6.

Magnify his name, and give glory to him with the voice of your lips. Eccus. 39/20.

Our conversation is in heaven. Philip. 3/20.

Q. 305.

Is prayer necessary to salvation?

Prayer is necessary to salvation, and without it no one having the use of reason can be saved.

He will do the will of them that fear him: and he will hear their prayer, and save them. Ps. 144/19.

Because I was silent, my bones grew old. Ps. 31/3.

Unless thy law had been my meditation, I had then, perhaps, perished in my abjection. Ps. 118/92.

Watch ye, and pray that you enter not into temptation. Mark 14/38; Luke 22/40; Matt. 26/41.

With desolation is all the land made desolate: because there is none that considereth in the heart. Jer. 12/11.

Prayer is good with fasting and alms, more than to lay up treasures of gold. Tob. 12/8.

Neglect not to pray. Eccus. 7/10.

And when he had dismissed them, he went up to the mountain to pray. Mark 6/46.

You contend and war, and you have not, because you ask not. James 4/2.

Behold he (Saul) prayeth. Acts 9/11

Q. 306.

At what particular times should we pray?

We should pray particularly on Sundays and holydays, every morning and night, in all dangers, temptations, and afflictions.

Bless God at all times: and desire of him to direct thy ways. Tob. 4/20.

Watch ye, therefore, praying at all times. Luke 21/36.

He spoke also a parable to them, that we ought always to pray. Luke 18/1.

All the days of thy life have God in thy mind. Tob. 4/6.

He passed the whole night in the prayer of God. Luke 6/12.

For to thee will I pray: O Lord, in the morning thou shalt hear my voice. Ps. 5/4.

My soul hath desired thee in the night: yea, and with my spirit within me, in the morning early, I will watch to thee. Isai. 26/9.

If I have remembered thee upon my bed, I will meditate on thee in the morning. Ps. 62/7.

In the night I have remembered thy name, O Lord. Ps. 118/55.

In my bed by night I sought him whom my soul loveth. Cant. 3/1.

Arise, give praise in the night, in the beginning of the watches: pour out thy heart like water before the face of the Lord. Lam. 2/19.

I rose at midnight to give praise to thee. Ps. 118/62.

And Samuel was grieved, and he cried unto the Lord all night. 1 Kings 15/11.

Evening and morning, and at noon, I will speak and declare: and he shall hear my voice. Ps. 54/18.

He (the wise man) will give his heart to resort early to the Lord that made him, and he will pray in the sight of the Most High. Eccus. 39/6.

Pray without ceasing. 1 Thess. 5/17.

O how have I loved thy law, O Lord! it is my meditation all the day. Ps. 118/97.

Call upon me in the day of trouble. Ps. 49/15.

In my affliction I called upon the Lord. Ps. 17/7.

In the day of my trouble I sought God. Ps. 76/3.

I cried out of my affliction to the Lord, and he heard me. Jonas 2/3; Ps. 119/1.

When my soul was in distress within me, I remembered the Lord: that my prayer may come to thee, unto thy holy temple. Jonas 2/8.

Now, when Daniel knew this, that is to say, that the law was made, he went into his house: and opening the windows in his upper chamber, towards Jerusalem, he knelt down three times a-day, and adored, and gave thanks before his God, as he had been accustomed to do before. Dan. 6/10.

Seven times a day I have given praise to thee, for the judgments of thy justice. Ps. 118/164.

In the nights lift up your hands to the holy places, and bless ye the Lord. Ps. 133/2.

O God, my God, to thee do I watch at break of day Ps. 62/2.

As we know not what to do, we can only turn our eyes to thee. 2 Paral. 20/12.

Their prayer shall be in the work of their craft, applying their soul, and searching in the law of the Most High. Eccus. 38/39.

Let nothing hinder thee from praying always. Eccus. 18/22.

In labour and painfulness, in much watchings, in hunger and thirst, in fastings often, in cold and nakedness. 2 Cor. 11/27.

Be instant in prayer; watching in it in thanksgiving. Col. 4/2.

Q. 307.

How should we pray?
We should pray:
1st. With attention.

Let my prayer be directed as incense in thy sight. Ps. 140/2.

I remember the days of old, I meditated on all thy works: I meditated upon the works of thy hands. Ps. 142/5.

Before prayer prepare thy soul: and be not as a man that tempteth God. Eccus. 18/23.

I have lifted up my soul to thee. Ps. 142/8.

Let us lift up our hearts with our hands to the Lord in the heavens. Lam. 3/41.

For we know not what we should pray for as we ought. Rom. 8/26.

This people honoureth me with their lips: but their heart is far from me. Matt. 15/8; Mark 7/6; Isai. 29/13.

2d. **With a sense of our own helplessness and dependence upon God.**

Two men went up into the temple to pray. Luke 18/10.

In a contrite and humble spirit, let us be accepted. Dan. 3/39.

The prayer of the humble and the meek hath always pleased thee. Judith 9/16.

The prayer of him that humbleth himself, shall pierce the clouds. Eccus. 35/21.

God resisteth the proud, and giveth grace to the humble. James 4/6; 1 Pet. 5/5. (See Prov. 3/34.)

3d. **With a great desire for the graces we beg of God.**

Do good, O Lord, to those that are good, and to the upright of heart. Ps. 124/4.

I cried to thee, O Lord; I said: Thou art my hope. Ps. 141/6.

I went to the Lord, and besought him, and said with my whole heart. Wis. 8/21.

And many rebuked him, that he might hold his peace; but he cried a great deal the more: Son of David, have mercy on me. Mark 10/48.

4th. **With trust in God's goodness.**

All things whatsoever you shall ask in prayer, believing, you shall receive. Matt. 21/22; Mark 11/24.

Commit thy way to the Lord, and trust in him. Ps. 36/5.

There is no confusion to them that trust in thee. Dan. 3/40.

I do believe Lord; help my unbelief. Mark 9/23.

Help us, O Lord our God: for with confidence in thee, and in thy name, we are come against this multitude. 2 Paral. 14/11.

And this is the confidence which we have towards him: that whatsoever we shall ask according to his will, he heareth us. 1 John 5/14.

5th. **With perseverance.**

Know ye that the Lord will hear your prayers, if you continue with perseverance in fastings and prayers in the sight of the Lord. Judith 4/11.

And he spoke also a parable to them, that we ought always to pray, and not to faint. Luke 18/1.

Will not God avenge his elect, who cry to him day and night? Luke 18/17.

Yet if he shall continue knocking, I say to you, although he will not rise and give him, because he is his friend: yet because of his importunity he will rise, and give him as many as he needeth. Luke 11/8.

Pray to thy Father in secret. Matt. 6/6.

When you shall stand to pray: forgive, if you have ought against any man. Mark 11/25.

And when you are praying, speak not much, as the heathens. Matt. 6/7.

Repeat not the word in thy prayer. Eccus. 7/15.

You ask, and receive not: because you ask amiss. James 4/3.

For we know not what we should pray for as we ought. Rom. 8/26.

Lord, teach us to pray. Luke 11/1.

Q. 308.

Which are the prayers most recommended to us?

The prayers most recommended to us are the Lord's Prayer, the Hail Mary, the Apostles' Creed, the Confiteor, and the Acts of Faith, Hope, Love, and Contrition.

THE LORD'S PRAYER.

Our Father who art in heaven, hallowed be thy name. Thy kingdom come. Thy will be done on earth as it is in heaven. Give us this day our supersubstantial bread. And forgive us our debts, as we also forgive our debtors. And lead us not into temptation. But deliver us from evil. Amen. Matt. 6/9-13.

Father, hallowed be thy name. . . . Thy kingdom

come. Give us this day our daily bread. And forgive us our sins, for we also forgive every one that is indebted to us. And lead us not into temptation. Luke 11/2-4.

Our Father, who art in heaven.

Thou shalt call me father. Jer. 3/19.

I will be a Father to you. 2 Cor. 6/18.

To thee have I lifted up my eyes, who dwellest in heaven. Ps. 122/1.

O Lord, father, and God of my life. Eccus. 23/4.

One is your father, who is in heaven. Matt. 23/9.

O Lord, thou art our father. Isai. 64/8.

Have we not all one father? hath not one God created us? Mal. 2/10.

You have received the spirit of adoption of sons, whereby we cry: Abba, (Father.) Rom. 8/15.

Blessed art thou, O Lord, the God of Israel, our father, from eternity to eternity. 1 Paral. 29/10.

Heaven is my throne. Isai. 66/1.

Do not I fill heaven and earth? Jer. 23/24.

If I ascend into heaven, thou art there. Ps. 138/8.

I ascend to my Father and to your Father. John 20/17.

He shall cry out to me: Thou art my father. Ps. 88/27.

My Father who is in heaven. Matt. 7/21.

Hallowed be Thy name. (See 346.)

I will praise thee, O Lord, my God, with my whole heart, and I will glorify thy name for ever. Ps. 85/12.

For there is no other name under heaven given to men whereby we must be saved. Acts 4/12.

Let all thy works, O Lord, praise thee: and thy saints bless thee. Ps. 144/10.

Young men and maidens: let the old, with the younger, praise the name of the Lord. Ps. 148/12.

Praise ye the name of the Lord: . . . Praise ye the Lord, for the Lord is good: sing ye to his name. Ps. 134/1, 3.

I will extol thee, O God, my king: and I will bless thy name for ever. Ps. 144/1.

The name of the Lord is a strong tower: the just runneth to it, and shall be exalted. Prov. 18/10.

O Lord, our Lord, how admirable is thy name in all the earth! Ps. 8/10.

Praise ye the Lord and call upon his name: make his works known among the people: remember that his name is high. Isai. 12/4.

Bless the Lord, O my soul: and let all that is within me bless his holy name. Ps. 102/1.

Now, therefore, our God, we give thanks to thee, and we praise thy glorious name. 1 Paral. 29/13.

Blessed be the name of the Lord. Job 1/21.

Let all flesh bless his holy name for ever. Ps. 144/21.

In the name of Jesus every knee should bow. Philip. 2/10.

His name shall be called, Wonderful. Isai. 9/6.

Let my heart rejoice, that it may fear thy name. Ps. 85/11.

Bring to the Lord glory to his name. Ps. 28/2.

Blessed be the name of the Lord, from henceforth now and for ever. From the rising of the sun, unto the going down of the same, the name of the Lord is worthy of praise. Ps. 112/2, 3. (See Mal. 1/11.)

Blessed is the holy name of thy glory: and worthy to be praised and exalted above all in all ages. Dan. 3/52.

Who shall not fear thee, O Lord, and magnify thy name? For thou only art holy. Apoc. 15/4.

Praise ye his holy name. 1 Paral. 16/10.

Glory in his holy name. Ps. 104/3.

In his holy name we have trusted. Ps. 32/21.

Holy and terrible is his name. Ps. 110/9.

Holy is his name. Luke 1/49.

I will be jealous for my holy name. Ezech. 39/25.

Let them praise his name in choir. Ps. 149/3.

Therefore will I give glory to thee, O Lord, among the nations, and I will sing a psalm to thy name. Ps. 17/50; 2 Kings 22/50; Rom. 15/9.

Thy kingdom come.

They shall speak of the glory of thy kingdom. Ps. 144/11.

His kingdom shall rule over all. Ps. 102/19.

Fear not, little flock, for it hath pleased your Father to give you a kingdom. Luke 12/32.

There shall come from the east, and the west, and the north, and the south; and shall sit down in the kingdom of God. Luke 13/29.

The kingdom of heaven is at hand. Matt. 3/2.

I must preach the kingdom of God. Luke 4/43.

The kingdom of God is within you. Luke 17/21.

The Gentiles shall walk in thy light, and kings in the brightness of thy rising. Isai. 60/3.

Thy will be done on earth as it is in heaven.

Thy will be done. Matt. 26/42.

The will of the Lord be done. Acts 21/14.

As it hath pleased the Lord, so is it done. Job 1/21.

Nevertheless, not as I will, but as thou wilt. Matt. 26/39.

Not my will, but thine be done. Luke 22/42.

Bless the Lord, all ye his hosts: you ministers of his that do his will. Ps. 102/21.

As it shall be the will of God in heaven, so be it done. 1 Mach. 3/60.

I came down from heaven, not to do my own will, but the will of him that sent me. John 6/38.

I do always the things that please him. John 8/29.

For who resisteth his will? Rom. 9/19.

He is wise in heart, and mighty in strength: who hath resisted him, and hath had peace? Job 9/4.

For this is the will of God, your sanctification. 1 Thess. 4/3.

Lord, what wilt thou have me to do? Acts 9/6.

My counsel shall stand, and all my will shall be done. Isai. 46/10.

He that doth the will of my Father who is in heaven, he shall enter into the kingdom of heaven. Matt. 7/21.

Become not unwise, but understanding what is the will of God. Ephes. 5/17.

That you may prove what is the good, and the acceptable, and the perfect will of God. Rom. 12/2.

For whosoever shall do the will of my Father, that is in heaven, he is my brother, and sister, and mother. Matt. 12/50.

Give us this day our daily bread.

Whether you eat or drink, . . . do all to the glory of God. 1 Cor. 10/31.

In the sweat of thy face shalt thou eat bread. Gen. 3/19.

Having food, and wherewith to be covered, with these we are content. 1 Tim. 6/8.

Give me only the necessaries of life. Prov. 30/8.
Thou givest them meat in due season. Ps. 144/15.
Come, eat my bread. Prov. 9/5.
I am the bread of life. John 6/35 & 6/48.
I am the living bread. John 6/41 & 6/51.
To him that overcometh, I will give the hidden manna. Apoc. 2/17.
Who provideth food for the raven, when her young ones cry. Job 38/41; Ps. 146/9.
Be not solicitous for your life, what you shall eat. Luke 12/22; Matt. 6/25.
I will rain bread from heaven for you: let the people go forth, and gather what is sufficient for every day. Exod. 16/4.
Not in bread alone doth man live, but in every word that proceedeth from the mouth of God. Matt. 4/4; Luke 4/4; Deut. 8/3.
Labour not for the meat which perisheth, but for that which endureth unto life everlasting, which the Son of Man will give you. John 6/27.

And forgive us our trespasses as we forgive those who trespass against us. (See 12, Art. 10.)

Forgive thy neighbour if he hath hurt thee: and then shall thy sins be forgiven to thee when thou prayest. Eccus. 28/2.
Man to man reserveth anger, and doth he seek remedy of God? He hath no mercy on a man like himself, and doth he entreat for his own sins? Eccus. 28/3, 4.
For if you will forgive men their offences, your heavenly Father will forgive you also your offences. But if you will not forgive men, neither will your Father forgive you your offences. Matt. 6/14, 15.
Shouldst not thou then have had compassion also on thy fellow-servant, even as I had compassion on thee? Matt. 18/33.
And when you shall stand to pray: forgive, if you have ought against any man; that your Father also, who is in heaven, may forgive you your sins. Mark 11/25.
But if you will not forgive, neither will your Father that is in heaven forgive you your sins. Mark 11/26.
Forgive me all my sins. Ps. 24/18.

Forgive, and you shall be forgiven. Luke 6/37.

And if he sin against thee seven times in a day, and seven times in a day be converted unto thee, saying: I repent: forgive him. Luke 17/4.

Lord, lay not this sin to their charge. Acts 7/59.

And be ye kind one to another, merciful, forgiving one another, even as God hath forgiven you in Christ. Ephes. 4/32.

Bearing with one another, and forgiving one another, if any have a complaint against another. Even as the Lord hath forgiven you, so you also. Col. 3/13.

And lead us not into temptation. (See 207.)

Son, when thou comest to the service of God, stand in justice and in fear, and prepare thy soul for temptation. Eccus. 2/1.

Let no man, when he is tempted, say that he is tempted by God: for God is not a tempter of evils, and he tempteth no man. James 1/13.

The Lord knoweth how to deliver the godly from temptation. 2 Pet. 2/9.

Watch ye, and pray, that ye enter not into temptation. Matt. 26/41.

God is faithful, who will not suffer you to be tempted above that which you are able. 1 Cor. 10/13.

The Lord your God trieth you, that it may appear whether you love him with all your heart, and with all your soul, or not. Deut. 13/3.

Because thou wast acceptable to God, it was necessary that temptation should prove thee. Tob. 12/13.

The life of man upon earth is as a warfare. Job 7/1.

Blessed is the man that endureth temptation: for when he hath been proved, he shall receive the crown of life. James 1/12.

He that thinketh himself to stand, let him take heed lest he fall. 1 Cor. 10/12.

The Lord trieth the just and the wicked. Ps. 10/6.

Resist the devil, and he will fly from you. James 4/7.

He that loveth danger shall perish in it. Eccus. 3/27.

Your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, goeth about, seeking whom he may devour. 1 Pet. 5/8.

The God of all grace, . . . after you have suffered a

little, will himself perfect you, and confirm you, and establish you. 1 Pet. 5/10.

Let no temptation take hold on you, but such as is human. 1 Cor. 10/13.

Every man is tempted by his own concupiscence, being drawn away and allured. James 1/14.

But deliver us from evil.

Deliver me in thy justice . . . make haste to deliver me. Ps. 30/2, 3.

Thou wilt bring me out of this snare, which they have hidden for me: for thou art my protector. Ps. 30/5.

The Lord will be at thy side, and will keep thy foot that thou be not taken. Prov. 3/26.

But as the same Lord liveth, his angel hath been my keeper, both going hence, and abiding there, and returning from thence hither: and the Lord hath not suffered me, his handmaid, to be defiled. Judith 13/20.

He delivered us from all evils, and hath wrought great signs and wonders among the nations. Esther 10/9.

No evils shall happen to him that feareth the Lord, but in temptation God will keep him, and deliver him from evils. Eccus. 33/1.

For, behold, our God, whom we worship, is able to save us from the furnace of burning fire, and to deliver us out of thy hands, O king. Dan. 3/17.

Deliver us for thy own sake. Baruch 2/14.

Remove from me the way of iniquity. Ps. 118/29.

The Lord keepeth thee from all evil: may the Lord keep thy soul. Ps. 120/7.

Let no iniquity have dominion over me. Ps. 118/133.

Our soul hath been delivered, as a sparrow out of the snare of the fowlers. The snare is broken, and we are delivered. Our help is in the name of the Lord. Ps. 123/7, 8.

Deliver me, and rescue me out of the hand of strange children. Ps. 143/11.

Thou art he who deliverest from all evil. Wis. 16/8.

But God is faithful, who will strengthen and keep you from evil. 2 Thess. 3/3.

Call upon me in the day of trouble: I will deliver thee, and thou shalt glorify me. Ps. 49/15.

Because thou hast kept the word of my patience, I will also keep thee from the hour of temptation. Apoc. 3/10.

Many are the afflictions of the just: but out of them all will the Lord deliver them. Ps. 33/20, 21.

I can do all things in him who strengtheneth me. Philip. 4/13.

HAIL MARY.

Hail full of grace, the Lord is with thee; Blessed art thou among women. Luke 1/28.

Fear not, Mary, for thou hast found grace with God. Luke 1/30.

In me is all grace of the way, and of the truth; in me is all hope of life and of virtue. Eccus. 24/25.

Behold, thou shalt conceive in thy womb, and shalt bring forth a son; and thou shalt call his name Jesus. Luke 1/31.

The Holy Ghost shall come upon thee, and the power of the most High shall overshadow thee. Luke 1/35.

Blessed art thou, O daughter, by the Lord, the most high God, above all women upon the earth. Judith 13/23.

Blessed art thou, by thy God, in every tabernacle of Jacob, for, in every nation which shall hear thy name, the God of Israel shall be magnified on occasion of thee. Judith 13/31.

In the midst of her own people she shall be exalted, and shall be admired in the holy assembly. Eccus. 24/3.

And in the multitude of the elect she shall have praise, and among the blessed she shall be blessed. Eccus. 24/4.

Thou art the glory of Jerusalem, thou art the joy of Israel, thou art the honour of our people. Judith 15/10.

I am the flower of the field, and the lily of the valleys. Cant. 2/1.

The queen stood on thy right hand, in gilded clothing; surrounded with variety. Ps. 44/10.

Thou art all fair, O my love, and there is not a spot in thee. Cant. 4/7.

The daughters saw her, and declared her most blessed. Cant. 6/8.

From henceforth, all generations shall call me blessed. Luke 1/48.

My memory is unto everlasting generations. Eccus. 24/28.

They shall remember thy name throughout all generations. Ps. 44/18.

Blessed art thou among women, and blessed is the fruit of thy womb. Luke 1/42.

Blessed is the womb that bore thee, and the paps that gave thee suck. Luke 11/27.

He that made me, rested in my tabernacle. Eccus. 24/12.

Whence is this to me, that the mother of my Lord should come to me? Luke 1/43.

Behold thy mother. John 19/27.

APOSTLES' CREED.

(See 12.)

CONFITEOR.

Father, I have sinned against heaven, and before thee. Luke 15/18.

I confess the sins of the children of Israel, by which they have sinned against thee. 2 Esdras 1/6.

And now make confession to the Lord, the God of your fathers, and do his pleasure. 1 Esdras 10/11.

We have sinned, we have committed iniquity, we have done wickedly, and have revolted: and we have gone aside from thy commandments, and thy judgments. Dan. 9/5.

Pray you for me to the Lord. Acts 8/24.

And pray ye for us to the Lord our God: for we have sinned against the Lord our God. Baruch 1/13.

I beseech you, therefore, brethren, through our Lord Jesus Christ, and by the charity of the Holy Ghost, that you help me in your prayers for me to God. Rom. 15/30.

ACT OF FAITH.

I do believe Lord; help my unbelief. Mark 9/23.

I believe, Lord. John 9/38.

We have believed and have known that thou art Christ, the Son of God. John 6/70.

Yea, Lord, I have believed that thou art Christ, the Son of the living God, who art come into this world. John 11/27.

ACT OF HOPE.

In thee, O Lord, have I hoped, let me never be confounded. Ps. 30/2.

My soul hath relied on his word: my soul hath hoped in the Lord. Ps. 129/4, 5.

Because with the Lord there is mercy: and with him plentiful redemption. Ps. 129/7.

My soul trusteth in thee. And in the shadow of thy wings will I hope, until iniquity pass away. Ps. 56/2.

For we know, if our earthly house of this habitation be dissolved, that we have a building of God, a house not made with hands, eternal in heaven. 2 Cor. 5/1.

ACT OF LOVE.

Yea, Lord, thou knowest that I love thee. . . . Lord, thou knowest all things: thou knowest that I love thee. John 21/16, 17.

ACT OF CONTRITION.

My God, I am confounded and ashamed to lift up my face to thee: for our iniquities are multiplied over our heads, and our sins are grown up even unto heaven. 1 Esdras 9/6.

Have mercy on me, O God, according to thy great mercy. And according to the multitude of thy tender mercies, blot out my iniquity. Ps. 50/1.

For I will declare my iniquity: and I will think for my sin. Ps. 37/19.

I will take heed to my ways. Ps. 38/2.

So shall I always keep thy law, for ever and ever. Ps. 118/44.

Q. 309.

Are prayers said with distractions of any avail?
Prayers said with wilful distractions are of no avail.

Lord, teach us to pray. Luke 11/1.

Before prayer prepare thy soul: and be not as a man that tempteth God. Eccus. 18/23.

This people honoureth me with their lips: but their heart is far from me. Matt. 15/8; Isai. 29/13; Mark 7/6.

Lesson Twenty-Ninth.

ON THE COMMANDMENTS OF GOD.

Q. 310.

Is it enough to belong to God's Church in order to be saved?

It is not enough to belong to the Church in order to be saved, but we must also keep the Commandments of God and of the Church.

If thou wilt enter into life, keep the commandments. Matt. 19/17.

If thou wilt hear the voice of the Lord thy God, and do what is right before him, and obey his commandments, and keep all his precepts, none of the evils that I laid upon Egypt, will I bring upon thee. Exod. 15/26.

Keep my laws and my judgments, which if a man do, he shall live in them. Levit. 18/5 & 18/26; Deut. 4/1.

Keep my commandments, and thou shalt live. Prov. 7/2.

You shall not add to the word that I speak to you, neither shall you take away from it: keep the commandments of the Lord your God. Deut. 4/2.

Follow the Lord your God, and fear him, and keep his commandments, and hear his voice: him you shall serve, and to him you shall cleave. Deut. 13/4.

Cursed be he that abideth not in the words of this law, and fulfilleth them not in work. Deut. 27/26.

They are cursed who decline from thy commandments. Ps. 118/21.

Thou hast commanded thy commandments to be kept most diligently. Ps. 118/4.

He that believeth God, taketh heed to the commandments. Eccus. 32/28.

If thou wilt keep the commandments, and perform acceptable fidelity for ever, they shall preserve thee. Eccus. 15/16.

Let thy thoughts be upon the precepts of God, and meditate continually on his commandments. Eccus. 6/37.

Place thy treasure in the commandments of the Most High, and it shall bring thee more profit than gold. Eccus. 29/14.

My son, forget not my law, and let thy heart keep my commandments. Prov. 3/1 & 7/1-3.

For many walk, of whom I have told you often, (and now tell you weeping,) that they are enemies of the cross of Christ. Philip. 3/18.

Q. 311.

Which are the Commandments that contain the whole law of God?

The Commandments which contain the whole law of God are these two: 1st. **Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with thy whole heart, with thy whole soul, with thy whole strength, and with thy whole mind.** (See Matt. 22/37; Deut. 6/5; Mark 12/30.) 2d. **Thou shalt love thy neighbor as thyself.** (See Matt. 22/39; Mark 12/31; Rom. 13/9; Gal. 5/14; James 2/8; Levit. 19/18.)

And now, Israel, what doth the Lord thy God require of thee, but that thou fear the Lord thy God, and walk in his ways, and love him, and serve the Lord thy God, with all thy heart, and with all thy soul? Deut. 10/12 & 30/6; Josue 22/5 & 23/6.

My son, give me thy heart. Prov. 23/26.

The son honoureth the father, and the servant his master: if . . . I be a father, where is my honour? Mal. 1/6.

Thou shalt not molest a stranger, nor afflict him: for yourselves also were strangers in the land of Egypt. Exod. 22/21.

You shall love him as yourselves. Levit. 19/34.

Love thy neighbour, and be joined to him with fidelity. Eccus. 27/18.

He that despiseth his neighbour, sinneth. Prov. 14/21.

Bear ye one another's burdens. Gal. 6/2.

All things, therefore, whatsoever you would that men should do to you, do you also to them. For this is the law and the prophets. Matt. 7/12; Tob. 4/16; Luke 6/31.

Q. 312.

Why do these two Commandments of the love of God and of our neighbor contain the whole law of God?

These two Commandments of the love of God and of our neighbor contain the whole law of God because all the other Commandments are given either to help us to keep these two, or to direct us how to shun what is opposed to them.

On these two commandments dependeth the whole law and the prophets. Matt. 22/40.

Q. 313.

Which are the Commandments of God?

The Commandments of God are these ten:

1. I AM THE LORD THY GOD, WHO BROUGHT THEE OUT OF THE LAND OF EGYPT (Ps. 80/11), OUT OF THE HOUSE OF BONDAGE. THOU SHALT NOT HAVE STRANGE GODS BEFORE ME. (Ps. 80/10.) THOU SHALT NOT MAKE TO THYSELF A GRAVEN THING, NOR THE LIKENESS OF ANY THING THAT IS IN HEAVEN ABOVE, OR IN THE EARTH BENEATH, NOR OF THOSE THINGS THAT ARE IN THE WATERS UNDER THE EARTH. THOU SHALT NOT ADORE THEM, NOR SERVE THEM. (Deut. 5/6-9; Exod. 20/2-5.)

2. THOU SHALT NOT TAKE THE NAME OF THE LORD THY GOD IN VAIN. (Deut. 5/11; Exod. 20/7.)

3. REMEMBER THOU KEEP HOLY THE SABBATH DAY. (Deut. 5/12; Exod. 20/8.)

4. HONOR THY FATHER AND THY MOTHER. (Deut. 5/16; Exod. 20/12.)

5. THOU SHALT NOT KILL. (Deut. 5/17; Exod. 20/13.)

6. THOU SHALT NOT COMMIT ADULTERY. (Deut. 5/18; Exod. 20/14; Rom. 13/9.)

7. THOU SHALT NOT STEAL. (Deut. 5/19; Exod. 20/15; Levit. 19/11; Rom. 13/9.)

8. THOU SHALT NOT BEAR FALSE WITNESS AGAINST THY NEIGHBOR. (Deut. 5/20; Levit. 19/13; Exod. 20/16; Rom. 13/9.)

9. THOU SHALT NOT COVET THY NEIGHBOR'S WIFE. (Deut. 5/21; Exod. 20/17; Rom. 13/9.)

10. THOU SHALT NOT COVET THY NEIGHBOR'S GOODS. (Deut. 5/21; Exod. 20/17.)

This is the book of the commandments of God, and the law, that is for ever: all they that keep it, shall come to life: but they that have forsaken it, to death. Baruch 4/1.

Let not the book of this law depart from thy mouth: but thou shalt meditate on it day and night, that thou mayst observe and do all things that are written in it Josue 1/8.

And these words which I command thee this day, shall be in thy heart. And thou shalt tell them to thy children, and thou shalt meditate upon them, sitting in thy house, and walking on thy journey, sleeping and rising. Deut. 6/6, 7.

Lay up these my words in your hearts and minds. . . . Teach your children that they meditate on them. Deut. 11/18, 19.

And the people said to Josue: We will serve the Lord our God, and we will be obedient to his commandments. Josue 24/24.

There is nothing sweeter than to have regard to the commandments of the Lord. Eccus. 23/37.

Blessed are they who hear the word of God, and keep it. Luke 11/28.

Be ye doers of the word, and not hearers only. James 1/22.

Whosoever shall keep the whole law, but offend in one point, is become guilty of all. James 2/10. (See Matt. 5/19.)

It is a wholesome sacrifice to take heed to the commandments, and to depart from all iniquity. Eccus. 35/2.

He that keepeth the commandment, shall find no evil. Eccles. 8/5.

Let thy thoughts be upon the precepts of God, and meditate continually on his commandments: and he will give thee a heart, and the desire of wisdom shall be given to thee. Eccus. 6/37.

Doth the Lord desire holocausts and victims, and not rather that the voice of the Lord should be obeyed? For obedience is better than sacrifices. 1 Kings 15/22.

May he incline our hearts to himself, that we may walk in all of his ways, and keep his commandments, and his ceremonies, and all his judgments, which he commanded our fathers. 3 Kings 8/58.

Keep thyself, therefore, and thy soul carefully. Forget not the words that thy eyes have seen, and let them not

go out of thy heart all the days of thy life. Thou shalt teach them to thy sons and to thy grandsons. Deut. 4/9 & 6/3 & 6/17 & 7/11 & 10/13 & 27/1.

Q. 314.

Who gave the Ten Commandments?

God Himself gave the Ten Commandments to Moses on Mount Sinai, and Christ our Lord confirmed them.

And the Lord, when he had ended these words in mount Sinai, gave to Moses two stone-tables of testimony, written with the finger of God. Exod. 31/18.

The Lord spoke to you from the midst of the fire. You heard the voice of his words, but you saw not any form at all. And he shewed you his covenant, which he commanded you to do, and the ten words that he wrote in two tables of stone. Deut. 4/12, 13.

He spoke to us face to face in the mount, out of the midst of fire. Deut. 5/4.

These words the Lord spoke to all the multitude of you in the mountain, out of the midst of the fire and the cloud, and the darkness, with a loud voice, adding nothing more: and he wrote them in two tables of stone, which he delivered unto me. Deut. 5/22.

And the Lord gave me two tables of stone written with the finger of God, and containing all the words that he spoke to you in the mount, from the midst of the fire, when the people were assembled together. Deut. 9/10.

The Lord said to me: Hew thee two tables of stone like the former, . . . and I will write on the tables the words that were in them, which thou brokest before, and thou shalt put them in the ark. Deut. 10/1, 2; Exod. 34/1.

They have Moses and the prophets; let them hear them. Luke 16/29.

Let us all hear together the conclusion of the discourse. Fear God, and keep his commandments: for this is all man. Eccles. 12/13.

Lesson Thirtieth.

ON THE FIRST COMMANDMENT.

Q. 315.

What is the first Commandment?

The first Commandment is: I am the Lord thy God: thou shalt not have strange gods before me. (See Exod. 20/2, 3; Deut. 5/6, 7.)

Adore not any strange god. Exod. 34/14.

You shall not make to yourselves any idol or graven thing, neither shall you erect pillars nor set up a remarkable stone in your land, to adore it. Levit. 26/1.

You shall not fear strange gods, nor shall you adore them, nor worship them, nor sacrifice to them. 4 Kings 17/35.

There shall be no new god in thee: neither shalt thou adore a strange god. Ps. 80/10.

I am the Lord thy God, from the land of Egypt: and thou shalt know no God but me. Osee 13/4.

All men are vain, in whom there is not the knowledge of God: and who, by these good things that are seen, could not understand him that is, neither by attending to the works have acknowledged who was the workman. Wis. 13/1.

Q. 316.

How does the first Commandment help us to keep the great Commandment of the love of God?

The first Commandment helps us to keep the great Commandment of the love of God because it commands us to adore God alone.

He that sacrificeth to gods, shall be put to death, save only to the Lord. Exod. 22/20.

Thou shalt fear the Lord thy God, and serve him only. Deut. 10/20 & 6/13; Matt. 4/10; Luke 4/8.

But if thou forget the Lord thy God, and follow strange gods, and serve and adore them: behold, now, I foretel thee, that thou shalt utterly perish. Deut. 8/19.

Beware lest thou offer thy holocausts in every place that thou shalt see. Deut. 12/13.

But the Lord your God, who brought you out of the land of Egypt, with great power, and a stretched out arm, him shall you fear, and him shall you adore, and to him shall you sacrifice. 4 Kings 17/36.

For you have provoked him who made you, . . . offering sacrifice to devils, and not to God. Baruch 4/7.

I will not give my glory to another nor my praise to graven things. Isai. 42/8 & 48/11

Q. 317.

How do we adore God?

We adore God by faith, hope, and charity, by prayer and sacrifice.

(See 107-109, 264, 304.)

But let us, who are of the day, be sober, having on the breastplate of faith and charity, and for a helmet, the hope of salvation. 1 Thess. 5/8.

Whom having not seen, you love: in whom also now, though you see him not, you believe: and believing, shall rejoice with joy unspeakable and glorified. 1 Pet. 1/8.

(Abram) built there an altar to the Lord. Gen. 13/18.

Melchisedech . . . bringing forth bread and wine, for he was the priest of the most high God. Gen. 14/18.

We will go three days' journey into the wilderness, to sacrifice unto the Lord our God. Exod. 3/18.

Moses built an altar. Exod. 17/15.

Josue built an altar to the Lord. Josue 8/30.

David built there an altar to the Lord. 2 Kings 24/25.

Thou shalt make also an altar of setim-wood. Exod. 27/1.

And when thou offerest it to the Lord, thou shalt deliver it to the hands of the priest. Levit. 2/8.

You shall not eat either bread, or parched corn, or frumenty of the harvest, until the day that you shall offer thereof to your God. Levit. 23/14.

Offer ye my oblation and my bread, and burnt-sacrifice . . . in their due seasons. Num. 28/2.

And Samuel said: Doth the Lord desire holocausts and victims, and not rather that the voice of the Lord should be obeyed? For obedience is better than sacrifices. 1 Kings 15/22. (See Osee 6/6; Matt. 9/13 & 12/7.)

David danced . . . before the Lord. 2 Kings 6/14.

Out of all the tribes of Israel, whosoever gave their heart to seek the Lord, the God of Israel, came into Jerusalem to sacrifice their victims. 2 Paral. 11/16.

Offer to God the sacrifice of praise: and pay thy vows to the most High. Ps. 49/14.

A sacrifice to God is an afflicted spirit: a contrite and humbled heart, O God, thou wilt not despise. Ps. 50/19.

I will come into thy house; I will worship towards thy holy temple in thy fear. Ps. 5/8.

Forasmuch as this people draw near me with their mouth, and with their lips glorify me, but their heart is far from me. Isai. 29/13; Matt. 15/8; Mark 7/6.

God is a spirit, and they that adore him, must adore him in spirit and in truth. John 4/24.

Whosoever believeth in him, shall not be confounded. Rom. 10/11; Isai. 28/16.

Thou standest by faith. Rom. 11/20.

I will freely sacrifice to thee, and I will give praise, O God, to thy name: because it is good. Ps. 53/8.

And they kept the feast of tabernacles, as it is written, and offered the holocaust every day orderly, according to the commandment, the duty of the day in its day. 1 Esdras 3/4.

Let us offer the sacrifice of praise always to God, that is to say, the fruit of lips confessing to his name. Heb. 13/15.

Present your bodies a living sacrifice, holy, pleasing unto God, your reasonable service. Rom. 12/1.

Q. 318.

How may the first Commandment be broken?

The first Commandment may be broken by giving to a creature the honor which belongs to God alone; by false worship; and by attributing to a creature a perfection which belongs to God alone.

These are thy gods, O Israel. Exod. 32/4.

And they shall no more sacrifice their victims to devils. Levit. 17/7.

Turn ye not to idols, nor make to yourselves molten gods. Levit. 19/4.

They followed strange gods, and the gods of the people that dwelt round about them. Judges 2/12 & 2/19.

He made two golden calves, and said to them: Go ye up no more to Jerusalem. 3 Kings 12/28.

And they worshipped abominations, concerning which the Lord had commanded them that they should not do this thing. 4 Kings 17/12.

And consecrated their sons, and their daughters, through fire: and gave themselves to divinations, and soothsayings: and they delivered themselves up to do evil before the Lord. 4 Kings 17/17.

(Manasses) set up altars to Baal, and made groves, . . . and he adored all the host of heaven. 4 Kings 21/3.

The worship of abominable idols is the cause, and the beginning and end of all evil. Wis. 14/27.

Who changed the truth of God into a lie: and worshipped and served the creature rather than the Creator. Rom. 1/25. (See Deut. 4/19.)

Q. 319.

Do those who make use of spells and charms, or who believe in dreams, in mediums, spiritists, fortune-tellers, and the like, sin against the first Commandment?

Those who make use of spells and charms, or who believe in dreams, in mediums, spiritists, fortune-tellers, and the like, sin against the first Commandment, because they attribute to creatures perfections which belong to God alone.

Wizards thou shalt not suffer to live. Exod. 22/18.

Go not aside after wizards, neither ask any thing of soothsayers, to be defiled by them. Levit. 19/31.

Learn not according to the ways of the Gentiles: and be not afraid of the signs of heaven, which the heathens fear. Jer. 10/2.

Neither let there be found among you any one that shall expiate his son or daughter, making them to pass through the fire: or that consulteth soothsayers, or observeth dreams and omens; neither let there be any wizard, nor charmer, nor any one that consulteth pythonic spirits, or

fortune-tellers, or that seeketh the truth from the dead. Deut. 18/10, 11.

What truth can come from that which is false? Eccus. 34/4.

Because he is ignorant of things past, and things to come he cannot know by any messenger. Ecces. 8/7.

A man, or woman, in whom there is a pythonical or divining spirit, dying let them die. Levit. 20/27.

You shall not divine nor observe dreams. Levit. 19/26.

Where there are many dreams, there are many vanities. Ecces. 5/6.

Dreams follow many cares. Ecces. 5/2.

For dreams have deceived many, and they have failed that put their trust in them. Eccus. 34/7.

And the magicians said to Pharao: This is the finger of God. Exod. 8/19.

Saul said to his servants: Seek me a woman that hath a divining spirit. 1 Kings 28/7. (See 1 Paral. 10/13.)

The man that giveth heed to lying visions, is like to him that catcheth at a shadow, and followeth after the wind. Eccus. 34/2.

The soul that shall go aside after magicians, and soothsayers, . . . I will set my face against that soul, and destroy it out of the midst of its people. Levit. 20/6.

The king of Babylon stood in the highway, at the head of two ways, seeking divination, and shuffling arrows: he inquired of the idols, and consulted entrails. Ezech 21/21.

Many of them who had followed curious arts, brought together their books, and burnt them before all. Acts 19/19.

Q. 320.

Are sins against faith, hope, and charity also sins against the first Commandment?

Sins against faith, hope, and charity are also sins against the first Commandment.

When that lord answered the man of God, and said: Although the Lord should make flood-gates in heaven, could this come to pass which thou sayest? And he said to him: Thou shalt see it with thy eyes, and shalt not eat thereof. 4 Kings 7/19.

And to whom did he swear that they should not enter into his rest; but to them that were incredulous? And we see that they could not enter in, because of unbelief. Heb. 3/18, 19.

Watch ye, stand fast in the faith, do manfully, and be strengthened. 1 Cor. 16/13.

They that trust in him, shall understand the truth: and they that are faithful in love, shall rest in him: for grace and peace are to his elect. Wis. 3/9.

For we are saved by hope. Rom. 8/24.

Let all your things be done in charity. 1 Cor. 16/14.

I know whom I have believed. 2 Tim. 1/12.

If you believe not that I am he, you shall die in your sin. John 8/24.

And this is his commandment, that we should believe in the name of his Son Jesus Christ: and love one another, as he hath given commandment unto us. 1 John 3/23.

Every spirit that dissolveth Jesus, is not of God. 1 John 4/3.

Whosoever revolteth, and continueth not in the doctrine of Christ, hath not God. 2 John 1/9.

They that go far from thee shall perish: thou hast destroyed all them that are disloyal to thee. Ps. 72/27.

Q. 321.

How does a person sin against faith?

A person sins against faith, 1st, by not trying to know what God has taught; 2d, by refusing to believe all that God has taught; 3d, by neglecting to profess his belief in what God has taught.

(See 322-326.)

The queen of the South shall rise in judgment with the men of this generation, and shall condemn them: because she came from the ends of the earth to hear the wisdom of Solomon; and behold more than Solomon here. Luke 11/31.

For the invisible things of him, from the creation of the world, are clearly seen, being understood by the things that are made: his eternal power also, and divinity, so that they are inexcusable. Rom. 1/20; Wis. 13/1 & 13/5.

He that believeth not, shall be condemned. Mark 16/16.

Thus saith the Lord: Stand ye on the ways, and see, and ask for the old paths, which is the good way, and walk ye

in it: and you shall find refreshment for your souls. And they said: We will not walk. Jer. 6/16.

Because that, when they knew God, they have not glorified him as God. Rom. 1/21.

Q. 322.

How do we fail to try to know what God has taught?

We fail to try to know what God has taught by neglecting to learn the Christian doctrine.

Young men have seen the light, and dwelt upon the earth: but the way of knowledge they have not known. Nor have they understood the paths thereof, neither have their children received it, it is far from their face. Baruch 3/20, 21.

Being alienated from the life of God through the ignorance that is in them. Ephes. 4/18.

Forasmuch as he knew not his Maker, and him that inspired into him the soul that worketh, and that breathed into him a living spirit. Wis. 15/11.

As they liked not to have God in their knowledge, God delivered them up to a reprobate sense, to do those things which are not convenient. Rom. 1/28.

For if they were able to know so much, as to make a judgment of the world: how did they not more easily find out the Lord thereof? Wis. 13/9.

For there shall be a time, when they will not endure sound doctrine: but according to their own desires, they will heap to themselves teachers, having to themselves itching ears. 2 Tim. 4/3.

He that heareth you, heareth me. Luke 10/16.

If he will not hear the church, let him be to thee as the heathen and publican. Matt. 18/17.

Therefore is my people led away captive because they had not knowledge. Isai. 5/13.

O children, how long will you love childishness, and fools covet those things which are hurtful to themselves, and the unwise hate knowledge? Prov. 1/22.

Who have said to God: Depart from us, we desire not the knowledge of thy ways. Job 21/14.

This is the work of God, that you believe in him whom he hath sent. John 6/29. (See 1 John 3/23.)

Q. 323.

Who are they who do not believe all that God has taught?

They who do not believe all that God has taught are the heretics and infidels.

They went out from us; but they were not of us. 1 John 2/19.

Know also this, that, in the last days, shall come on dangerous times: men shall be lovers of themselves, covetous, haughty, proud, blasphemers, disobedient to parents, ungrateful, wicked, . . . puffed up, and lovers of pleasures more than of God: having an appearance indeed of godliness, but denying the power thereof. 2 Tim. 3/1-5.

Because they received not the love of the truth that they might be saved. Therefore God shall send them the operation of error, to believe lying. 2 Thess. 2/10.

A man that is a heretic, after the first and second admonition, avoid. Titus 3/10.

With modesty admonishing them that resist the truth: if, peradventure, God may give them repentance to know the truth. 2 Tim. 2/25.

I will make the pride of infidels to cease. Isai. 13/11.

You do not believe: because you are not of my sheep. My sheep hear my voice: and I know them, and they follow me. John 10/26, 27.

For there must be also heresies: that they also, who are reproved, may be made manifest among you. 1 Cor. 11/19.

Q. 324.

Who are they who neglect to profess their belief in what God has taught?

They who neglect to profess their belief in what God has taught are all those who fail to acknowledge the true Church in which they really believe.

With the heart we believe unto justice; but with the mouth confession is made unto salvation. Rom. 10/10.

He that shall deny me before men, shall be denied before the angels of God. Luke 12/9.

What is a man advantaged, if he gain the whole world, and lose himself, and cast away himself? Luke 9/25.

For the wrath of God is revealed from heaven, against all ungodliness and injustice of those men that detain the truth of God in injustice: because that which is known of God is manifest in them. For God hath manifested it unto them. Rom. 1/18, 19.

However, many of the chief men also believed in him: but because of the Pharisees they did not confess him, that they might not be cast out of the synagogue. John 12/42.

Q. 325.

Can they who fail to profess their faith in the true Church in which they believe expect to be saved while in that state?

They who fail to profess their faith in the true Church in which they believe cannot expect to be saved while in that state, for Christ has said: "Whoever shall deny me before men, I will also deny him before my Father who is in heaven." Matt. 10/33.

(See 121.)

They loved the glory of men more than the glory of God. John 12/43.

And while they thought to lie hid in their obscure sins, they were scattered under a dark veil of forgetfulness, being horribly afraid, and troubled with exceeding great astonishment. Wis. 17/3.

Because that, when they knew God, they have not glorified him as God, or given thanks. Rom. 1/21.

If we deny him, he will also deny us. 2 Tim. 2/12.

He that is not with me, is against me. Matt. 12/30; Luke 11/23.

He that shall be ashamed of me, and of my words, in this adulterous and sinful generation: the Son of Man also will be ashamed of him, when he shall come in the glory of his Father with the holy angels. Mark 8/38; Luke 9/26. (See Matt. 10/33; Luke 12/9.)

Be not afraid of them who kill the body, and after that have no more that they can do. Luke 12/4.

Fear ye not them that kill the body, and are not able to kill the soul: but rather fear him that can destroy both soul and body in hell. Matt. 10/28.

Shall their unbelief make the faith of God without effect? Rom. 3/3.

Q. 326.

Are we obliged to make open profession of our faith?

We are obliged to make open profession of our faith as often as God's honor, our neighbor's spiritual good, or our own requires it. "Whosoever," says Christ, "shall confess me before men, I will also confess him before my Father who is in heaven." (Matt. 10/32; Mark 3/38; Luke 9/26 & 12/9.)

For with the heart we believe unto justice; but with the mouth confession is made unto salvation. Rom. 10/10.

These signs shall follow them that believe: In my name they shall cast out devils: they shall speak with new tongues. Mark 16/17.

I spoke of thy testimonies before kings; and I was not ashamed. Ps. 118/46.

If any man be on the Lord's side let him join with me. Exod. 32/26.

I have declared thy justice in a great church; lo, I will not restrain my lips. Ps. 39/10.

Be constant; for as thou hast testified of me in Jerusalem, so must thou bear witness also at Rome. Acts 23/11.

If we suffer, we shall also reign with him. If we deny him, he will also deny us. 2 Tim. 2/12.

But having the same spirit of faith, as it is written: I believed, for which cause I have spoken: we also believe, for which cause we speak also. 2 Cor. 4/13; Ps. 115/10.

Be not thou therefore ashamed of the testimony of our Lord. 2 Tim. 1/8.

Q. 327.

Which are the sins against hope?

The sins against hope are presumption and despair.

(See 328, 329.)

And Cain said to the Lord: My iniquity is greater than that I may deserve pardon. Gen. 4/13.

Delay not to be converted to the Lord, and defer it not from day to day. Eccus. 5/8.

To-day if you shall hear his voice, harden not your hearts. Heb. 3/15 & 3/7, 8 & 4/7; Ps. 94/8.

I have sinned, in betraying innocent blood. . . . And casting down the pieces of silver in the temple, he departed: and went and hanged himself. Matt. 27/4, 5.

For the eyes of the Lord behold all the earth, and give strength to those who, with a perfect heart, trust in him. 2 Paral. 16/9.

Praise ye the Lord our God, who hath not forsaken them that hope in him. Judith 13/17.

The Lord is good, and giveth strength in the day of trouble: and knoweth them that hope in him. Nahum 1/7.

If thou lose hope, being weary in the day of distress, thy strength shall be diminished. Prov. 24/10.

Q. 328.

What is presumption?

Presumption is a rash expectation of salvation without making proper use of the necessary means to obtain it.

Not every one that saith to me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven. Matt. 7/21. (See Matt. 25/11; Luke 6/46.)

And say not: The mercy of the Lord is great, he will have mercy on the multitude of my sins. For mercy and wrath quickly come from him, and his wrath looketh upon sinners. Eccus. 5/6 7.

Delay not to be converted to the Lord, and defer it not from day to day. For his wrath shall come on a sudden, and in the time of vengeance he will destroy thee. Eccus. 5/8, 9.

Say not in thy heart . . . For my justice hath the Lord brought me in to possess this land. Deut. 9/4.

But we had in ourselves the answer of death, that we should not trust in ourselves, but in God who raiseth the dead. 2 Cor. 1/9.

O Lord God of heaven and earth, behold their pride, and look on our low condition, and have regard to the face of thy saints, and shew that thou forsakest not them that trust on thee, and that thou humblest them that presume of themselves, and glory in their own strength. Judith, 6/15.

In my abundance I said: I shall never be moved. Ps. 29/7.

He hath seen the presumption of their heart, that it is wicked, and hath known their end, that it is evil. Eccus. 18/10.

O wicked presumption, whence camest thou to cover the earth with thy malice and deceitfulness? Eccus. 37/3.

You have set a time for the mercy of the Lord, and you have appointed him a day according to your pleasure. Judith 8/13.

Yea, if I shall say to the just that he shall surely live, and he, trusting in his justice, commit iniquity: all his justices shall be forgotten; and in his iniquity which he hath committed, in the same shall he die. Ezech. 33/13.

Q. 329.

What is despair?

Despair is the loss of hope in God's mercy.

(See 20; 108.)

And Cain said to the Lord: My iniquity is greater than that I may deserve pardon. Gen. 4/13.

And the Lord said to Josue: Arise, why liest thou flat on the ground? Josue 7/10.

Why are you fearful, O ye of little faith? Matt. 8/26.

Why art thou sad, O my soul? and why dost thou disquiet me? Ps. 42/5.

And they said: We have no hopes: for we will go after our own thoughts. Jer. 18/12.

Cast thy care upon the Lord, and he shall sustain thee. Ps. 54/23.

I will not fear what flesh can do against me. Ps. 55/5.

According to the multitude of my sorrows in my heart, thy comforts have given joy to my soul. Ps. 93/19.

It is good to confide in the Lord. Ps. 117/8.

Be of good comfort, my children. Baruch 4/21.

My children, behold the generations of men: and know ye that no one hath hoped in the Lord, and hath been confounded. Eccus. 2/11.

Do manfully, and be of good heart: fear not, nor be ye dismayed at their sight: for the Lord thy God, he himself is thy leader, and will not leave thee nor forsake thee. Deut. 31/6.

Happy is he that hath no sadness of his mind, and who is not fallen from his hope. Eccus. 14/2.

Is the hand of the Lord unable? Num. 11/23; Isai. 59/1.

For we are saved by hope. Rom. 8/24.

If you return, and be quiet, you shall be saved: in silence and in hope shall your strength be. Isai. 30/15.

But thou hast mercy upon all, because thou canst do all things, and overlookest the sins of men for the sake of repentance. Wis. 11/24.

For thou lovest all things that are, and hatest none of the things which thou hast made: for thou didst not appoint, or make any thing hating it. And how could any thing endure, if thou wouldst not? or be preserved, if not called by thee? But thou sparest all: because they are thine, O Lord, who lovest souls. Wis. 11/25-27.

If your sins be as scarlet, they shall be made as white as snow. Isai. 1/18.

Have confidence in the Lord with all thy heart. Prov. 3/5.

From the morning watch even until night, let Israel hope in the Lord. Ps. 129/6.

For his mercy endureth for ever. Ps. 135 *passim.*

Q. 330.

How do we sin against the love of God?

We sin against the love of God by all sin, but particularly by mortal sin.

(See 54.)

If any one love me, he will keep my word. John 14/23.

If I should have prophecy, and should know all mysteries, and all knowledge, and if I should have all faith, so that I could remove mountains, and have not charity, I am nothing. 1 Cor. 13/2.

Love, therefore, is the fulfilling of the law. Rom. 13/10.

And whosoever shall keep the whole law, but offend in one point, is become guilty of all. James 2/10.

He that loveth not, abideth in death. 1 John 3/14.

God is charity: and he that abideth in charity, abideth in God, and God in him. 1 John 4/16.

This is the charity of God, that we keep his commandments. 1 John 5/3.

They profess that they know God: but in their works they deny him; being abominable, and incredulous, and to every good work reprobate. Titus 1/16.

Lesson Thirty-First.

THE FIRST COMMANDMENT—ON THE HONOR AND INVOCATION OF SAINTS.

Q. 331.

Does the first Commandment forbid the honoring of the saints?

The first Commandment does not forbid the honoring of the saints, but rather approves of it; because by honoring the saints, who are the chosen friends of God, we honor God himself.

Let us now praise men of renown, and our fathers in their generation. Eccus. 44/1.

Let the people shew forth their wisdom, and the church declare their praise. Eccus. 44/15.

Nations shall declare his wisdom, and the church shall shew forth his praise. Eccus. 39/14.

The memory of him shall not depart away, and his name shall be in request from generation to generation. Eccus. 39/13.

But these were men of mercy, whose godly deeds have not failed. Eccus. 44/10.

Precious in the sight of the Lord is the death of his saints. Ps. 115/15.

Hath not the Lord made the saints to declare all his wonderful works . . . ? Eccus. 42/17.

From year to year, the daughters of Israel assemble together, and lament the daughter of Jephte. Judges 11/40.

Wherefore I also hearing of your faith that is in the Lord Jesus, and of your love towards all the saints, cease not to give thanks for you, making commemoration of you in my prayers. Ephes. 1/15, 16.

God . . . is glorified in the assembly of the saints. Ps. 88/8.

Some of them hath he blessed, and exalted: and some of them hath he sanctified, and set near himself. Eccus. 33/12.

He that shall overcome, and keep my works unto the end, I will give him power over the nations. Apoc. 2/26.

The grace of God, and his mercy, is with his saints, and that he hath respect to his chosen. Wis. 4/15.

These are they who are come out of great tribulation, and have washed their robes, and have made them white in the blood of the Lamb. Apoc. 7/14.

Q. 332.

Does the first Commandment forbid us to pray to the saints? The first Commandment does not forbid us to pray to the saints.

Pray one for another. James 5/16.

Brethren, pray for us. 1 Thess. 5/25; 2 Thess. 3/1; Heb. 13/18; Rom. 15/30; Jer. 42/2.

He shall pray for thee, and thou shalt live. Gen. 20/7.

Moses besought the Lord . . . And the Lord was appeased from doing the evil which he had spoken against his people. Exod. 32/11, 14.

And they said to Samuel: Cease not to cry to the Lord our God for us. 1 Kings 7/8. (See 1 Kings 12/19.)

Hath God any need of your lie, that you should speak deceitfully for him? . . . do you endeavour to judge for God? Job 13/7, 8.

Turn to some of the saints. Job 5/1.

Go to my servant Job, and offer for yourselves a holocaust: and my servant Job shall pray for you. Job 42/8.

Being buried, thou shalt sleep secure. Thou shalt rest, and there shall be none to make thee afraid: and many shall entreat thy face. Job 11/18, 19.

God is wonderful in his saints. Ps. 67/36.

The angel of the Lord answered, and said: O Lord of hosts, how long wilt thou not have mercy on Jerusalem. . . ? Zach. 1/12.

Onias, . . . a good and virtuous man, . . . holding up his hands, prayed for all the people of the Jews. 2 Mach. 15/12.

This is a lover of his brethren, and of the people of Israel: this is he that prayeth much for the people, and

for all the holy city, Jeremias, the prophet of God. 2 Mach. 15/14.

Hear now the prayer of the dead of Israel. Baruch 3/4.

Q. 333.

What do you mean by praying to the saints?

By praying to the saints we mean the asking of their help and prayers.

Always in all my prayers making supplication for you all. Philip. 1/4. (See Philemon 1/4.)

Then Simon answering, said: Pray you for me to the Lord. Acts 8/24.

I beseech you, therefore, brethren, through our Lord Jesus Christ, and by the charity of the Holy Ghost, that you help me in your prayers for me to God. Rom. 15/30.

I have learned by experience, that God hath blessed me for thy sake. Gen. 30/27.

A blameless man made haste to pray for the people, bringing forth the shield of his ministry, prayer, and by incense making supplication, withstood the wrath, and put an end to the calamity, shewing that he was thy servant. Wis. 18/21. (See Num. 16/46-48.)

Q. 334.

How do we know that the saints hear us?

We know that the saints hear us, because they are with God, who makes our prayers known to them.

Henoch pleased God, and was translated into paradise, that he may give repentance to the nations. Eccus. 44/16.

When thou didst pray with tears, and didst bury the dead, and didst leave thy dinner, and hide the dead by day in thy house, and bury them by night, I offered thy prayer to the Lord. Tob. 12/12.

And the smoke of the incense of the prayers of the saints ascended up before God, from the hand of the angel. Apoc. 8/4.

And there was given to him much incense, that he should offer of the prayers of all saints upon the golden altar, which is before the throne of God. Apoc. 8/3.

And the Lord shewed me Jesus, the high priest, standing before the angel of the Lord: and satan stood on his right hand, to be his adversary. . . . And the angel of the Lord protested to Jesus, saying: Thus saith the Lord of hosts. Zach. 3/1, 6, 7.

The four and twenty ancients, fell down before the Lamb, having every one of them harps, and golden vials full of odours, which are the prayers of saints. Apoc. 5/8.

Then I shall know even as I am known. 1 Cor. 13/12.

Even so there shall be joy in heaven upon one sinner that doth penance. Luke 15/7 & 15/10.

I will sing praise to thee in the sight of the angels. Ps. 137/1.

I charge thee before God, . . . and the elect angels, that thou observe these things. 1 Tim. 5/21.

O ye spirits and souls of the just, bless the Lord: praise and exalt him above all for ever. Dan. 3/86.

Q. 335.

Why do we believe that the saints will help us?

We believe that the saints will help us because both they and we are members of the same Church, and they love us as their brethren.

After death his (Eliseus') body prophesied. In his life he did great wonders, and in death he wrought miracles. Eccus. 48/14, 15.

As gold in the furnace he hath proved them, and as a victim of a holocaust he hath received them, and in time there shall be respect had to them. Wis. 3/6.

I beseech thee, . . . be not angry, Lord, if I speak once more: What if ten should be found there? And he said, I will not destroy it for the sake of ten. Gen. 18/32.

You have sinned a very great sin: I will go up to the Lord, if by any means I may be able to entreat him for your crime. Exod. 32/30.

In his servants he will take pleasure. 2 Mach. 7/6.

To me thy friends, O God, are made exceedingly honourable. Ps. 138/17.

The four and twenty ancients, fell down before the Lamb, having every one of them harps, and golden vials full of odours, which are the prayers of saints. Apoc. 5/8.

The smoke of the incense of the prayers of the saints ascended up before God, from the hand of the angel. Apoc. 8/4. (See Zach. 1/12.)

Turn to some of the saints. Job 5/1.

Q. 336.

How are the saints and we members of the same Church?

The saints and we are members of the same Church, because the Church in heaven and the Church on earth are one and the same Church, and all its members are in communion with one another.

One body, and one Spirit. Ephes. 4/4.

I am a partaker with all them that fear thee. Ps. 118/63.

You are come to mount Sion, and to the city of the living God, the heavenly Jerusalem, and to the company of many thousands of angels, and to the church of the first-born. Heb. 12/22, 23.

As the body is one, and hath many members: and all the members of the body, whereas they are many, yet are one body. 1 Cor. 12/12.

For as in one body we have many members, but all the members have not the same office: so we, being many, are one body in Christ, and every one members one of another. Rom. 12/4, 5.

For in one Spirit were we all baptized into one body. 1 Cor. 12/13.

Now there are many members indeed, yet one body. 1 Cor. 12/20.

Now you are the body of Christ, and members of member. 1 Cor. 12/27.

Q. 337.

What is the communion of the members of the Church called?

The communion of the members of the Church is called the Communion of Saints.

(See 12, Art. 9.)

For we are made partakers of Christ. Heb. 3/14.

You are all partakers of my joy. Philip. 1/7.

Giving thanks to God the Father, who hath made us worthy to be partakers of the lot of the saints in light. Col. 1/12.

For we being many, are one bread, one body, all that partake of one bread. 1 Cor. 10/17.

That the Gentiles should be fellow-heirs, and of the same body, and copartners of his promise in Christ Jesus, by the gospel. Ephes. 3/6.

Q. 338.

What does the communion of saints mean?

The communion of saints means the union which exists between the members of the Church on earth with one another, and with the blessed in Heaven and with the suffering souls in Purgatory.

Pray one for another. James 5/16.

For though I be absent in body, yet in spirit I am with you; rejoicing, and beholding your order, and the steadfastness of your faith. Col. 2/5.

Go and gather together all the Jews whom thou shalt find in Susan, and pray ye for me. Esther 4/16.

Hear now the prayer of the dead of Israel, and of their children. Baruch 3/4.

The priests, the Lord's ministers, shall weep, and shall say: Spare, O Lord, spare thy people. Joel 2/17.

It is therefore a holy and wholesome thought to pray for the dead. 2 Mach. 12/46.

Who is weak, and I am not weak? 2 Cor. 11/29.

Q. 339.

What benefits are derived from the communion of saints?

The following benefits are derived from the communion of saints:—the faithful on earth assist one another by their prayers and good works, and they are aided by the intercession of the saints in Heaven, while both the saints in Heaven and the faithful on earth help the souls in Purgatory.

Restrain not grace from the dead. Eccus. 7/37.

It is therefore a holy and wholesome thought to pray for the dead. 2 Mach. 12/46.

Go to Joseph: and do all that he shall say to you. Gen. 41/55.

The priest shall pray for him, and for his sin, and it shall be forgiven him. Levit. 4/26.

When the people cried to Moses, Moses prayed to the Lord, and the fire was swallowed up. Num. 11/2.

Far from me be this sin against the Lord, that I should cease to pray for you, and I will teach you the good and right way. 1 Kings 12/23.

The Lord . . . hath not despised his prisoners. Ps. 68/34.

He said that he would destroy them: had not Moses, his chosen, stood before him in the breach. Ps. 105/23. (See Wis. 18/21; Eccus. 45/29; Isai. 37/4.)

To the saints, who are in his land, he hath made wonderful all my desires in them. Ps. 15/3.

Peter . . . was kept in prison. But prayer was made without ceasing by the church unto God for him. Acts 12/5.

Brethren, the will of my heart, indeed, and my prayer to God, is for them unto salvation. Rom. 10/1.

That there might be no schism in the body, but the members might be mutually careful one for another. 1 Cor. 12/25.

And pray ye for us to the Lord our God: for we have sinned against the Lord our God. Baruch 1/13.

Q. 340.

Does the first Commandment forbid us to honor relics?

The first Commandment does not forbid us to honor relics, because relics are the bodies of the saints or objects directly connected with them or with our Lord.

If I shall touch only his garment, I shall be healed. Matt. 9/21; Mark 5/28.

And God wrought by the hand of Paul more than common miracles. So that even there were brought from his body to the sick, handkerchiefs and aprons, and the diseases departed from them, and the wicked spirits went out of them. Acts 19/11, 12.

And the bones of Joseph, which the children of Israel had taken out of Egypt, they buried in Sichem. Josue 24/32. (See Exod. 13/19.)

Take my staff in thy hand, and go . . . and lay my staff upon the face of the child. 4 Kings 4/29.

I beseech thee, grant to me, . . . to take from hence two mules' burden of earth. 4 Kings 5/17.

And when it had touched the bones of Eliseus, the man came to life. 4 Kings 13/21.

And they buried him in the city of David among the kings, because he had done good to Israel. 2 Paral. 24/16.

His bones were visited, and after death they prophesied. Eccus. 49/18.

After death his body prophesied. In his life he did great wonders, and in death he wrought miracles. Eccus. 48/14, 15.

Command them to take out of the midst of the Jordan, where the feet of the priests stood, twelve very hard stones, which you shall set in the place of the camp, where you shall pitch your tents this night. Josue 4/3.

Loose, . . . thy shoes from off thy feet; for the place whereon thou standest is holy. Josue 5/16.

Q. 341.

Does the first Commandment forbid the making of images?

The first Commandment does forbid the making of images if they are made to be adored as gods, but it does not forbid the making of them to put us in mind of Jesus Christ, His Blessed Mother, and the saints.

And the Lord said to him: Make a brazen serpent, and set it up for a sign. Num. 21/8.

Thou shalt make also two cherubims of beaten gold, on the two sides of the oracle. Exod. 25/18. (See Exod. 37/7; 3 Kings 6/32; 1 Paral. 28/18.)

And all the walls of the temple round about he carved with divers figures and carvings. 3 Kings 6/29.

If you shall . . . make to yourselves any similitude, committing evil before the Lord your God, to provoke him to wrath: I call this day heaven and earth to witness, that you shall quickly perish out of the land. Deut. 4/25, 26.

Cursed be the man that maketh a graven and molten thing, . . . and shall put it in a secret place. Deut. 27/15.

He made two golden calves, and said to them: . . . Behold thy gods, O Israel. 3 Kings 12/28. (See 4 Kings 17/9, 10.)

He destroyed the high places, and broke the statues in pieces, and cut down the groves, and broke the brazen serpent, which Moses had made: for till that time the children of Israel burnt incense to it: and he called its name Nohestan. 4 Kings 18/4.

Let them be all confounded that adore graven things, and that glory in their idols. Ps. 96/7.

You shall not make gods of silver, nor shall you make to yourselves gods of gold. Exod. 20/23.

And to the worshipping of these, the singular diligence also of the artificer helped to set forward the ignorant. Wis. 14/18.

In the priestly robe which he wore, was the whole world: and in the four rows of the stones, the glory of the fathers was graven. Wis. 18/24.

They have no knowledge that set up the wood of their graven work, and pray to a god that cannot save. Isai. 45/20.

Saying to a stock: Thou art my father: and to a stone: Thou hast begotten me: they have turned their back to me. Jer. 2/27. (See 2 Paral. 24/18.)

The idol that is made by hands, is cursed, as well as he that made it: he, because he made it; and it, because, being frail, it is called a god. Wis. 14/8.

That man knoweth that he offendeth above all others, who, of earthly matter, maketh . . . graven gods. Wis. 15/13.

Q. 342.

Is it right to show respect to the pictures and images of Christ and His saints?

It is right to show respect to the pictures and images of Christ and His saints, because they are the representations and memorials of them.

Blessed is the wood, by which justice cometh. Wis. 14/7.

There were brought from his (Paul's) body to the sick, handkerchiefs and aprons, and the diseases departed from them. Acts 19/12.

The place whereon thou standest is holy. Josue 5/16. (See Exod. 3/5; Acts 7/33.)

Whose image and inscription is this? Matt. 22/20; Mark 12/16; Luke 20/24.

Q. 343.

Is it allowed to pray to the crucifix or to the images and relics of the saints?

It is not allowed to pray to the crucifix or images and relics of the saints, for they have no life, nor power to help us, nor sense to hear us.

The idols of the Gentiles are silver and gold, the works of men's hands. They have a mouth, but they speak not: they have eyes, but they see not. They have ears, but they hear not: neither is there any breath in their mouths. Let them that make them be like to them: and every one that trusteth in them. Ps. 134/15-18 & 113/4-8b.

For they have esteemed all the idols of the heathens for gods, which neither have the use of eyes to see, nor noses to draw breath, nor ears to hear, nor fingers of hands to handle, and as for their feet, they are slow to walk. For man made them. Wis. 15/15, 16.

He . . . broke the brazen serpent, which Moses had made: for till that time the children of Israel burnt incense to it. 4 Kings 18/4.

For he that turned to it, was not healed by that which he saw, but by thee, the Saviour of all. Wis. 16/7.

They have no knowledge that set up the wood of their graven work, and pray to a god that cannot save. Isai. 45/20.

They trust in idols, which are without life. Wis. 14/29.

It is unable to help itself: for it is an image, and hath need of help. And then maketh prayer to it, inquiring concerning his substance, and his children, or his marriage. And he is not ashamed to speak to that which hath no life. Wis. 13/16, 17.

What doth the graven thing avail . . . ? . . . can it teach? Habac. 2/18, 19. (See Baruch 6.)

Q. 344.

Why do we pray before the crucifix and the images and relics of the saints?

We pray before the crucifix and the images and relics of the saints because they enliven our devotion by exciting pious affections and desires, and by reminding us of Christ and of the saints, that we may imitate their virtues.

Those whom men could not honour in presence, because they dwelt far off, they brought their resemblance from afar, and made an express image of the king whom they had a mind to honour: that, by this their diligence, they might honour as present, him that was absent. Wis. 14/17.

Lesson Thirty-Second.

FROM THE SECOND TO THE FOURTH COMMANDMENT.

Q. 345.

What is the second Commandment?

The second Commandment is: Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain. (Exod. 20/7; Deut. 5/11.)

For the Lord will not hold him guiltless that shall take the name of the Lord his God in vain. Exod. 20/7.

Profane not my holy name, that I may be sanctified in the midst of the children of Israel. Levit. 22/32.

Bring forth the blasphemer without the camp, and let them that heard him, put their hands upon his head, and let all the people stone him. Levit. 24/14.

The man that curseth his God, shall bear his sin. Levit. 24/15.

And he that blasphemeth the name of the Lord, dying let him die. Levit. 24/16.

For he shall not be unpunished that taketh his name upon a vain thing. Deut. 5/11.

Blessed is the man that hath not slipt by a word out of his mouth. Eccus. 14/1.

Let not thy mouth be accustomed to swearing: for in it there are many falls. Eccus. 23/9.

And I have regarded my own holy name, which the house of Israel had profaned among the nations. Ezech. 36/21.

A man that sweareth much, shall be filled with iniquity. Eccus. 23/12.

Every one that sweareth, and nameth, shall not be wholly pure from sin. Eccus. 23/11.

The name of the Lord through you is blasphemed among the Gentiles. Rom. 2/24. (See Ezech. 36/20.)

Q. 346.

What are we commanded by the second Commandment?

We are commanded by the second Commandment to speak with reverence of God and of the saints, and of all holy things, and to keep our lawful oaths and vows.

(See 308, OUR FATHER—HALLOWED BE THY NAME.)

Let not thy mouth be accustomed to swearing: . . . And let not the naming of God be usual in thy mouth, and meddle not with the names of saints, for thou shalt not escape free from them. Eccus. 23/9, 10.

We have sworn to them in the name of the Lord, . . . and therefore we may not touch them. Josue 9/19.

Keep thy tongue from evil, and thy lips from speaking guile. Ps. 33/14.

In many words shall be found folly. Ecces. 5/2.

He that keepeth his mouth, keepeth his soul: but he that hath no guard on his speech shall meet with evils. Prov. 13/3 & 21/23.

Let your speech be always in grace seasoned with salt; that you may know how you ought to answer every man. Col. 4/6.

For he that will love life, and see good days, let him refrain his tongue from evil, and his lips that they speak no guile. 1 Pet. 3/10.

Such as bless him shall inherit the land: but such as curse him shall perish. Ps. 36/22.

Let my heart rejoice, that it may fear thy name. Ps. 85/11.

By what doth a young man correct his way? by observing his words. Ps. 118/9.

From the rising of the sun, unto the going down of the same, the name of the Lord is worthy of praise. Ps. 112/3.

Blessed is the holy name of thy glory: and worthy to be praised and exalted above all in all ages. Dan. 3/52.

If any man offend not in word, the same is a perfect man. James 3/2.

If any man make a vow to the Lord, or bind himself by an oath: he shall not make his word void, but shall fulfil all that he promised. Num. 30/3.

Let all stand that we have sworn, both of us, in the name of the Lord. 1 Kings 20/42.

Q. 347.

What is an oath?

An oath is the calling upon God to witness the truth of what we say.

And as he was swearing, Israel adored God, turning to the bed's head. Gen. 47/31.

May the Lord do so and so to Jonathan, and add still more. 1 Kings 20/13. (See Ruth 1/17.)

As the Lord liveth, who hath delivered my soul out of all distress, even as I swore to thee, by the Lord, the God of Israel. 3 Kings 1/29, 30.

For men swear by one greater than themselves: and an oath for confirmation is the end of all their controversy. Heb. 6/16.

But I call God to witness upon my soul, that to spare you, I came not any more to Corinth. 2 Cor. 1/23.

Q. 348.

When may we take an oath?

We may take an oath when it is ordered by lawful authority or required for God's honor or for our own or our neighbor's good.

Swear therefore by God, that thou wilt not hurt me, nor my posterity, nor my stock: . . . And Abraham said: I will swear. Gen. 21/23, 24.

Put thy hand under my thigh, that I may make thee swear by the Lord the God of heaven and earth, that thou take not a wife for my son, of the daughters of the Chanaanites. Gen. 24/2, 3.

Thou shalt fear the Lord thy God, and shalt serve him only, and thou shalt swear by his name. Deut. 6/13 & 10/20.

Swear to me by the Lord. . . . And David swore to Saul. 1 Kings 24/22, 23 & 30/15.

And they swore to the Lord, with a loud voice. 2 Paral. 15/14.

But the king shall rejoice in God, all they shall be praised that swear by him. Ps. 62/12.

Thou shalt not swear falsely by my name, nor profane the name of thy God. Levit. 19/12.

Q. 349.

What is necessary to make an oath lawful?

To make an oath lawful it is necessary that what we swear to be true, and that there be a sufficient cause for taking an oath.

Thou shalt swear: As the Lord liveth, in truth, and in judgment, and in justice. Jer. 4/2.

Let not thy mouth be accustomed to swearing: for in it there are many falls. Eccus. 23/9.

The daughter of Herodias danced before them: and pleased Herod. Whereupon he promised, with an oath, to give her whatsoever she would ask of him. Matt. 14/6, 7.

Some of the Jews gathered together, and bound themselves under a curse, saying; that they would neither eat nor drink till they killed Paul. Acts 23/12.

Q. 350.

What is a vow?

A vow is a deliberate promise made to God to do something that is pleasing to Him.

They shall make vows to the Lord, and perform them. Isai. 19/21.

(Jacob) made a vow, . . . of all things that thou shalt give to me, I will offer tithes to thee. Gen. 28/20, 22.

The people daily in the morning offered their vows. Exod. 36/3.

And she (Anna) made a vow, . . . I will give him to the Lord all the days of his life. 1 Kings 1/11.

A vow shall be paid to thee in Jerusalem. Ps. 64/2.

The vows of the just are acceptable. Prov. 15/8.

Vow ye, and pay to the Lord your God: all you that are round about him bring presents. Ps. 75/12.

I will pay my vows in the sight of them that fear him. Ps. 21/26.

When a man, or woman, shall make a vow to be sanctified, and will consecrate themselves to the Lord: they shall abstain from wine, and from every thing that may make a man drunk. Num. 6/2, 3.

For he (St. Paul) had a vow. Acts 18/18.

Q. 351.

Is it a sin not to fulfil our vows?

Not to fulfil our vows is a sin, mortal or venial, according to the nature of the vow and the intention we had in making it.

When thou hast made a vow to the Lord thy God, thou shalt not delay to pay it: because the Lord thy God will require it. And if thou delay, it shall be imputed to thee for a sin. Deut. 23/21.

Thou shalt pay vows. Job 22/27.

If any man make a vow to the Lord, or bind himself by an oath: he shall not make his word void, but shall fulfil all that he promised. Num. 30/3.

A beast, that may be sacrificed to the Lord, if any one shall vow, shall be holy. Levit. 27/9.

You and your wives have spoken with your mouth, and fulfilled with your hands, saying: Let us perform our vows which we have made, to offer sacrifice to the queen of heaven, and to pour out drink-offerings to her: you have fulfilled your vows, and have performed them indeed. Jer. 44/25.

Juda, keep thy festivals, and pay thy vows. Nahum 1/15.

My father, if thou hast opened thy mouth to the Lord, do unto me whatsoever thou hast promised. Judges 11/36.

The things which his father had vowed, and he himself had vowed, he brought into the house of the Lord. 2 Paral 15/18.

If thou wilt not promise, thou shalt be without sin. But that which is once gone out of thy lips, thou shalt observe, and shalt do as thou hast promised to the Lord thy God. Deut. 23/22, 23.

I will go into thy house with burnt offerings: I will pay thee my vows, which my lips have uttered, and my mouth hath spoken, when I was in trouble. Ps. 65/13, 14.

If thou hast vowed anything to God, defer not to pay it: for an unfaithful and foolish promise displeaseth him: . . . it is much better not to vow, than after a vow not to perform the things promised. Ecces. 5/3, 4.

If he make it void, his sin shall be upon him: and if he dissembleth it, he offendeth double. Eccus. 23/13.

Having damnation, because they have made void their first faith. 1 Tim. 5/12.

For if, flying from the pollutions of the world, . . . they be again entangled in them and overcome: their latter state is become unto them worse than the former. 2 Pet. 2/20.

It is ruin to a man . . . . after vows to retract. Prov. 20/25.

No man putting his hand to the plough, and looking back, is fit for the kingdom of God. Luke 9/62.

Thou shalt perform thy oaths to the Lord. Matt. 5/33.

Pay thy vows to the most High. Ps. 49/14.

Q. 352.

What is forbidden by the second Commandment?

The second Commandment forbids all false, rash, unjust, and unnecessary oaths, blasphemy, cursing, and profane words.

The person that sweareth, and uttereth with his lips, that he would do either evil or good, and bindeth the same with an oath, and his word, and having forgotten it afterwards understandeth his offence, let him do penance for his sin. Levit. 5/4, 5.

Cursed be the man that shall eat food till evening, till I be revenged of my enemies. 1 Kings 14/24.

He wrote also letters full of blasphemy against the Lord, the God of Israel, and he spoke against him. 2 Paral. 32/17.

They have thought and spoken wickedness: they have spoken iniquity on high. They have set their mouth against heaven. Ps. 72/8, 9.

Lift not up your horn on high: speak not iniquity against God. Ps. 74/6.

If he swear in vain, he shall not be justified. Eccus. 23/14.

Let not thy mouth be accustomed to indiscreet speech: for therein is the word of sin. Eccus. 23/17.

Let not thy mouth be accustomed to swearing: . . . And let not the naming of God be usual in thy mouth, and meddle not with the names of saints . . . A man that sweareth much, shall be filled with iniquity . . . And if he make it void, his sin shall be upon him. Eccus. 23/9-13.

The speech that sweareth much shall make the hair of the head stand upright: and its irreverence shall make one stop his ears. Eccus. 27/15.

Who will set a guard before my mouth, and a sure seal upon my lips, that I fall not by them, and that my tongue destroy me not? Eccus. 22/33.

But I say to you not to swear at all. Matt. 5/34.

Let no evil speech proceed from your mouth: but that which is good to the edification of faith. Ephes. 4/29.

Swear not, neither by heaven nor by the earth, nor by any other oath. But let your speech be, yea, yea: no, no. James 5/12.

Thou shalt not forswear thyself: but thou shalt perform thy oaths to the Lord. Matt. 5/33.

A curse uttered without cause shall come upon a man. Prov. 26/2.

But for two things they shall be justly punished, because they have thought not well of God, giving heed to idols, and have sworn unjustly. Wis. 14/30.

Q. 353.

What is the third Commandment?

The third Commandment is: Remember thou keep holy the Sabbath day. (Exod. 20/8; Deut. 5/12.)

(See 390, 392.)

You shall do no work in them, except those things that belong to eating. Exod. 12/16.

To-morrow is the rest of the sabbath sanctified to the Lord. Exod. 16/23.

See that the Lord hath given you the sabbath. Exod. 16/29.

See that thou keep my sabbath: because it is a sign between me and you. Exod. 31/13.

Keep you my sabbath: for it is holy unto you: he that shall profane it, shall be put to death: he that shall do any work in it. Exod. 31/14.

Let the children of Israel keep the sabbath. Exod. 31/16.

Keep ye my sabbaths, and reverence my sanctuary. Levit. 19/30.

Blessed is the man that doth this, . . . that keepeth the sabbath from profaning it. Isai. 56/2.

That unhappy man asked, if there were a mighty One in heaven, that had commanded the sabbath-day to be

kept. And when they answered: There is the living Lord himself in heaven, the mighty One, that commanded the seventh day to be kept. 2 Mach. 15/3, 4.

The seventh day also shall be most solemn and holy unto you: you shall do no servile work therein. Num. 28/25.

The first day also of the seventh month shall be venerable and holy unto you. Num. 29/1.

The tenth day also of this seventh month shall be holy and venerable unto you. Num. 29/7.

And on the fifteenth day of the seventh month. Num. 29/12.

Observe the month of new corn. Deut. 16/1.

Q. 354.

What are we commanded by the third Commandment?

By the third Commandment we are commanded to keep holy the Lord's day and the holydays of obligation, on which we are to give our time to the service and worship of God.

This day shall be for a memorial to you. Exod. 12/14.

You shall observe the feast of the unleavened bread. Exod. 12/17.

Every one that shall do any work on this day, shall die. Exod. 31/15.

Six days shalt thou work, the seventh day thou shalt cease to plough, and to reap. Exod. 34/21 & 35/2.

Thou shalt keep the feast of weeks with the first-fruits of the corn of thy wheat harvest. Exod. 34/22.

Three times in the year all thy males shall appear in the sight of the Almighty Lord the God of Israel. Exod. 34/23 & 23/14 & 23/17; Deut. 16/16.

Six years thou shalt sow thy field, and six years thou shalt prune thy vineyard, and shalt gather the fruits thereof: but in the seventh year there shall be a sabbath to the land. Levit. 25/3, 4; Exod. 23/10, 11.

Bless ye the Lord, all his elect, keep days of joy, and give glory to him. Tob. 13/10.

The day of the festivity of this victory is received by the Hebrews in the number of holy days. Judith 16/31.

You shall also count this day among other festival days. Esther 16/22.

These also are the holy-days of the Lord, which you must celebrate in their seasons. Levit. 23/7.

And he ordered the seasons, and holidays of them, and in them they celebrated festivals at an hour. Eccus. 33/9.

Some of them God made high and great days, and some of them he put in the number of ordinary days. Eccus. 33/10.

Q. 355.

How are we to worship God on Sundays and holydays of obligation?

We are to worship God on Sundays and holydays of obligation by hearing Mass, by prayer, and by other good works.

(See 389, 1st; 390, 392.)

You shall offer a holocaust for a most sweet odour to the Lord. Num. 29/2 & 28/27.

Sanctify the Lord Christ in your hearts. 1 Pet. 3/15.

It is lawful to do a good deed on the sabbath-days. Matt. 12/12; Mark 3/4; Luke 6/9.

Q. 356.

Are the Sabbath day and the Sunday the same?

The Sabbath day and the Sunday are not the same. The Sabbath is the seventh day of the week, and is the day which was kept holy in the old law; the Sunday is the first day of the week, and is the day which is kept holy in the new law.

In the seventh day is the sabbath, the rest holy to the Lord. Exod. 31/15.

The people kept the sabbath on the seventh day. Exod. 16/30.

If that which was done away, was glorious; much more that which remaineth, is in glory. 2 Cor. 3/11.

For the Son of Man is Lord even of the sabbath. Matt. 12/8; Mark 2/28; Luke 6/5. (See Gal. 3/13.)

The sabbath was made for man, and not man for the sabbath. Mark 2/27.

On the first day of the week, when we were assembled to break bread. Acts 20/7.

Q. 357.

Why does the Church command us to keep the Sunday holy instead of the Sabbath?

The Church commands us to keep the Sunday holy instead of the Sabbath because on Sunday Christ rose from the dead, and on Sunday He sent the Holy Ghost upon the Apostles.

(See 89, 97.)

Bless ye the Lord, all his elect, keep days of joy, and give glory to him. Tob. 13/10.

This day shall be for a memorial to you. Exod. 12/14.

This is the day which the Lord hath made: let us be glad, and rejoice therein. Ps. 117/24.

The sabbath was made for man, and not man for the sabbath. Mark 2/27.

When the sabbath was past, . . . And very early in the morning, the first day of the week. Mark 16/1, 2.

He is not here, for he is risen, as he said. Matt. 28/6.

And when the days of the pentecost were accomplished. Acts 2/1.

Q. 358.

What is forbidden by the third Commandment?

The third Commandment forbids all unnecessary servile work and whatever else may hinder the due observance of the Lord's day.

Thou shalt do no work on it. Exod. 20/10; Levit. 23/3.

The seventh day thou shalt cease to plough, and to reap. Exod. 34/21 & 23/12.

I charged them that they should sell on a day on which it was lawful to sell. 2 Esdras 13/15.

You bring more wrath upon Israel by violating the sabbath. 2 Esdras 13/18.

The first day shall be most solemn unto you, and holy: you shall do no servile work therein. Levit. 23/7.

And every soul that shall do any work, the same will I destroy from among his people. You shall do no work therefore on that day: it shall be an everlasting ordinance unto you in all your generations, and dwellings. Levit. 23/30, 31.

Q. 359.

What are servile works?

Servile works are those which require labor rather of body than of mind.

I saw, in Juda, some treading the presses on the sabbath, and carrying sheaves, and lading asses with wine, and grapes, and figs, and all manner of burthens, and bringing them into Jerusalem on the sabbath-day. . . . And I rebuked the chief men of Juda. 2 Esdras 13/15, 17.

Take heed to your souls, and carry no burdens on the sabbath-day. Jer. 17/21.

Q. 360.

Are servile works on Sunday ever lawful?

Servile works are lawful on Sunday when the honor of God, the good of our neighbor, or necessity requires them.

What man shall there be among you, that hath one sheep: and if the same fall into a pit on the sabbath-day, will he not take hold on it, and lift it up? Matt. 12/11.

It is lawful to do a good deed on the sabbath-days. Matt. 12/12. (See Mark 3/4; Luke 6/9.)

Ye hypocrites, doth not every one of you on the sabbath-day loose his ox or his ass from the manger, and lead them to water? Luke 13/15.

Which of you shall have an ass or an ox fall into a pit; and will not immediately draw him out on the sabbath day? Luke 14/5. (See Deut. 22/4.)

Lesson Thirty-Third.

FROM THE FOURTH TO THE SEVENTH COMMANDMENT.

Q. 361.

What is the fourth Commandment?

The fourth Commandment is: Honor thy father and thy mother. (Deut. 5/16; Matt. 15/4 & 19/19; Mark 7/10; Exod. 20/12.)

Honour thy father and thy mother, which is the first commandment with a promise. Ephes. 6/2.

Thou shalt honour thy mother all the days of her life. Tob. 4/3.

Honour thy father and thy mother, that thou mayst be long-lived upon the land which the Lord thy God will give thee. Exod. 20/12.

He that honoureth his father shall have joy in his own children. Eccus. 3/6.

He that honoureth his father, shall enjoy a long life. Eccus. 3/7.

He that honoureth his mother, is as one that layeth up a treasure. Eccus. 3/5.

He that feareth the Lord, honoureth his parents, and will serve them as his masters that brought him into the world. Eccus. 3/8.

Honour thy father in work and word, and all patience. Eccus. 3/9.

Children, obey your parents in all things: for this is well-pleasing to the Lord. Col. 3/20.

Children, obey your parents in the Lord: for this is just. Ephes. 6/1.

I have no greater grace than this, to hear that my children walk in truth. 3 John 1/4.

Q. 362.

What are we commanded by the fourth Commandment?

We are commanded by the fourth Commandment to honor, love, and obey our parents in all that is not sin.

Tobias answered his father, and said: I will do all things, father, which thou hast commanded me. Tob. 5/1.

Gather yourselves together, and hear, O ye sons of Jacob, hearken to Israel your father. Gen. 49/2.

If a man have a stubborn and unruly son, who will not hear the commandments of his father or mother, and being corrected, slighteth obedience: . . . the people of the city shall stone him. Deut. 21/18, 21.

And he went down with them, and came to Nazareth: and was subject to them. Luke 2/51.

My son, hear the instruction of thy father, and forsake not the law of thy mother. Prov. 1/8 & 6/20.

A wise son maketh the father glad: but a foolish son is the sorrow of his mother. Prov. 10/1.

A wise son heareth the doctrine of his father. Prov. 13/1.

Hearken to thy father that begot thee: and despise not thy mother when she is old. Prov. 23/22.

Children, hear the judgment of your father, and so do that you may be saved. Eccus. 3/2.

Glory not in the dishonour of thy father: for his shame is no glory to thee. Eccus. 3/12.

Son, support the old age of thy father, and grieve him not in his life: and if his understanding fail, have patience with him, and despise him not when thou art in thy strength. Eccus. 3/14, 15.

Of what an evil fame is he that forsaketh his father: and he is cursed of God that angereth his mother. Eccus. 3/18.

Honour thy father, and forget not the groanings of thy mother: remember that thou hadst not been born but through them: and make a return to them as they have done for thee. Eccus. 7/29, 30.

Let every one fear his father, and his mother. Levit. 19/3.

He that shall curse father or mother, let him die the death. Matt. 15/4; Levit. 20/9; Exod. 21/17.

He that curseth his father and mother, his lamp shall be put out in the midst of darkness. Prov. 20/20.

Q. 363.

Are we bound to honor and obey others than our parents?

We are also bound to honor and obey our bishops, pastors, magistrates, teachers, and other lawful superiors.

(See 280.)

Remember thy Creator in the days of thy youth, before the time of affliction come. Eccles. 12/1.

Give ye glory to the Lord your God, before it be dark, and before your feet stumble upon the dark mountains. Jer. 13/16.

Remember your prelates who have spoken the word of God to you. Heb. 13/7.

Obey your prelates, and be subject to them. Heb. 13/17.

Give honour to the priests. Eccus. 7/33.

With all thy soul fear the Lord, and reverence his priests. Eccus. 7/31.

Despise not a man in his old age; for we also shall become old. Eccus. 8/7.

Rise up before the hoary head, and honour the person of the aged man. Levit. 19/32.

Make thyself affable to the congregation of the poor, and humble thy soul to the ancient, and bow thy head to a great man. Eccus. 4/7.

Render, therefore, to all men their dues. Tribute to whom tribute is due: custom to whom custom: fear to whom fear: honour to whom honour. Rom. 13/7.

Be ye subject, therefore, to every human creature for God's sake: whether it be the king as excelling: or to governors as sent by him. 1 Pet. 2/13, 14.

Let every soul be subject to higher powers. Rom. 13/1.

In what place soever thou shalt be, my lord, O king, either in death or in life, there will thy servant be. 2 Kings 15/21.

And they bowed themselves, and worshipped God, and then the king. 1 Paral. 29/20.

Touch ye not my anointed: and do no evil to my prophets. Ps. 104/15; 1 Paral. 16/22.

The Lord be merciful to me, that I may do no such thing to my master, the Lord's anointed, as to lay my hand upon him. 1 Kings 24/7 & 26/11.

And all the people cried and said: God save the king. 1 Kings 10/24.

Admonish them to be subject to princes and powers, to obey at a word, to be ready to every good work. Titus 3/1.

As we obeyed Moses in all things, so will we obey thee also. Josue 1/17.

Render, therefore, to Cæsar the things that are Cæsar's: and to God, the things that are God's. Matt. 22/21; Mark 12/17; Luke 20/25.

Thou shalt not speak ill of the gods, and the prince of thy people thou shalt not curse. Exod. 22/28.

Who shall put forth his hand against the Lord's anointed, and shall be guiltless? 1 Kings 26/9.

His brethren came to him; and worshipping prostrate on the ground, they said: We are thy servants. Gen. 50/18.

When Peter was come in, Cornelius came to meet him, and falling at his feet, adored. Acts 10/25.

Honour the physician. Eccus. 38/1.

Ruth stuck close to her mother-in-law. Ruth 1/14.

Exhort servants to be obedient to their masters, in all things pleasing, not gainsaying. Titus 2/9.

Servants, be subject to your masters with all fear, not only to the good and gentle, but also to the froward. 1 Pet. 2/18.

Servants, obey in all things your masters according to the flesh, not serving to the eye, as pleasing men, but in simplicity of heart, fearing God. Col. 3/22; Ephes. 6/5.

In like manner also let wives be subject to their husbands. 1 Pet. 3/1; Ephes. 5/22; Col. 3/18.

Be subject one to another. Ephes. 5/21.

Honour all men. 1 Pet. 2/17.

Q. 364.

Have parents and superiors any duties towards those who are under their charge?

It is the duty of parents and superiors to take good care of all under their charge and give them proper direction and example.

And the parents, taking their daughter, kissed her, and let her go: admonishing her to honour her father and mother-in-law, to love her husband, to take care of the family, to govern the house, and to behave herself irreprehensibly. Tob. 10/12, 13.

My son, why did we send thee to go to a strange country, the light of our eyes, the staff of our old age, the comfort of our life, the hope of our posterity? Tob. 10/4.

And from his infancy he taught him to fear God, and to abstain from all sin. Tob. 1/10.

Command your children that they do justice and almsdeeds, and that they be mindful of God, and bless him at all times in truth. Tob. 14/11.

Fathers, provoke not your children to indignation; lest they be discouraged. Col. 3/21.

A son ill taught is the confusion of the father: and a foolish daughter shall be to his loss. Eccus. 22/3.

Keep a sure watch over a shameless daughter. Eccus. 42/11.

He that loveth his son, frequently chastiseth him. Eccus. 30/1.

He that instructeth his son, shall be praised in him. Eccus. 30/2.

He that teacheth his son, maketh his enemy jealous. Eccus. 30/3.

Give thy son his way, and he shall make thee afraid: play with him, and he shall make thee sorrowful. Eccus. 30/9.

Hast thou children? instruct them. Eccus. 7/25.

You shall teach therefore the children of Israel to take heed of uncleanness. Levit. 15/31.

I will judge his (Heli's) house for ever, for iniquity, because he knew that his sons did wickedly, and did not chastise them. 1 Kings 3/13.

He that spareth the rod hateth his son: but he that loveth him correcteth him betimes. Prov. 13/24.

Withhold not correction from a child: . . . and deliver his soul from hell. Prov. 23/13, 14.

The rod and reproof give wisdom: but the child that is left to his own will, bringeth his mother to shame. Prov. 29/15.

Instruct thy son, and he shall refresh thee, and shall give delight to thy soul. Prov. 29/17.

Rejoice not in ungodly children, if they be multiplied: neither be delighted in them, if the fear of God be not with them. Eccus. 16/1.

A father without honour is the disgrace of the son. Eccus. 3/13.

If any man have not care of his own, and especially of those of his house, he hath denied the faith, and is worse than an infidel. 1 Tim. 5/8.

And you fathers, provoke not your children to anger: but bring them up in the discipline and correction of the Lord. Ephes. 6/4.

The just that walketh in his simplicity, shall leave behind him blessed children. Prov. 20/7.

A wise woman buildeth her house: but the foolish will pull down with her hands that also which is built. Prov. 14/1.

The children of sinners become children of abominations. Eccus. 41/8.

Take care of a good name: for this shall continue with thee, more than a thousand treasures precious and great. Eccus. 41/15.

And Jacob blessed the sons of Joseph. Gen. 48/15.

Take not a wife for my son, of the daughters of the Chanaanites. Gen. 24/3.

Thou shalt rear up the tabernacle according to the pattern that was shewn thee in the mount. Exod. 26/30.

Look and make it according to the pattern, that was shewn thee in the mount. Exod. 25/40; Heb. 8/5.

Keep thyself, therefore, and thy soul carefully. Forget not the words that thy eyes have seen. . . . Thou shalt teach them to thy sons and to thy grandsons. Deut. 4/9.

My son Absalom; Absalom, my son: would to God that I might die for thee, Absalom, my son, my son Absalom. 2 Kings 18/33 & 19/4.

A voice in Rama was heard, lamentation and great mourning; Rachel bewailing her children, and would not be comforted, because they are not. Matt. 2/18; Jer. 31/15.

She is hardened against her young ones, as though they were not hers, she hath laboured in vain, no fear constraining her. Job 39/16.

Masters, do to your servants that which is just and equal, knowing that you also have a Master in heaven. Col. 4/1.

Love the light of wisdom, all ye that bear rule over peoples. Wis. 6/23.

Wo to him that buildeth a town with blood, and prepareth a city by iniquity. Habac. 2/12.

Knowest thou not that it is dangerous to drive people to despair? 2 Kings 2/26.

Q. 365.

What is forbidden by the fourth Commandment?

The fourth Commandment forbids all disobedience, contempt, and stubbornness towards our parents or lawful superiors.

He said: Cursed be Chanaan. Gen. 9/25.

And the angel of the Lord said to her: Return to thy mistress, and humble thyself under her hand. Gen. 16/9.

He that striketh his father or mother, shall be put to death. Exod. 21/15.

He that curseth his father, or mother, shall die the death. Exod. 21/17; Prov. 20/20; Mark 7/10.

Cursed be he that honoureth not his father and mother. Deut. 27/16.

He that afflicteth his father, and chaseth away his mother, is infamous and unhappy. Prov. 19/26.

The eye that mocketh at his father, and that despiseth the labour of his mother in bearing him, let the ravens of the brooks pick it out, and the young eagles eat it. Prov. 30/17.

Glory not in the dishonour of thy father: for his shame is no glory to thee. Eccus. 3/12.

I have brought up children, and exalted them: but they have despised me. Isai. 1/2.

Q. 366.

What is the fifth Commandment?

The fifth Commandment is: Thou shalt not kill. (Exod. 20/13; Deut. 5/17; Matt. 5/21; Rom. 13/9; James 2/11.)

Cain rose up against his brother Abel, and slew him. Gen. 4/8.

Whosoever shall shed man's blood, his blood shall be shed. Gen. 9/6.

He that striketh his bond-man, or bond-woman, with a rod, and they die under his hands, shall be guilty of the crime. Exod. 21/20.

He that killeth his neighbour ignorantly . . . shall flee to one of the cities aforesaid and live. Deut. 19/4, 5.

And David prevailed over the Philistine. 1 Kings 17/50.

Deliver me from blood. Ps. 50/16.

Bloody and deceitful men shall not live out half their days. Ps. 54/24.

The bread of the needy, is the life of the poor: he that defraudeth them thereof, is a man of blood. Eccus. 34/25.

He that sheddeth blood, and he that defraudeth the labourer of his hire, are brothers. Eccus. 34/27.

Put up thy sword into the scabbard. John 18/11.

If a thief be found breaking open a house or undermining it, and be wounded so as to die: he that slew him shall not be guilty of blood. Exod. 22/2.

The innocent and just person thou shalt not put to death. Exod. 23/7; Dan. 13/53.

Cursed be he that secretly killeth his neighbour. Deut. 27/24.

Wo unto them, for they have gone in the way of Cain. Jude 1/11.

Q. 367.

What are we commanded by the fifth Commandment?

We are commanded by the fifth Commandment to live in peace and union (Philip. 1/27) **with our neighbor, to respect his rights, to seek his spiritual and bodily welfare, and to take proper care of our own life and health.**

(See 59, ANGER.)

Seek after peace, and pursue it. Ps. 33/15.

If it be possible, as much as is in you, having peace with all men. Rom. 12/18.

Behold, how good and how pleasant it is for brethren to dwell together in unity. Ps. 132/1.

Thou shalt not hate thy brother in thy heart, but reprove him openly. Levit. 19/17.

Remember the fear of God, and be not angry with thy neighbour. Eccus. 28/8.

Forgive thy neighbour if he hath hurt thee. Eccus. 28/2.

Remove anger from thy heart. Ecces. 11/10.

Seek not revenge. Levit. 19/18.

Remember thy last things, and let enmity cease. Eccus. 28/6.

Refrain from strife. Eccus. 28/10.

Let nothing be done through contention. Philip. 2/3.

Follow peace with all men. Heb. 12/14.

Blessed are the peace-makers. Matt. 5/9.

Love your enemies. Matt. 5/44; Luke 6/27.

The love of our neighbour worketh no evil. Rom. 13/10.

He that loveth not his brother, whom he seeth, how can he love God, whom he seeth not? 1 John 4/20.

If, therefore, thou offer thy gift at the altar, and there thou remember that thy brother hath any thing against thee: leave there thy offering before the altar, and go first to be reconciled to thy brother: and then coming thou shalt offer thy gift. Matt. 5/23, 24.

It is good not to eat flesh, and not to drink wine, nor any thing whereby thy brother is offended, or scandalized, or made weak. Rom. 14/21.

There is no riches above the riches of the health of the body. Eccus. 30/16.

Seek not death in the error of your life, neither procure ye destruction by the works of your hands. Wis. 1/12.

Q. 368.

What is forbidden by the fifth Commandment?

The fifth Commandment forbids all wilful murder, fighting, anger, hatred, revenge, and bad example.

(See 59, ANGER.)

Whosoever is angry with his brother, shall be in danger of the judgment. Matt. 5/22.

He that shall scandalize one of these little ones that believe in me, it were better for him that a mill-stone should be hanged about his neck, and that he should be drowned in the depth of the sea. Matt. 18/6; Mark 9/41; Luke 17/2.

If any man violate the temple of God; him shall God destroy. 1 Cor. 3/17.

If meat scandalize my brother, I will never eat flesh. 1 Cor. 8/13.

Be without offence to the Jews, and to the Gentiles, and to the church of God. 1 Cor. 10/32.

Let all bitterness, and anger, and indignation, and clamour, . . . be put away from you. Ephes. 4/31.

Let not the sun go down upon your anger. Ephes. 4/26.

But now lay you also all away: anger, indignation, malice. Col. 3/8.

For the anger of man worketh not the justice of God. James 1/20.

Cursed be he that taketh gifts, to slay an innocent person. Deut. 27/25.

Cease from anger, and leave rage. Ps. 36/8.

Anger and fury are both of them abominable. Eccus. 27/33.

If any man say, I love God, and hateth his brother; he is a liar. 1 John 4/20.

Whosoever hateth his brother, is a murderer. 1 John 3/15.

He (the devil) was a murderer from the beginning. John 8/44.

Q. 369.

What is the sixth Commandment?

The sixth Commandment is: Thou shalt not commit adultery. (Exod. 20/14; Deut. 5/18; James 2/11; Rom. 13/9; Matt. 19/18.)

Fly fornication. 1 Cor. 6/18.

Whosoever shall put away his wife, and marry another, committeth adultery against her. Mark 10/11.

Take heed to keep thyself . . . from all fornication. Tob. 4/13; 1 Thess. 4/3.

If a man lie with another man's wife, they shall both die. Deut. 22/22; Levit. 20/10.

There shall be no whore among the daughters of Israel, nor whore-monger among the sons of Israel. Deut. 23/17.

Marriage honourable in all, and the bed undefiled. Heb. 13/4.

Q. 370.

What are we commanded by the sixth Commandment?

We are commanded by the sixth Commandment to be pure in thought and modest in all our looks, words, and actions.

Evil thoughts are an abomination to the Lord: and pure words most beautiful shall be confirmed by him. Prov. 15/26.

Go not after thy lusts, but turn away from thy own will. Eccus. 18/30.

Let not the lusts of the flesh take hold of me. Eccus. 23/6.

You shall teach therefore the children of Israel to take heed of uncleanness. Levit. 15/31.

I made a covenant with my eyes, that I would not so much as think upon a virgin. Job 31/1.

Put away evil from thy flesh. For youth and pleasure are vain. Eccles. 11/10.

Give not the power of thy soul to a woman. Eccus. 9/2.

Look not upon a woman that hath a mind for many: lest thou fall into her snares. Eccus. 9/3.

As for him that is pure, his work is right. Prov. 21/8.

Behold not every body's beauty: and tarry not among women. Eccus. 42/12.

From all appearance of evil refrain yourselves. 1 Thess. 5/22.

Mortify, therefore, your members which are upon the earth. Col. 3/5.

Mind not the deceit of a woman. . . . Her feet go down into death, and her steps go in as far as hell. Prov. 5/2, 5.

I beseech you, therefore, brethren, by the mercy of God, that you present your bodies a living sacrifice, holy, pleasing unto God, your reasonable service. Rom. 12/1.

Q. 371.

What is forbidden by the sixth Commandment?

The sixth Commandment forbids all unchaste freedom with another's wife or husband; also all immodesty with ourselves or others in looks, dress, words, or actions.

And therefore the Lord slew him, because he did a detestable thing. Gen. 38/10.

And Dina the daughter of Lia went out to see the women of that country. Gen. 34/1.

Thou shalt not lie with thy neighbour's wife. Levit. 18/20.

Thou shalt not lie with mankind as with womankind, because it is an abomination. Levit. 18/22 & 20/13.

Thou shalt not copulate with any beast. Levit. 18/23. (See Levit. 20/15, 16; Deut. 27/21.)

If any man commit adultery with the wife of another, . . . let them be put to death. Levit. 20/10; Deut. 22/22.

He that marrieth his brother's wife, doth an unlawful thing. Levit. 20/21.

If any man after marrying the daughter, marry her mother, he hath done a heinous crime. Levit. 20/14.

He that is an adulterer, for the folly of his heart shall destroy his own soul. Prov. 6/32.

Gaze not upon another man's wife. Eccus. 41/27.

Whosoever shall look on a woman to lust after her, hath already committed adultery with her in his heart. Matt. 5/28.

If any man violate the temple of God; him shall God destroy. 1 Cor. 3/17.

Do not err: Neither fornicators, . . . nor adulterers, nor the effeminate, nor liers with mankind, . . . shall possess the kingdom of God. 1 Cor. 6/9, 10. (See Ephes. 5/5.)

Fornication, and all uncleanness, . . . let it not so much as be named among you, as becometh saints: or obscenity, or foolish talking, or scurrility, which is to no purpose. Ephes. 5/3, 4.

Q. 372.

Does the sixth Commandment forbid the reading of bad and immodest books and newspapers?

The sixth Commandment does forbid the reading of bad and immodest books and newspapers.

With the holy, thou wilt be holy; and with the innocent man thou wilt be innocent. Ps. 17/26.

He that toucheth pitch, shall be defiled with it. Eccus. 13/1.

Evil communications corrupt good manners. 1 Cor. 15/33.

From all appearance of evil refrain yourselves. 1 Thess. 5/22.

Cry, cease not, lift up thy voice like a trumpet, and shew my people their wicked doings, and the house of Jacob their sins. Isai. 58/1.

Lesson Thirty-Fourth.

FROM THE SEVENTH TO THE END OF THE TENTH COMMANDMENT.

Q. 373.

What is the seventh Commandment?

The seventh Commandment is: Thou shalt not steal. (Deut. 5/19; Exod. 20/15; Levit. 19/11; Rom. 13/9; Matt. 19/18.)

Better is a little with justice, than great revenues with iniquity. Prov. 16/8.

Substance got in haste shall be diminished: but that which, by little and little, is gathered with the hand, shall increase. Prov. 13/11.

Labour not to be rich. Prov. 23/4.

Better is the poor man walking in his simplicity, than the rich in crooked ways. Prov. 28/6 & 19/1.

He that stealeth any thing from his father, or from his mother: and saith, This is no sin, is the partner of a murderer. Prov. 28/24.

Why do you consume my people, and grind the faces of the poor? saith the Lord, the God of hosts. Isai. 3/15.

Woe to him that buildeth up his house by injustice. Jer. 22/13.

He that stole, let him now steal no more: but rather let him labour, working with his hands the thing which is good. Ephes. 4/28.

That no man overreach, nor circumvent his brother in business. 1 Thess. 4/6.

Thou shalt not have divers weights in thy bag. Deut. 25/13.

Do not any unjust thing in judgment, in rule, in weight, or in measure. Levit. 19/35.

Q. 374.

What are we commanded by the seventh Commandment?

By the seventh Commandment we are commanded to give to all men what belongs to them and to respect their property.

That no man overreach, nor circumvent his brother in business. 1 Thess. 4/6.

If any man hath done any work for thee, immediately pay him his hire, and let not the wages of thy hired servant stay with thee at all. Tob. 4/15.

Lay not up to yourselves treasures on earth: where the rust and moth consume, and where thieves break through and steal. Matt. 6/19.

Because thou art my brother, shalt thou serve me without wages? Tell me what wages thou wilt have. Gen. 29/15.

And they made their life bitter with hard works in clay, and brick, and with all manner of service. Exod. 1/14.

The children of Israel groaning, cried out because of the works: and their cry went up unto God from the works. Exod. 2/23 & 3/7.

If thou lend money to any of my people that is poor, that dwelleth with thee, thou shalt not be hard upon them as an extortioner. Exod. 22/25.

The wages of him that hath been hired by thee, shall not abide with thee until the morning. Levit. 19/13; Deut. 24/15.

Let the balance be just, and the weights equal. Levit. 19/36.

Thou shalt not take, nor remove, thy neighbour's landmarks. Deut. 19/14 & 27/17.

Thou shalt not refuse the hire of the needy. Deut. 24/14.

Thou shalt not muzzle the ox that treadeth out thy corn on the floor. Deut. 25/4; 1 Tim. 5/18; 1 Cor. 9/9.

Judge for the needy and fatherless: do justice to the humble and the poor. Ps. 81/3.

Thou shalt eat the labours of thy hands. Ps. 127/2. (See Matt. 10/10.)

Bow down thy ear cheerfully to the poor, and pay what thou owest. Eccus. 4/8.

As the partridge hath hatched eggs which she did not lay: so is he that hath gathered riches, and not by right. Jer. 17/11.

Render, therefore, to Cæsar the things that are Cæsar's: and to God, the things that are God's. Matt. 22/21; Mark 12/17; Luke 20/25.

Render, therefore, to all men their dues. Rom. 13/7.

Owe no man any thing. Rom. 13/8.

Do your own business, and work with your own hands. 1 Thess. 4/11.

If any man will not work, neither let him eat. 2 Thess. 3/10.

When thou shalt sell any thing to thy neighbour, or shalt buy of him, grieve not thy brother. Levit. 25/14.

Thou shalt have a just and a true weight, and thy bushel shall be equal and true. Deut. 25/15.

Some distribute their own goods, and grow richer: others take away what is not their own, and are always in want. Prov. 11/24.

Behold the hire of the labourers, who have reaped down your fields, which by fraud has been kept back by you, crieth. James 5/4.

Q. 375.

What is forbidden by the seventh Commandment?

The seventh Commandment forbids all unjust taking or keeping what belongs to another.

Thou shalt not do that which is unjust, nor judge unjustly. Respect not the person of the poor, nor honour the countenance of the mighty. But judge thy neighbour according to justice. Levit. 19/15. (See Deut. 16/20.)

Neither shalt thou take bribes, which even blind the wise, and pervert the words of the just. Exod. 23/8; Deut. 16/19.

Presents and gifts blind the eyes of judges, and make them dumb in the mouth. Eccus. 20/31.

Thou shalt not take the nether, nor the upper millstone to pledge. Deut. 24/6.

Thou shalt not have divers weights in thy bag. Deut. 25/13. (See Micheas 6/11.)

My little finger is thicker than the loins of my father. 2 Paral. 10/10. (See 2 Esdras 5/15.)

They have violently robbed the fatherless, and stript the poor common people. Job 24/9. (See Job 24/2; Ps. 9/19.)

A deceitful balance is an abomination before the Lord. Prov. 11/1 & 20/10 & 20/23. (See Ezech. 45/10.)

Riches shall not profit in the day of revenge. Prov. 11/4 & 10/2.

He that trusteth in his riches shall fall: but the just shall spring up as a green leaf. Prov. 11/28.

O princes of Israel: cease from iniquity and robberies, and execute judgment and justice. Ezech. 45/9.

The rich man hath done wrong, and yet he will fume: but the poor is wronged, and must hold his peace. Eccus. 13/4.

But you have dishonoured the poor man. Do not the rich oppress you by might . . . ? James 2/6.

Touch not the bounds of little ones: and enter not into the field of the fatherless. Prov. 23/10.

Wo to you that are wealthy in Sion. Amos 6/1. (See Luke 6/24.)

Substance got in haste shall be diminished. Prov. 13/11.

The robberies of the wicked shall be their downfall. Prov. 21/7.

Wo to him that heapeth together that which is not his own. Habac. 2/6.

The bread of the needy, is the life of the poor: he that defraudeth them thereof, is a man of blood. Eccus. 34/25.

For what doth it profit a man, if he gain the whole world, and suffer the loss of his own soul? Matt. 16/26; Mark 8/36; Luke 9/25.

Q. 376.

Are we bound to restore ill-gotten goods?

We are bound to restore ill-gotten goods, or the value of them, as far as we are able; otherwise we cannot be forgiven.

If that which he stole be found with him, . . . he shall restore double. Exod. 22/4.

He shall restore all that he would have gotten by fraud, in the principal, and the fifth part besides to the owner whom he wronged. Levit. 6/4, 5.

They shall confess their sins, and restore the principal itself, and the fifth part over and above, to him against whom they have sinned. Num. 5/7.

He that gathereth treasures by a lying tongue, is vain and foolish, and shall stumble upon the snares of death. Prov. 21/6.

The robberies of the wicked shall be their downfall. Prov. 21/7.

A huckster shall not be justified from the sins of the lips. Eccus. 26/28.

Shall I justify wicked balances, and the deceitful weights of the bag? by which her rich men were filled with iniquity. Micheas 6/11, 12.

Go to now, ye rich men, weep and howl in your miseries, which shall come upon you. James 5/1.

The beginning of a good way is to do justice: and this is more acceptable with God than to offer sacrifices. Prov. 16/5.

Q. 377.

Are we obliged to repair the damage we have unjustly caused?
We are bound to repair the damage we have unjustly caused.

If any man steal an ox or a sheep, and kill or sell it: he shall restore five oxen for one ox. Exod. 22/1.

If any man hurt a field or a vineyard, and put in his beast to feed upon that which is other men's: he shall restore the best of whatsoever he hath in his own field, or in his vineyard, according to the estimation of the damage. Exod. 22/5.

He shall make the loss good to the owner. Exod. 22/12.

He that killeth a beast, shall make it good, that is to say, shall give beast for beast. Levit. 24/18.

Let the golden and silver vessels of the temple of God, which Nabuchodonosor took out of the temple of Jerusalem, and brought to Babylon, be restored, and carried back to the temple of Jerusalem to their place. 1 Esdras 6/5.

He shall restore sevenfold. Prov. 6/31.

He that oppresseth the poor, to increase his own riches, shall himself give to one that is richer, and shall be in need. Prov. 22/16.

If that wicked man restore the pledge, and render what he had robbed, and walk in the commandments of life, and do no unjust thing: he shall surely live, and shall not die. Ezech. 33/15.

But Zacheus standing, said to the Lord: Behold, Lord, the half of my goods I give to the poor: and if I have wronged any man of any thing, I restore him four-fold. Luke 19/8.

Q. 378.

What is the eighth Commandment?

The eighth Commandment is: Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbor. (Exod. 20/16; Deut. 5/20; Rom. 13/9.)

You shall not lie, neither shall any man deceive his neighbour. Levit. 19/11.

Thou shalt not calumniate thy neighbour. Levit. 19/13.

The Hebrew servant (Joseph), whom thou hast brought, came to me to abuse me. Gen. 39/17.

Instead of making me a return of love, they detracted me. Ps. 108/4.

When, after most diligent inquisition, they shall find that the false witness hath told a lie against his brother: they shall render to him as he meant to do to his brother. Deut. 19/18, 19. (See Dan. 13/61, 62.)

And bringing two men, sons of the devil, they made them sit against him: and they, like men of the devil, bore witness against him before the people. 3 Kings 21/13.

They have spoken vain things, every one to his neighbour: with deceitful lips, and with a double heart have they spoken. Ps. 11/3.

Six things there are, which the Lord hateth, . . . a lying tongue, . . . a deceitful witness that uttereth lies, and him that soweth discord among brethren. Prov. 6/16-19.

He that justifieth the wicked, and he that condemneth the just, both are abominable before God. Prov. 17/15. (See Isai. 5/23.)

A lying witness shall perish. Prov. 21/28.

He that keepeth his mouth and his tongue, keepeth his soul from distress. Prov. 21/23.

For thy conscience knoweth, that thou also hast often spoken evil of others. Eccles. 7/23.

Thou shalt fly lying. Exod. 23/7.

A false witness shall not be unpunished: and he that speaketh lies shall not escape. Prov. 19/5 & 19/9.

Q. 379.

What are we commanded by the eighth Commandment?

We are commanded by the eighth Commandment to speak the truth in all things, and to be careful of the honor and reputation of every one.

Thou shalt fly lying. Exod. 23/7.

A man full of tongue shall not be established in the earth. Ps. 139/12.

Thou shalt not receive the voice of a lie: neither shalt thou join thy hand to bear false witness for a wicked person. Exod. 23/1.

A faithful witness will not lie: but a deceitful witness uttereth a lie. Prov. 14/5.

A man that is an apostate, . . . walketh with a perverse mouth, . . . With a wicked heart he deviseth evil, and at all times he soweth discord. Prov. 6/12, 14.

In the multitude of words there shall not want sin. Prov. 10/19.

A good name is better than great riches. Prov. 22/1.

A good name is better than precious ointments. Eccles. 7/2.

If a serpent bite in silence, he is nothing better that backbiteth secretly. Eccles. 10/11.

Keep yourselves, therefore, from murmuring, which profiteth nothing, and refrain your tongue from detraction, for an obscure speech shall not go for nought: and the mouth that belieth, killeth the soul. Wis. 1/11.

Detract not one another, my brethren. He that detracteth his brother, or he that judgeth his brother, detracteth the law, and judgeth the law. James 4/11.

Devise not a lie against thy brother: neither do the like against thy friend. Eccus. 7/13.

Judge not, that you may not be judged. Matt. 7/1; Luke 6/37. (See Rom. 2/1.)

Why seest thou the mote that is in thy brother's eye; and seest not the beam that is in thy own eye? Matt. 7/3.

Judge not according to the appearance. John 7/24.

The just shall hate a lying word. Prov. 13/5.

Wherefore putting away lying. Ephes. 4/25.

Be not willing to make any manner of lie: for the custom thereof is not good. Eccus. 7/14.

Lie not one to another. Col. 3/9. (See Col. 4/6.)

He that speaketh unjust things cannot be hid, neither shall the chastising judgment pass him by. Wis. 1/8.

Wherefore laying away all malice, and all guile, and dissimulations, . . . and all detractions. 1 Pet. 2/1.

Remove from thee a froward mouth, and let detracting lips be far from thee. Prov. 4/24.

Take care of a good name: for this shall continue with thee, more than a thousand treasures precious and great. Eccus. 41/15.

A perverse man stirreth up quarrels: and one full of words separateth princes. Prov. 16/28.

You shall not lie, neither shall any man deceive his neighbour. Levit. 19/11. (See Levit. 19/12 *et seq.*)

A lie is a foul blot in a man. Eccus. 20/26.

He (the devil) is a liar, and the father thereof. John 8/44.

The manners of lying men are without honour. Eccus. 20/28.

The detracter is the abomination of men. Prov. 24/9.

Have nothing to do with detracters. Prov. 24/21.

Q. 380.

What is forbidden by the eighth Commandment?

The eighth Commandment forbids all rash judgments, backbiting, slanders, and lies.

Many . . . have perished by their own tongue. Eccus. 28/22.

The stroke of the tongue will break the bones. Eccus. 28/21.

Take heed lest thou slip with thy tongue. Eccus. 28/30.

A thief is better than a man that is always lying. Eccus. 20/27.

Be not witness without cause against thy neighbour: and deceive not any man with thy lips. Prov. 24/28.

The talebearer shall defile his own soul, and shall be hated by all. Eccus. 21/31.

Hast thou heard a word against thy neighbour? let it die within thee, trusting that it will not burst thee. Eccus. 19/10.

Believe not every word. There is one that slippeth with the tongue, but not from his heart. For who is there that hath not offended with his tongue? Eccus. 19/16, 17.

Remove from thee a froward mouth, and let detracting lips be far from thee. Prov. 4/24.

He that trusteth to lies feedeth the winds. Prov. 10/4.

The lip of truth shall be steadfast for ever: but he that is a hasty witness, frameth a lying tongue. Prov. 12/19.

Lying lips are an abomination to the Lord. Prov. 12/22.

Speak not any thing rashly, and let not thy heart be hasty to utter a word before God. Eccles. 5/1.

When the wood faileth, the fire shall go out: and when the tale-bearer is taken away, contention shall cease. Prov. 26/20.

Thou shalt not speak evil of the deaf. Levit. 19/14.

Thou shalt not be a detracter nor a whisperer among the people. Levit. 19/16.

The man that in private detracted his neighbour, him did I persecute. Ps. 100/5.

Hath God any need of your lie, that you should speak deceitfully for him? Job 13/7.

Why do you love vanity, and seek after lying? Ps. 4/3.

Thou wilt destroy all that speak a lie. Ps. 5/7.

And they loved him with their mouth: and with their tongue they lied upon him. Ps. 77/36.

They blessed with their mouth, but cursed with their heart. Ps. 61/5.

He that is without sin among you, let him first cast a stone at her. John 8/7.

Judge not, and you shall not be judged. Luke 6/37; Matt. 7/1.

Out of the abundance of the heart the mouth speaketh. Luke 6/45.

John the Baptist came neither eating bread nor drinking wine; and you say: He hath a devil. Luke 7/33.

Who art thou that judgest another man's servant? Rom. 14/4.

Who art thou that judgest thy neighbour? James 4/13.

Detract not one another, my brethren. James 4/11.

If any man offend not in word, the same is a perfect man. James 3/2.

By thy words thou shalt be justified, and by thy words thou shalt be condemned. Matt. 12/37.

Q. 381.

What must they do who have lied about their neighbor and seriously injured his character?

They who have lied about their neighbor and seriously injured his character must repair the injury done as far as they are able, otherwise they will not be forgiven.

A false witness shall not be unpunished: and he that speaketh lies shall not escape. Prov. 19/5. (See Prov. 19/9.)

The things which thy eyes have seen, utter not hastily in a quarrel: lest afterward thou mayst not be able to make amends, when thou hast dishonoured thy friend. Prov. 25/8.

If, therefore, thou offer thy gift at the altar, and there thou remember that thy brother hath any thing against thee: leave there thy offering before the altar, and go first to be reconciled to thy brother: and then coming thou shalt offer thy gift. Matt. 5/23, 24.

Q. 382.

What is the ninth Commandment?

The ninth Commandment is: Thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's wife. (Exod. 20/17; Deut. 5/21.) (See 2 Kings 11/12.)

(See 59, LUST.)

Gaze not upon another man's wife. Eccus. 41/27.

Whosoever shall look on a woman to lust after her, hath already committed adultery with her in his heart. Matt. 5/28. (See 1 Pet. 2/11.)

O thou seed of Chanaan, and not of Juda, beauty hath deceived thee, and lust hath perverted thy heart. Dan. 13/56.

Let not thy mind be drawn away in her ways: . . . Her house is the way to hell. Prov. 7/25, 27.

Rejoice with the wife of thy youth: . . . Why art thou seduced . . . by a strange woman . . . ? Prov. 5/18, 20.

Dearly beloved, I beseech you as strangers and pilgrims, to refrain yourselves from carnal desires, which war against the soul. 1 Pet. 2/11.

Q. 383.

What are we commanded by the ninth Commandment?

We are commanded by the ninth Commandment to keep ourselves pure in thought and desire.

With all watchfulness keep thy heart, because life issueth out from it. Prov. 4/23.

That thou mayst keep thoughts . . . Mind not the deceit of a woman. Prov. 5/2.

Put ye on the Lord Jesus Christ, and make not provision for the flesh in its concupiscenses. Rom. 13/14.

Walk in the Spirit, and you shall not fulfil the lusts of the flesh. Gal. 5/16.

Q. 384.

What is forbidden by the ninth Commandment?

The ninth Commandment forbids unchaste thoughts, desires of another's wife or husband, and all other unlawful impure thoughts and desires.

And the king sent, and inquired who the woman was. And it was told him, that she was Bethsabee, the daughter of Eliam, the wife of Urias. 2 Kings 11/3.

Then Amnon hated her with an exceeding great hatred: so that the hatred wherewith he hated her, was greater than the love with which he had loved her before. 2 Kings 13/15.

Let not thy heart covet her beauty, be not caught with her winks. Prov. 6/25.

Whosoever shall look on a woman to lust after her, hath already committed adultery with her in his heart. Matt. 5/28.

Favour is deceitful, and beauty is vain. Prov. 31/30.

Many, by admiring the beauty of another man's wife, have become reprobate, for her conversation burneth as fire. Eccus. 9/11.

And they perverted their own mind, and turned away their eyes, that they might not look unto heaven. Dan. 31/9.

The Lord knoweth how . . . to reserve the unjust unto the day of judgment to be tormented: and especially them who walk after the flesh in the lust of uncleanness. 2 Pet. 2/9, 10.

Q. 385.

Are impure thoughts and desires always sins?

Impure thoughts and desires are always sins, unless they displease us and we try to banish them.

(See 185, 6th; 186.)

Evil thoughts are an abomination to the Lord. Prov. 15/26.

An evil man, out of the evil treasure (of his heart), bringeth forth that which is evil. Luke 6/45.

For from the heart come forth evil thoughts, . . . adulteries, fornications, . . . These are the things that defile a man. Matt. 15/19, 20; Mark 7/21, 23.

For the imagination and thought of man's heart are prone to evil from his youth. Gen. 8/21 & 6/5.

I made a covenant with my eyes, that I would not so much as think upon a virgin. Job 31/1.

For which thing thrice I besought the Lord, that it might depart from me: . . . My grace is sufficient for thee. 2 Cor. 12/8, 9.

The sorrows of hell encompassed me: and the snares of death prevented me. In my affliction I called upon the Lord. Ps. 17/6, 7.

And as I knew that I could not otherwise be continent, except God gave it, and this also was a point of wisdom, to know whose gift it was: I went to the Lord, and besought him, and said with my whole heart. Wis. 8/21.

Dearly beloved, I beseech you . . . to refrain yourselves from carnal desires, which war against the soul. 1 Pet. 2/11.

Q. 386.

What is the tenth Commandment?

The tenth Commandment is: Thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's goods. (Exod. 20/17; Deut. 5/21.)

(See 59, COVETOUSNESS.)

The desire of money is the root of all evils. 1 Tim. 6/10.

Trust not in iniquity, and cover not robberies: if riches abound, set not your heart upon them. Ps. 61/11.

Incline my heart unto thy testimonies, and not to covetousness. Ps. 118/36.

The ways of every covetous man destroy the souls of the possessors. Prov. 1/19.

There is also another grievous evil which I have seen under the sun: riches kept to the hurt of the owner. Eccles. 5/12.

Be not anxious for goods unjustly gotten: for they shall not profit thee in the day of calamity and revenge. Eccus. 5/10.

Envy not the glory and riches of a sinner: for thou knowest not what his ruin shall be. Eccus. 9/16. (See Judges 9/4; 2 Kings 15/10.)

But nothing is more wicked than the covetous man. Eccus. 10/9.

Better is a little to the just, than the great riches of the wicked. Ps. 36/16.

There is covetousness in the head of them all, and I will slay the last of them. Amos 9/1.

Riches are not comely for a covetous man and a niggard, and what should an envious man do with gold? Eccus. 14/3.

Wo to him that gathereth together an evil covetousness to his house, that his nest may be on high, and thinketh he may be delivered out of the hand of evil. Habac. 2/9.

He that is greedy of gain troubleth his own house. Prov. 15/27.

Yea, and they have counted our life a pastime, and the business of life to be gain, and that we must be getting every way, even out of evil. Wis. 15/12.

Blessed is the rich man that is found without blemish: and that hath not gone after gold, nor put his trust in money nor in treasures. Eccus. 31/8.

A covetous man shall not be satisfied with money: and he that loveth riches, shall reap no fruit from them. Eccles. 5/9.

Better is a child that is poor and wise, than a king that is old and foolish. Eccles. 4/13.

You shall not make gods of silver, nor shall you make to yourselves gods of gold. Exod. 20/23.

He that hateth covetousness shall prolong his days. Prov. 28/16.

For what shall it profit a man, if he gain the whole world, and suffer the loss of his soul? Mark 8/36; Matt. 16/26; Luke 9/25.

Q. 387.

What are we commanded by the tenth Commandment?

By the tenth Commandment we are commanded to be content with what we have, and to rejoice in our neighbor's welfare.

If I have thought gold my strength, and have said to fine gold: My confidence . . . Which is a very great iniquity. Job 31/24, 28.

Naked came I out of my mother's womb, and naked shall I return thither: the Lord gave, and the Lord hath taken away. Job 1/21; Eccs. 5/14.

Cast thy care upon the Lord, and he shall sustain thee. Ps. 54/23; 1 Pet. 5/7.

Be not solicitous for your life, what you shall eat, nor for your body, what you shall put on. Matt. 6/25; Luke 12/22.

Take heed and beware of all covetousness. Luke 12/15.

Be nothing solicitous. Philip. 4/6.

Having food, and wherewith to be covered, with these we are content. For they that will become rich, fall into temptation, and into the snare of the devil. 1 Tim. 6/8, 9.

Let not thy hand be stretched out to receive, and shut when thou shouldst give. Eccus. 4/36.

Lay not up to yourselves treasures on earth: where the rust and moth consume, and where thieves break through and steal. Matt. 6/19.

Let your manners be without covetousness, contented with such things as you have. Heb. 13/5.

Watching for riches consumeth the flesh. Eccus. 31/1.

Thou fool, this night do they require thy soul of thee; and whose shall those things be which thou hast provided? Luke 12/20.

Q. 388.

What is forbidden by the tenth Commandment?

The tenth Commandment forbids all desires to take or keep wrongfully what belongs to another.

(See 386; 59, COVETOUSNESS.)

Many have looked upon a thing lent as a thing found, and have given trouble to them that helped them. Eccus. 29/4.

You shall not make gods of silver, nor shall you make to yourselves gods of gold. Exod. 20/23.

Some distribute their own goods, and grow richer: others take away what is not their own, and are always in want. Prov. 11/24.

Wo to you that join house to house, and lay field to field. Isai. 5/8.

Trust not in iniquity, and cover not robberies: if riches abound, set not your heart upon them. Ps. 61/11.

Why was not this ointment sold for three hundred pence, and given to the poor? John 12/5.

Keep thy money to thyself to perish with thee, because thou hast thought that the gift of God may be purchased with money. Acts 8/20.

Take heed and beware of all covetousness: for a man's life doth not consist in the abundance of things which he possesseth. Luke 12/15.

Lift not up thy eyes to riches which thou canst not have: because they shall make themselves wings, like those of an eagle, and shall fly towards heaven. Prov. 23/5.

Turn away from me all coveting. Eccus. 23/5.

Lesson Thirty-Fifth.

ON THE FIRST AND SECOND COMMANDMENTS OF THE CHURCH.

Q. 389.

Which are the chief commandments of the Church?
The chief commandments of the Church are six:

1. **To hear Mass on Sundays and holydays of obligation.**

See that thou keep my sabbath: because it is a sign between me and you in your generations. Exod. 31/13. (See Ezech. 20/12.)

2. **To fast and abstain on the days appointed.**

But the days will come, when the bridegroom shall be taken away from them, and then they shall fast. Matt. 9/15; Mark 2/20; Luke 5/35.

3. **To confess at least once a year.**

Confess, therefore, your sins one to another. James 5/16.

4. **To receive the Holy Eucharist during the Easter time.**

Except you eat the flesh of the Son of Man, and drink his blood, you shall not have life in you. John 6/54.

5. **To contribute to the support of our pastors.**

So also the Lord ordained that they who preach the gospel, should live by the gospel. 1 Cor. 9/14.

6. **Not to marry persons who are not Catholics, or who are related to us within the fourth degree of kindred, nor privately without witnesses, nor to solemnize marriage at forbidden times.**

Bear not the yoke with unbelievers. 2 Cor. 6/14.

For we are the children of saints, and we must not be joined together like heathens that know not God. Tob. 8/5.

. . . . . .

Now I praise you, brethren, that in all things you are mindful of me; and keep my ordinances as I have delivered them to you. 1 Cor. 11/2.

Q. 390.

Is it a mortal sin not to hear Mass on a Sunday or a holyday of obligation?

It is a mortal sin not to hear Mass on a Sunday or a holyday of obligation, unless we are excused for a serious reason. They also commit a mortal sin who, having others under their charge, hinder them from hearing Mass, without a sufficient reason.

(See 353 *et seq.*)

Keep you my sabbath: for it is holy unto you: he that shall profane it, shall be put to death. Exod. 31/14.

Keep ye my sabbaths, and reverence my sanctuary. Levit. 19/30.

If any man have not care of his own, and especially of those of his house, he hath denied the faith, and is worse than an infidel. 1 Tim. 5/8.

Q. 391.

Why were holydays instituted by the Church?

Holydays were instituted by the Church to recall to our minds the great mysteries of religion and the virtues and rewards of the saints.

(See 354.)

Bless ye the Lord, all his elect, keep days of joy, and give glory to him. Tob. 13/10.

He that regardeth the day, regardeth it unto the Lord. Rom. 14/6.

Let us now praise men of renown, and our fathers in their generation. Eccus. 44/1.

Nations shall declare his wisdom, and the church shall shew forth his praise. Eccus. 39/14.

This day shall be for a memorial to you. Exod. 12/14.

The day of the festivity of this victory is received by the Hebrews in the number of holy days. Judith 16/31.

And to the festivals he added beauty, and set in order the solemn times, . . . that they should praise the holy name of the Lord, and magnify the holiness of God in the morning. Eccus. 47/12.

They said in their heart, the whole kindred of them together: Let us abolish all the festival days of God from the land. Ps. 73/8.

Thus did this man die, leaving, not only to young men, but also to the whole nation, the memory of his death, for an example of virtue and fortitude. 2 Mach. 6/31.

Q. 392.

How should we keep the holydays of obligation?

We should keep the holydays of obligation as we should keep the Sunday.

(See 353-355.)

And you shall call this day most solemn, and most holy. You shall do no servile work therein. Levit. 23/21.

And you shall offer a holocaust to the Lord. Levit. 23/25. (See Levit. 23/27 & 23/34, 35.)

Bring up sacrifices, and come into his courts; adore ye the Lord in his holy court. Ps. 95/8, 9.

Q. 393.

What do you mean by fast-days?

By fast-days I mean days on which we are allowed but one full meal.

(See 221.)

They fasted that day till the evening. Judges 20/26.

I proclaimed there a fast by the river Ahava. 1 Esdras 8/21.

The children of Israel came together with fasting, and with sackcloth, and earth upon them. 2 Esdras 9/1.

Thus saith the Lord of hosts: The fast of the fourth month, and the fast of the fifth, and the fast of the seventh, and the fast of the tenth, shall be to the house of

Juda, joy, and gladness, and great solemnities: only love ye truth and peace. Zach. 8/19.

They . . fasted, and prayed, before the Lord. Baruch 1/5.

Prayer is good with fasting and alms, more than to lay up treasures of gold. Tob. 12/8.

He (Jesus) fasted forty days and forty nights. Matt. 4/2.

Blow the trumpet in Sion, sanctify a fast, call a solemn assembly. Joel 2/15 & 1/14.

And as they were ministering to the Lord, and fasting, the Holy Ghost said to them. Acts 13/2.

You shall afflict your souls. Levit. 16/29 & 23/27; Num. 29/7.

And the men of Ninive believed in God: and they proclaimed a fast, and put on sackcloth, from the greatest to the least. Jonas 3/5. (See Matt. 12/41; Luke 11/32.)

When the bridegroom shall be taken away from them, . . . then they shall fast. Matt. 9/15; Mark 2/20; Luke 5/35.

I (Christ) covered my soul in fasting: and it was made a reproach to me. Ps. 68/11.

And when you fast, be not as the hypocrites, sad. Matt. 6/16.

Q. 394.

What do you mean by days of abstinence?

By days of abstinence I mean days on which we are forbidden to eat flesh-meat, but are allowed the usual number of meals.

You shall not eat any thing leavened: in all your habitations you shall eat unleavened bread. Exod. 12/20.

But of the tree of knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat. Gen. 2/17.

But of the fruit of the tree which is in the midst of paradise, God hath commanded us that we should not eat. Gen. 3/3.

Neither blood nor fat shall you eat at all. Levit. 3/17.

Now, therefore, beware, . . . and eat not any unclean thing. Judges 13/4 & 13/14.

Destroy not the work of God for meat. All things indeed are clean: but it is evil for that man who eateth with offence. Rom. 14/20.

You shall not eat the blood of any flesh at all. Levit. 17/14.

I cannot eat of these things which thou commandest to be given me, lest sin come upon me. Judith 12/2.

Abstain from things sacrificed to idols, and from blood, and from things strangled. Acts 15/29.

Q. 395.

Why does the Church command us to fast and abstain?

The Church commands us to fast and abstain, in order that we may mortify our passions and satisfy for our sins.

If any man will come after me, let him deny himself, and take up his cross, and follow me. Matt. 16/24; Luke 9/23.

When he had fasted forty days and forty nights. Matt. 4/2.

But the days will come, when the bridegroom shall be taken away from them, and then they shall fast. Matt. 9/15; Mark 2/20; Luke 5/35.

They that are Christ's, have crucified their flesh. Gal. 5/24.

Sanctify ye a fast. Joel 1/14 & 2/15.

I have put off the robe of peace, and have put upon me the sackcloth of supplication, and I will cry to the most High in my days. Baruch 4/20.

I chastise my body, and bring it into subjection: lest . . . I myself should become a castaway. 1 Cor. 9/27.

This kind (of devil) is not cast out but by prayer and fasting. Matt. 17/20.

If by the spirit you mortify the deeds of the flesh, you shall live. Rom. 8/13.

Mortify, therefore, your members which are upon the earth. Col. 3/5.

Always bearing about in our body the mortification of Jesus, that the life also of Jesus may be made manifest in our bodies. 2 Cor. 4/10.

That you present your bodies a living sacrifice, holy, pleasing unto God, your reasonable service. Rom. 12/1.

That you may know the differences of the clean, and the unclean, and know what you ought to eat, and what to refuse. Levit. 11/47.

I humbled my soul with fasting. Ps. 34/13.

A man that fasteth for his sins, and doth the same again, what doth his humbling himself profit him? Eccus. 34/31.

A wise heart, and which hath understanding, will abstain from sins, and in the works of justice shall have success. Eccus. 3/32.

Q. 396.

Why does the Church command us to abstain from flesh-meat on Fridays?

The Church commands us to abstain from flesh-meat on Fridays, in honor of the day on which our Saviour died.

(See 79.)

And it was the day of the Parasceve. Luke 23/54; Mark 15/42; John 19/31.

He that regardeth the day, regardeth it unto the Lord. Rom. 14/6.

And he that eateth not, to the Lord he eateth not, and giveth thanks to God. Rom. 14/6.

And he that discerneth, if he eat, is condemned; because not of faith. For all that is not of faith is sin. Rom. 14/23.

Neither blood nor fat shall you eat at all. Levit 3/17.

You shall not eat any thing leavened. Exod. 12/20.

Prayer is good with fasting and alms, more than to lay up treasures of gold. Tob. 12/8.

When the bridegroom shall be taken away from them, . . . then they shall fast. Matt. 9/15.

Lesson Thirty-Sixth.

ON THE THIRD, FOURTH, FIFTH, AND SIXTH COMMANDMENTS OF THE CHURCH.

Q. 397.

What is meant by the command of confessing at least once a year?

By the command of confessing at least once a year is meant that we are obliged, under pain of mortal sin, to go to confession within the year.

(See 191, 4th; 208.)

This shall be an ordinance for ever, that you pray for the children of Israel, and for all their sins once in a year. Levit. 16/34.

And putting both hands upon his head, let him confess all the iniquities of the children of Israel, and all their offences and sins. Levit. 16/21.

For there is no one in death that is mindful of thee: and who shall confess to thee in hell? Ps. 6/6. (See Isai. 38/15.)

If we would judge ourselves, we should not be judged. 1 Cor. 11/31.

He that keepeth the commandment, keepeth his own soul: but he that neglecteth his own way, shall die. Prov. 19/16.

Q. 398.

Should we confess only once a year?

We should confess frequently, if we wish to lead a good life.

Let us go, therefore, with confidence to the throne of grace: that we may obtain mercy, and find grace in seasonable aid. Heb. 4/16.

Wash me yet more from my iniquity, and cleanse me from my sin. Ps. 50/4.

Delay not to be converted to the Lord, and defer it not from day to day. Eccus. 5/8.

He that keepeth his soul keepeth his way. Prov. 16/17.

He that is good, shall draw grace from the Lord. Prov. 12/2.

A faithful friend is the medicine of life and immortality: and they that fear the Lord shall find him. Eccus. 6/16.

A sinful man will flee reproof, and will find an excuse according to his will. Eccus. 32/21.

Q. 399.

Should children go to confession?

Children should go to confession when they are old enough to commit sin, which is commonly about the age of seven years.

Suffer the little children to come unto me, and forbid them not. Mark 10/14; Matt. 19/14.

He that feareth the Lord, will receive his discipline: and they that seek him early, shall find a blessing. Eccus. 32/18.

Out of the mouth of infants and of sucklings thou hast perfected praise. Ps. 8/3.

A young man according to his way, even when he is old he will not depart from it. Prov. 22/6.

Remember thy Creator in the days of thy youth, before the time of affliction come. Eccles. 12/1.

Q. 400.

What sin does he commit who neglects to receive Communion during the Easter time?

He who neglects to receive Communion during the Easter time commits a mortal sin.

If any man . . . did not make the phase, that soul shall be cut off from among his people. Num. 9/13.

Except you eat the flesh of the Son of Man, and drink his blood, you shall not have life in you. John 6/54.

Whosoever shall eat this bread, or drink the chalice of the Lord unworthily, shall be guilty of the body and of the blood of the Lord. 1 Cor. 11/27.

I am smitten as grass, and my heart is withered: because I forgot to eat my bread. Ps. 101/5.

Q. 401.

What is the Easter time?

The Easter time is, in this country, the time between the first Sunday of Lent and Trinity Sunday.

Let the children of Israel make the phase in its due time. Num. 9/2.

And we helping do exhort you, that you receive not the grace of God in vain. For he saith: In an accepted time have I heard thee; and in the day of salvation have I helped thee. 2 Cor. 6/1, 2.

Behold, now is the acceptable time: behold, now is the day of salvation. 2 Cor. 6/2.

Q. 402.

Are we obliged to contribute to the support of our pastors?

We are obliged to contribute to the support of our pastors, and to bear our share in the expenses of the Church and school.

Moses's hands were heavy: . . . and Aaron and Hur stayed up his hands on both sides. Exod. 17/12.

Half a sicle shall be offered to the Lord. He that is counted in the number from twenty years and upwards, shall give the price. Exod. 30/13, 14.

All, both men and women, with devout mind, offered gifts, that the works might be done which the Lord had commanded by the hand of Moses. All the children of Israel dedicated voluntary offerings to the Lord. Exod. 35/29.

No one shall appear with his hands empty before the Lord. Deut. 16/16; Exod. 23/15 & 34/20; Eccus. 35/6.

Every one shall offer according to what he hath. Deut. 16/17.

Give to the Most High according to what he hath given

to thee, and with a good eye do according to the ability of thy hands. Eccus. 35/12.

Dost thou see that I dwell in a house of cedar, and the ark of God is lodged within skins? 2 Kings 7/2.

I say to you, that this poor widow hath cast in more than they all. Luke 21/3.

All the princes, and all the people, rejoiced: and going in, they contributed, and cast so much into the chest of the Lord, that it was filled. 2 Paral. 24/10.

Honour the Lord with thy substance, and give him of the first of all thy fruits. Prov. 3/9.

Thou shalt not muzzle the ox that treadeth out thy corn on the floor. Deut. 25/4; 1 Cor. 9/9; 1 Tim. 5/18.

Who feedeth a flock, and eateth not of the milk of the flock? 1 Cor. 9/7.

If we have sown unto you spiritual things, is it a great matter if we reap your carnal things? 1 Cor. 9/11. (See Rom. 15/27.)

And let him that is instructed in the word, communicate to him, that instructeth him, in all good things. Gal. 6/6.

He who soweth sparingly, shall also reap sparingly. 2 Cor. 9/6.

They that serve the altar, partake with the altar? 1 Cor. 9/13.

So also the Lord ordained that they who preach the gospel, should live by the gospel. 1 Cor. 9/14.

Now concerning the collections that are made for the saints, as I have given order to the churches at Galatia, so do ye also. 1 Cor. 16/1.

God loveth a cheerful giver. 2 Cor. 9/7. (See Eccus. 35/11.)

The labourer is worthy of his reward. 1 Tim. 5/18; Matt. 10/10; Luke 10/7.

The priest that offereth the victim of holocaust, shall have the skin thereof. Levit. 7/8.

He sent twelve thousand drachms of silver to Jerusalem for sacrifice. 2 Mach. 12/43.

And king Joas called Joiada, the high priest, and the priests, saying to them: Why do you not repair the temple? 4 Kings 12/7.

And the people rejoiced, when they promised their offerings willingly. 1 Paral. 29/9.

The people offereth more than is necessary. Exod. 36/5. (Statement of costs: Exod. 38/24.)

Q. 403.

What is the meaning of the commandment not to marry within the fourth degree of kindred?

The meaning of the commandment not to marry within the fourth degree of kindred is that no one is allowed to marry another within the fourth degree of blood relationship.

No one shall approach to her that is near of kin to him. Levit. 18/6.

He that marrieth his brother's wife, doth an unlawful thing. Levit. 20/21.

It is not lawful for thee to have her. Matt. 14/4.

Q. 404.

What is the meaning of the command not to marry privately?

The command not to marry privately means that none should marry without the blessing of God's priests or without witnesses.

For we are the children of saints, and we must not be joined together like heathens that know not God. Tob. 8/5.

Have no fellowship with the unfruitful works of darkness, but rather reprove them. Ephes. 5/11.

As everlasting foundations upon a solid rock, so the commandments of God in the heart of a holy woman. Eccus. 26/24.

Q. 405.

What is the meaning of the precept not to solemnize marriage at forbidden times?

The meaning of the precept not to solemnize marriage at forbidden times is that during Lent and Advent the marriage ceremony should not be performed with pomp or a nuptial Mass.

All things have their season. Ecces. 3/1.

There is a time and opportunity for every business. Ecces. 8/6.

A time to weep, and a time to laugh. A time to mourn, and a time to dance. Eccles. 3/4.

Blow the trumpet in Sion, sanctify a fast, . . . let the bridegroom go forth from his bed, and the bride out of her bride-chamber. Joel 2/15, 16.

Q. 406.

What is the nuptial Mass?

The nuptial Mass is a Mass appointed by the Church to invoke a special blessing upon the married couple.

May a blessing come upon thy wife, . . . And may you see your children, and your children's children, unto the third and fourth generation: and may your seed be blessed by the God of Israel, who reigneth for ever and ever. Tob. 9/10, 11; Ps. 127/5, 6.

The God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, be with you, and may he join you together, and fulfil his blessing in you. Tob. 7/15.

Q. 407.

Should Catholics be married at a nuptial Mass?

Catholics should be married at a nuptial Mass, because they thereby show greater reverence for the holy Sacrament and bring richer blessings upon their wedded life.

(See 290.)

For we are the children of saints, and we must not be joined together like heathens that know not God. Tob. 8/5.

Walk then as children of the light. For the fruit of the light is in all goodness, and justice, and truth: proving what is well-pleasing to God. Ephes. 5/8-10.

Make straight the path for thy feet, and all thy ways shall be established. Prov. 4/26.

This is a great sacrament. Ephes. 5/32.

Lesson Thirty-Seventh.

ON THE LAST JUDGMENT AND THE RESURRECTION, HELL, PURGATORY, AND HEAVEN

Q. 408.

When will Christ judge us?

Christ will judge us immediately after our death, and on the last day.

(See 12, Art. 7.)

We shall all stand before the judgment-seat of Christ. Rom. 14/10.

But of that day and hour no one knoweth, no, not the angels of heaven, but the Father alone. Matt. 24/36; Mark 13/32.

It is not for you to know the times or moments which the Father hath put in his own power. Acts 1/7.

For as lightning cometh out of the east, and appeareth even into the west: so shall also the coming of the Son of Man be. Matt. 24/27.

As fishes are taken with the hook, . . . so men are taken in the evil time. Ecces. 9/12.

But the day of the Lord shall come as a thief, in which the heavens shall pass away with great violence, and the elements shall be melted with heat, and the earth, and the works which are in it, shall be burnt up. 2 Pet. 3/10.

Watch ye, therefore, because you know not what hour your Lord will come. Matt. 24/42 & 25/13; Mark 13/35. (See Apoc. 3/3.)

Wherefore, be you also ready, because at what hour you know not, the Son of Man will come. Matt. 24/44; Luke 12/40.

In those days, after that tribulation, the sun shall be darkened . . . And then shall they see the Son of Man coming in the clouds, with great power and glory. Mark 13/24, 26.

Behold, the day of the Lord shall come, a cruel day, and full of indignation, and of wrath, and fury. Isai. 13/9.

The Lord standeth up to judge, and he standeth to judge the people. Isai. 3/13.

The Lord shall judge the ends of the earth. 1 Kings 2/10.

Know ye that there is a judgment. Job 19/29.

He shall judge the world in equity, he shall judge the people in justice. Ps. 9/9 & 95/13.

The day of the Lord cometh, because it is nigh at hand. A day of darkness, and of gloominess, a day of clouds and whirlwinds. . . . the earth hath trembled, the heavens are moved: . . . the day of the Lord is great and very terrible: and who can stand it? Joel 2/1, 2, 10, 11; Soph. 1/14, 15. (See Ezech. 32/7, 8.)

I will search Jerusalem with lamps. Soph. 1/12.

Take heed to yourselves, lest, perhaps, your hearts be overcharged with surfeiting, and drunkenness, and the cares of this life: and that day come upon you suddenly. Luke 21/34.

He hath appointed a day wherein he will judge the world in equity, by the man whom he hath appointed. Acts 17/31.

But of the times and moments, brethren, you need not that we should write to you. For yourselves know perfectly, that the day of the Lord shall so come, as a thief in the night. 1 Thess. 5/1, 2.

It is appointed unto men once to die, and after this the judgment. Heb. 9/27.

Behold, I come as a thief. Apoc. 16/15.

Behold I come quickly, and my reward is with me, to render to every man according to his works. Apoc. 22/12.

Who shall accuse against the elect of God? God that justifieth. Rom. 8/33.

What will they do, when the Lord shall begin to examine? Eccus. 2/17.

What shall I do when God shall rise to judge? and when he shall examine, what shall I answer him? Job 31/14.

Q. 409.

What is the judgment called which we have to undergo immediately after death?

The judgment we have to undergo immediately after death is called the Particular Judgment.

Every one of us shall render account to God for himself. Rom. 14/12.

All things that are done, God will bring into judgment for every error, whether it be good or evil. Eccles. 12/14.

For it is easy before God, in the day of death, to reward every one according to his ways. Eccus. 11/28.

O that they would be wise, and would understand, and would provide for their last end. Deut. 32/29.

The Lord will judge his people. Deut. 32/36.

Behold, they that serve him are not steadfast, and in his angels he found wickedness. Job 4/18.

I will come to you in judgment, and will be a speedy witness against sorcerers, and adulterers, and false swearers, and them that oppress the hireling in his wages, the widows, and the fatherless. Mal. 3/5.

Q. 410.

What is the judgment called which all men have to undergo on the last day?

The judgment which all men have to undergo on the last day is called the General Judgment.

God shall come manifestly . . . And the heavens shall declare his justice: for God is judge. Ps. 49/3, 6.

For there is nothing hid, which shall not be made manifest. Mark 4/22; Luke 12/2 & 8/17; Matt. 10/26.

Judge not before the time; until the Lord come, who both will bring to light the hidden things of darkness, and will make manifest the counsels of the hearts. 1 Cor. 4/5.

I saw the dead, great and small, standing in the presence of the throne, and the books were opened: . . . and the dead were judged by those things which were written in the books, according to their works. Apoc. 20/12.

He shall judge the world in equity, he shall judge the people in justice. Ps. 9/9.

God shall judge both the just and the wicked. Eccles. 3/17.

Thou wast a merciful God to them, and taking vengeance on all their inventions. Ps. 98/8.

Q. 411.

Why does Christ judge men immediately after death?

Christ judges men immediately after death to reward or punish them according to their deeds.

For thou wilt render to every man according to his works. Ps. 61/12.

And every man shall receive his own reward according to his own labour. 1 Cor. 3/8. (See Job 34/11.)

Every idle word that men shall speak, they shall render an account for it in the day of judgment. Matt. 12/36.

Repaying forthwith them that hate him, . . . immediately rendering to them what they deserve. Deut. 7/10.

The Lord shall be known when he executeth judgments: the sinner hath been caught in the works of his own hands. Ps. 9/17.

For it is easy before God, in the day of death, to reward every one according to his ways. Eccus. 11/28.

The Lord is a jealous God, and a revenger. Nahum 1/2.

Not every one that saith to me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven. Matt. 7/21. (See Matt. 25/11 & Luke 6/46.)

If the just man shall scarcely be saved, where shall the ungodly and the sinner appear? 1 Pet. 4/18; Prov. 11/31.

Man knoweth not whether he be worthy of love or hatred. Eccles. 9/1.

Thou art just O Lord: and thy judgment is right. Ps. 118/137.

Q. 412.

What are the rewards or punishments appointed for men's souls after the Particular Judgment?

The rewards or punishments appointed for men's souls after the Particular Judgment are Heaven, Purgatory, and Hell.

The fruit of the just man is a tree of life. Prov. 11/30

Have the gates of death been opened to thee, and hast thou seen the darksome doors? Job 38/17.

For he will render to a man his work, and according to the ways of every one he will reward them. For, in very deed, God will not condemn without cause, neither will the Almighty pervert judgment. Job 34/11, 12.

Man shall go into the house of his eternity. Ecces. 12/5.

The dust return into its earth, from whence it was, and the spirit return to God, who gave it. Ecces. 12/7.

Shall not the fewness of my days be ended shortly? suffer me, therefore, that I may lament my sorrow a little: before I go, and return no more, to a land that is dark, and covered with the mist of death. Job 10/20, 21.

But man, when he shall be dead, and stripped, and consumed, I pray you, where is he? Job 14/10.

All that I have shall go down into the deepest pit: thinkest thou that there, at least, I shall have rest? Job 17/16.

If the tree fall to the south, or to the north, in what place soever it shall fall, there shall it be. Ecces. 11/3.

And I saw the dead, great and small, standing in the presence of the throne, and the books were opened: . . . and the dead were judged by those things which were written in the books, according to their works. Apoc. 20/12.

He shall judge the world with justice, and the people with his truth. Ps. 95/13.

Thou art just, O Lord: and thy judgment is right. Ps. 118/137.

There is laid up for me a crown of justice, which the Lord, the just judge, will render to me in that day. 2 Tim. 4/8.

Come, ye blessed of my Father, possess you the kingdom prepared for you. Matt. 25/34.

The eye hath not seen, nor ear heard, neither hath it entered into the heart of man, what things God hath prepared for them that love him. 1 Cor. 2/9; Isai. 64/4.

I will place thee over many things: enter thou into the joy of thy Lord. Matt. 25/21.

One thing I have asked of the Lord, this will I seek after; that I may dwell in the house of the Lord all the days of my life. Ps. 26/4.

When Christ shall appear, who is your life; then you also shall appear with him in glory. Col. 3/4.

The just shall shine. Wis. 3/7; Dan. 12/3.

Then shall the just shine as the sun in the kingdom of their Father. Matt. 13/43.

He . . . will gather the wheat into his barn, but the chaff he will burn with unquenchable fire. Luke 3/17; Matt. 3/12.

The beggar died, and was carried by the angels into Abraham's bosom. Luke 16/22.

In my Father's house there are many mansions. John 14/2.

Father, I will that where I am, they also whom thou hast given me may be with me: that they may see my glory which thou hast given me. John 17/24.

The just shall see, and shall rejoice. Ps. 106/42; Job 22/19.

And when the prince of pastors shall appear you shall receive a never-fading crown of glory. 1 Pet. 5/4.

The souls of the just are in the hand of God, and the torment of death shall not touch them . . . they are in peace. Wis. 3/1, 3.

Then shall the just stand with great constancy against those that have afflicted them. Wis. 5/1.

Every excellent work shall be justified: and the worker thereof shall be honoured therein. Eccus. 14/21.

Many are called, but few chosen. Matt. 20/16.

And whosoever was not found written in the book of life, was cast into the pool of fire. Apoc. 20/15.

It is a fearful thing to fall into the hands of the living God. Heb. 10/31.

That servant who knew the will of his lord, and prepared not himself, and did not according to his will, shall be beaten with many stripes. But he that knew not, and did things worthy of stripes, shall be beaten with few stripes. Luke 12/47, 48.

Know you not that the unjust shall not possess the kingdom of God? 1 Cor. 6/9.

He that walketh in justices, and speaketh truth, . . . He shall dwell on high. Isai. 33/15, 16. (See Ps. 14/1, 2.)

The poor man and the creditor have met one another: the Lord is the enlightener of them both. Prov. 29/13.

Thou hatest all the workers of iniquity: thou wilt destroy all that speak a lie. Ps. 5/7.

And the false prophet shall be tormented day and night for ever and ever. Apoc. 20/10.

Which of you can dwell with devouring fire? Isai. 33/14.

The vengeance on the flesh of the ungodly is fire and worms. Eccus. 7/19.

He shall rain snares upon sinners; fire, and brimstone, and storms of winds, shall be the portion of their cup. Ps. 10/7.

The wicked shall be turned into hell. Ps. 9/18a.

But thou sparest all: because they are thine, O Lord, who lovest souls. Wis. 11/27.

But the wicked shall be punished according to their own devices: who have neglected the just, and have revolted from the Lord. Wis. 3/10.

Depart from me, you cursed, into everlasting fire. Matt. 25/41. (See Matt. 7/23; Luke 13/27.)

By what things a man sinneth, by the same also he is tormented. Wis. 11/17.

Every tree, therefore, that bringeth not forth good fruit, shall be cut down, and cast into the fire. Luke 3/9; Matt. 3/10.

The rich man also died: and he was buried in hell. Luke 16/22.

Then shall they begin to say to the mountains: Fall upon us, and to the hills: Cover us. Luke 23/30; Apoc. 6/16. (See Isai. 2/19; Osee 10/8.)

And these shall go into everlasting punishment: but the just into life everlasting. Matt. 25/46; John 5/29.

For the Son of Man shall come in the glory of his Father with his angels: and then will he render to every man according to his works. Matt. 16/27; Ps. 61/13; Rom. 2/6.

In the time of the harvest, I will say to the reapers: Gather up first the cockle, and bind it into bundles to burn, but the wheat gather ye into my barn. Matt. 13/30.

What things a man shall sow, those also shall he reap. Gal. 6/8.

We know, that, when he shall appear, we shall be like to him: because we shall see him as he is. 1 John 3/2.

To him that shall overcome, I will give to sit with me in my throne. Apoc. 3/21.

They shall no more hunger nor thirst. Apoc. 7/16.

If any man's work abide, which he hath built thereupon: he shall receive a reward. 1 Cor. 3/14.

Every work that is corruptible, shall fail in the end: and the worker thereof shall go with it. Eccus. 14/20.

For we know, if our earthly house of this habitation be dissolved, that we have a building of God, a house not made with hands, eternal in heaven. 2 Cor. 5/1.

The Lord will reward every one according to his justice, and his faithfulness. 1 Kings 26/23.

And the nations were angry, and thy wrath is come, and the time of the dead, that they should be judged, and that thou shouldst render reward to thy servants the prophets, and the saints, and to them that fear thy name, little and great, and shouldst destroy them who have corrupted the earth. Apoc. 11/18.

Many of those that sleep in the dust of the earth shall awake: some unto life everlasting, and others unto reproach. Dan. 12/2.

For, behold, the day shall come, kindled as a furnace: and all the proud, and all that do wickedly, shall be stubble: and the day that cometh shall set them on fire. Mal. 4/1.

You shall return, and shall see the difference between the just and the wicked: and between him that serveth God, and him that serveth him not. Mal. 3/18.

He also shall drink of the wine of the wrath of God, . . . and shall be tormented with fire and brimstone in the sight of the holy angels, . . . the smoke of their torments shall ascend up for ever and ever. Apoc. 14/10, 11.

Yea, O Lord God Almighty, true and just are thy judgments. Apoc. 16/7.

The congregation of sinners is like tow heaped together, and the end of them is a flame of fire. Eccus. 21/10. (See Eccus. 16/7.)

The Lord shall be known when he executeth judgments: the sinner hath been caught in the works of his own hands. Ps. 9/17a.

The way of sinners is made plain with stones, and in their end is hell, and darkness, and pains. Eccus. 21/11.

I shall bring thee down with those that descend into the pit to the everlasting people, and shall set thee in the lowest parts of the earth. Ezech. 26/20.

To them that are contentious, and who obey not the truth, but give credit to iniquity, wrath and indignation. Rom. 2/8.

According to thy hardness, and impenitent heart, thou treasurest up to thyself wrath against the day of wrath, and revelation of the just judgment of God, who will render to every man according to his works. Rom. 2/5, 6.

The wages of sin is death. Rom. 6/23.

They shall come with fear at the thought of their sins, and their iniquities shall stand against them to convict them. Wis. 4/20.

Revenge is mine, and I will repay them in due time. Deut. 32/35; Rom. 12/19; Heb. 10/30.

I will render vengeance to my enemies, and repay them that hate me. Deut. 32/41.

He loved cursing, and it shall come unto him: and he would not have blessing, and it shall be far from him. Ps. 108/18.

They shall go into the lower parts of the earth. Ps. 62/10.

Who shall suffer eternal punishment in destruction, from the face of the Lord, and from the glory of his power. 2 Thess. 1/9.

Thou wilt not leave my soul in hell, nor wilt thou give thy holy one to see corruption. Ps. 15/10; Acts 2/31.

To them, indeed, who, according to patience in good work, seek glory, and honour, and incorruption, eternal life. Rom. 2/7.

But the fearful, and unbelieving, and the abominable, . . . they shall have their portion in the pool burning with fire and brimstone. Apoc. 21/8.

That by these (promises) you may be made partakers of the divine nature. 2 Pet. 1/4.

O the depth of the riches of the wisdom and of the knowledge of God! How incomprehensible are his judgments, and how unsearchable his ways! Rom. 11/33.

We see now through a glass in a dark manner: but then face to face. 1 Cor. 13/12.

They shall be inebriated with the plenty of thy house. Ps. 35/9.

As the hart panteth after the fountains of waters; so my soul panteth after thee, O God. Ps. 41/2.

Who shall ascend into the mountain of the Lord: or who shall stand in his holy place? The innocent in hands, and clean of heart. Ps. 23/3, 4.

And God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes: and death shall be no more, nor mourning, nor crying, nor sorrow. Apoc. 21/4.

To him that overcometh, I will give to eat of the tree of life, which is in the paradise of my God. Apoc. 2/7.

To him that overcometh, I will give the hidden manna, and will give him a white counter; and in the counter, a new name written, which no man knoweth, but he that receiveth it. Apoc. 2/17.

He that shall overcome, I will make him a pillar in the temple of my God: and he shall go out no more: and I will write upon him the name of my God, and the name of the city of my God. Apoc. 3/12.

Q. 413.

What is Hell?

Hell is a state to which the wicked are condemned, and in which they are deprived of the sight of God for all eternity, and are in dreadful torments.

The bottomless pit. Apoc. 9/2.

The furnace of fire. Matt. 13/42.

The pool burning with fire and brimstone. Apoc. 21/8.

A land of misery and darkness, where the shadow of death, and no order, but everlasting horror dwelleth. Job 10/22.

The congregation of sinners is like tow heaped together, and the end of them is a flame of fire . . . and in their end is hell, and darkness, and pains. Eccus. 21/10, 11.

A fire is kindled in my wrath, and shall burn even to the lowest hell. Deut. 32/22.

For Tophet is prepared from yesterday, prepared by the king, deep, and wide. The nourishment thereof is fire and much wood: the breath of the Lord as a torrent of brimstone kindling it. Isai. 30/33.

Which of you can dwell with devouring fire? which of you shall dwell with everlasting burnings? Isai. 33/14.

Night and day it shall not be quenched; the smoke thereof shall go up for ever. Isai. 34/10.

There is no peace to the wicked. Isai. 48/22 & 57/21.

Their worm shall not die, and their fire shall not be quenched. Isai. 66/24; Mark 9/45.

For the worm shall eat them up as a garment: and the moth shall consume them as wool. Isai. 51/8.

And they shall fall after this without honour, and be a reproach among the dead for ever: for he shall burst them puffed up and speechless, and shall shake them from the foundations, and they shall be utterly laid waste: they shall be in sorrow, and their memory shall perish. Wis. 4/19.

So we . . . have been able to shew no mark of virtue: but are consumed in our wickedness. Such things as these the sinners said in hell. Wis. 5/13, 14.

He shall burn, and every sorrow shall fall upon him. Job 20/22.

All darkness is hid in his secret places: a fire that is not kindled shall devour him. Job 20/26.

But yet thou shalt be brought down to hell, into the depth of the pit. Isai. 14/15.

That look for death, and it cometh not. Job 3/21.

In those days men shall seek death, and shall not find it: and they shall desire, and death shall fly from them. Apoc. 9/6.

There shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth. Matt. 24/51 & 13/42 & 25/30.

He that shall go down to hell shall not come up. Job 7/9.

They have said, . . . no man hath been known to have returned from hell. Wis. 2/1.

It is an evil and a bitter thing for thee, to have left the Lord thy God. Jer. 2/19.

Neither shall their silver and their gold be able to deliver them in the day of the wrath of the Lord. Soph. 1/18; Ezech. 7/19.

Who shall suffer eternal punishment in destruction, from the face of the Lord, and from the glory of his power. 2 Thess. 1/9.

The dead that are in hell, whose spirit is taken away from their bowels, shall not give glory and justice to the Lord. Baruch 2/17.

The dead shall not praise thee, O Lord: nor any of them that go down to hell. Ps. 113/17b.

Neither word, nor reason, nor wisdom, nor knowledge, shall be in hell. Eccles. 9/10.

Fear him that can destroy both soul and body in hell. Matt. 10/28.

Q. 414.

What is Purgatory?

Purgatory is the state in which those suffer for a time who die guilty of venial sins, or without having satisfied for the punishment due to their sins.

Out of the depths I have cried to thee, O Lord: . . . If thou, O Lord, wilt mark iniquities; Lord, who shall stand it? Ps. 129/1, 3.

Bring my soul out of prison, . . . the just wait for me, until thou reward me. Ps. 141/8.

For the Lord hath heard the poor: and hath not despised his prisoners. Ps. 68/34.

Remember, I pray thee, who ever perished being innocent? or when were the just destroyed? Job 4/7.

Let the sighing of the prisoners come in before thee. Ps. 78/11.

For the just to be in like case as the wicked; this is not beseeming thee: thou who judgest all the earth, wilt not make this judgment. Gen. 18/25.

Thou shalt not go out from thence till thou repay the last farthing. Matt. 5/26; Luke 12/59.

He that shall speak against the Holy Ghost, it shall not be forgiven him, neither in this world nor in the world to come. Matt. 12/32.

Every man's work shall be manifest; . . . and the fire shall try every man's work, of what sort it is . . . If any man's work burn, he shall suffer loss: but he himself shall be saved, yet so as by fire. 1 Cor. 3/13, 15.

You are not all clean. John 13/11.

He that knoweth his brother to sin a sin which is not to death, let him ask, and life shall be given to him who sinneth not to death. There is a sin unto death. 1 John 5/16.

It is therefore a holy and wholesome thought to pray for

the dead, that they may be loosed from sins. 2 Mach. 12/46.

There shall not enter into it (the new Jerusalem) any thing defiled. Apoc. 21/27.

Thy eyes are too pure to behold evil, and thou canst not look on iniquity. Habac. 1/13.

Every idle word that men shall speak, they shall render an account for it in the day of judgment. Matt. 12/36.

Work your work before the time, and he will give you your reward in his time. Eccus. 51/38.

Thou also, by the blood of the testament, hast sent forth thy prisoners out of the pit, wherein is no water. Return to the stronghold, ye prisoners of hope, I will render thee double as I declare to-day. Zach. 9/11, 12.

That thou mightest open the eyes of the blind, and bring forth the prisoner out of prison and them that sit in darkness out of the prison house. Isai. 42/7.

But he that knew not, and did things worthy of stripes, shall be beaten with few stripes. Luke 12/48.

Thou wilt render to every man according to his works. Ps. 61/13; Matt. 16/27; Rom. 2/6.

Many shall be chosen, and made white, and shall be tried as fire. Dan. 12/10.

And I will bring the third part through the fire, and will refine them as silver is refined. Zach. 13/9.

Make unto you friends of the mammon of iniquity, that when you shall fail, they may receive you into everlasting dwellings. Luke 16/9.

Q. 415.

Can the faithful on earth help the souls in Purgatory?

The faithful on earth can help the souls in Purgatory by their prayers, fasts, almsdeeds; by indulgences, and by having Masses said for them.

(See 12, Art. 9; 339.)

It is . . . a holy and wholesome thought to pray for the dead, that they may be loosed from sins. 2 Mach. 12/46.

Have pity on me, have pity on me, at least you, my friends, because the hand of the Lord hath touched me. Job 19/21.

The dead shall not praise thee, O Lord: nor any of them that go down to hell. Ps. 113/17b.

A gift hath grace in the sight of all the living, and restrain not grace from the dead. Eccus. 7/37.

What shall they do that are baptized for the dead, if the dead rise not again at all? why are they then baptized for them? 1 Cor. 15/29.

Let the sighing of the prisoners come in before thee. Ps. 78/11.

Q. 416.

If every one is judged immediately after death, what need is there of a general judgment?

There is need of a general judgment, though every one is judged immediately after death, that the providence of God, which, on earth, often permits the good to suffer and the wicked to prosper, may in the end appear just before all men.

If I would justify myself, my own mouth shall condemn me: If I would shew myself innocent, he shall prove me wicked. Job 9/20.

I feared all my works, knowing that thou didst not spare the offender. Job 9/28.

Why then do the wicked live, are they advanced, and strengthened with riches? Job 21/7.

Why lookest thou upon them that do unjust things, and holdest thy peace when the wicked devoureth the man more just than himself? Habac. 1/13.

Because the wicked man is reserved to the day of destruction, and he shall be brought to the day of wrath. Job 21/30.

But as for me, I will appear before thy sight in justice; I shall be satisfied when thy glory shall appear. Ps. 16/15.

My feet were almost moved; my steps had well nigh slipt. Because I had a zeal on account of the wicked, seeing the prosperity of sinners. Ps. 72/2, 3.

There are just men to whom evils happen, as though they had done the works of the wicked: and there are wicked men, who are as secure, as though they had the deeds of the just. Ecces. 8/14.

Behold, these are sinners; and yet abounding in the world they have obtained riches. And I said: Then have

I in vain justified my heart, and washed my hands among the innocent. Ps. 72/12, 13.

Thou, indeed, O Lord, art just, if I plead with thee, but yet I will speak what is just to thee: Why doth the way of the wicked prosper: why is it well with all them that transgress, and do wickedly? Jer. 12/1.

The sinner shall not escape in his rapines, and the patience of him that sheweth mercy shall not be put off. Eccus. 16/14.

Nothing is covered that shall not be revealed: nor hid that shall not be known. Matt. 10/26; Luke 8/17 & 12/2; Mark 4/22.

Therefore judge not before the time; until the Lord come, who both will bring to light the hidden things of darkness, and will make manifest the counsels of the hearts. 1 Cor. 4/5.

I also will laugh in your destruction, and will mock when that shall come to you which you feared. Prov. 1/26.

I saw the wicked buried: who also, when they were yet living, were in the holy place, and were praised in the city as men of just works. Eccles. 8/10.

I saw under the sun, in the place of judgment, wickedness, and in the place of justice, iniquity. And I said in my heart: God shall judge both the just and the wicked, and then shall be the time of every thing. Eccles. 3/16, 17.

These things also I saw . . . : A just man perisheth in his justice, and a wicked man liveth a long time in his wickedness. Eccles. 7/16.

For, because sentence is not speedily pronounced against the evil, the children of men commit evils without any fear. Eccles. 8/11.

This is a very great evil among all things that are under the sun, that the same things happen to all men: whereby also the hearts of the children of men are filled with evil, and with contempt while they live, and afterwards they shall be brought down to hell. Eccles. 9/3.

They shall see the end of the wise man, and shall not understand what God hath designed for him, and why the Lord hath set him in safety. Wis. 4/17.

We fools esteemed their life madness, and their end without honour. Behold, how they are numbered among

the children of God, and their lot is among the saints. Wis. 5/4, 5.

Therefore shall they receive a kingdom of glory, and a crown of beauty at the hand of the Lord. Wis. 5/17.

For many of his works are hidden: but the works of his justice who shall declare? or who shall endure? for the testament is far from some, and the examination of all is in the end. Eccus. 16/22.

Q. 417.

Will our bodies share in the reward or punishment of our souls?

Our bodies will share in the reward or punishment of our souls, because through the resurrection they will again be united to them.

(See 12, Art. 11.)

For I know that my Redeemer liveth, and in the last day I shall rise out of the earth. And I shall be clothed again with my skin, and in my flesh I shall see my God. Job 19/25, 26.

Thy dead men shall live, my slain shall rise again: awake, and give praise, ye that dwell in the dust. Isai. 26/19.

By what things a man sinneth, by the same also he is tormented. Wis. 11/17.

He that scattered Israel will gather him. Jer. 31/10.

Though they go down even to hell, thence shall my hand bring them out: and though they climb up to heaven, thence will I bring them down. Amos 9/2.

For when they shall rise again from the dead, they shall neither marry, nor be married, but are as the angels in heaven. Mark 12/25; Matt. 22/30; Luke 20/35, 36.

Recompense shall be made thee at the resurrection of the just. Luke 14/14.

All that are in the graves shall hear the voice of the Son of God. And they that have done good things, shall come forth unto the resurrection of life. John 5/28, 29.

So also is the resurrection of the dead. It is sown in corruption, it shall rise in incorruption . . . It is sown a natural body, it shall rise a spiritual body . . . We shall all indeed rise again . . . O death, where is thy victory? 1 Cor. 15/42, 44, 51, 55.

The dead who are in Christ, shall rise first. 1 Thess. 4/15.

(Jesus Christ,) who will reform the body of our lowness, made like to the body of his glory. Philip. 3/21.

And the sea gave up the dead that were in it, and death and hell gave up their dead that were in them. Apoc. 20/13.

For we must all be manifested before the judgment-seat of Christ, that every one may receive the proper things of the body, according as he hath done, whether it be good or evil. 2 Cor. 5/10; Rom. 14/10.

Q. 418.

In what state will the bodies of the just rise?

The bodies of the just will rise glorious and immortal.

In the last day I shall rise out of the earth. And I shall be clothed again with my skin, and in my flesh I shall see my God. Job 19/25, 26.

It is sown a natural body, it shall rise a spiritual body. 1 Cor. 15/44.

It is sown in dishonour, it shall rise in glory. 1 Cor. 15/43.

They that have done good things, shall come forth unto the resurrection of life. John 5/29.

Neither can they die any more: for they are equal to the angels. Luke 20/36.

When Christ shall appear, who is your life; then you also shall appear with him in glory. Col. 3/4.

(Jesus Christ,) who will reform the body of our lowness, made like to the body of his glory. Philip. 3/21.

Q. 419.

Will the bodies of the damned also rise?

The bodies of the damned will also rise, but they will be condemned to eternal punishment.

They that have done good things, shall come forth unto the resurrection of life; but they that have done evil, unto the resurrection of judgment. John 5/29.

Let them go down alive into hell. Ps. 54/16.

The dead shall not praise thee, O Lord: nor any of them that go down to hell. Ps. 113/17b.

Having hope in God, which these also themselves look for, that there shall be a resurrection of the just and unjust. Acts 24/15.

That they might know that by what things a man sinneth, by the same also he is tormented. Wis. 11/17.

Q. 420.

What is Heaven?

Heaven is the state of everlasting life in which we see God face to face, are made like unto Him in glory, and enjoy eternal happiness.

(See 12, Art. 12; 412.)

The eye hath not seen, O God, besides thee, what things thou hast prepared for them that wait for thee. Isai. 64/4.

The eye hath not seen, nor ear heard, neither hath it entered into the heart of man, what things God hath prepared for them that love him. 1 Cor. 2/9.

How lovely are thy tabernacles, O Lord of hosts! Ps. 83/2.

Better is one day in thy courts above thousands. Ps. 83/11.

The city hath no need of the sun, nor of the moon, to shine in it. For the glory of God hath enlightened it, and the Lamb is the lamp thereof. Apoc. 21/23 & 22/5.

There shall not enter into it any thing defiled. Apoc. 21/27.

Neither shall the wicked dwell near thee. Ps. 5/6.

There the wicked cease from tumult, and there the wearied in strength are at rest. Job 3/17.

I am thy protector, and thy reward exceeding great. Gen. 15/1.

Your sorrow shall be turned into joy. John 16/20.

And your joy no man shall take from you. John 16/22.

And God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes: and death shall be no more, nor mourning, nor crying, nor sorrow. Apoc. 21/4 & 7/17; Isai. 25/8.

He that walketh in justices, and speaketh truth, . . . He shall dwell on high. Isai. 33/15, 16. (See Ps. 14/1, 2.)

When he hath been proved, he shall receive the crown of life, which God hath promised to them that love him. James 1/12.

They shall no more hunger nor thirst. Apoc. 7/16.

But the just shall live for evermore: and their reward is with the Lord, and the care of them with the Most High. Wis. 5/16.

He hath established the good things of every one. And who shall be filled with beholding his glory? Eccus. 42/26.

One thing I have asked of the Lord, this will I seek after: that I may dwell in the house of the Lord all the days of my life. Ps. 26/4.

Who will give me wings like a dove, and I will fly and be at rest? Ps. 54/7.

In thy tabernacle I shall dwell for ever: I shall be protected under the covert of thy wings. Ps. 60/5.

The fruit of good labours is glorious, and the root of wisdom never faileth. Wis. 3/15.

We see now through a glass in a dark manner: but then face to face. Now I know in part: but then I shall know even as I am known. 1 Cor. 13/12.

There is laid up for me a crown of justice, which the Lord, the just judge, will render to me in that day: and not only to me, but to them also that love his coming. 2 Tim. 4/8.

An inheritance incorruptible, and undefiled, and that cannot fade, reserved in heaven for you. 1 Pet. 1/4.

In my Father's house there are many mansions. John 14/2.

They shall be inebriated with the plenty of thy house; and thou shalt make them drink of the torrent of thy pleasure. Ps. 35/9.

For with thee is the fountain of life; and in thy light we shall see light. Ps. 35/10.

We all beholding the glory of the Lord with open face, are transformed into the same image, from glory to glory, as by the Spirit of the Lord. 2 Cor. 3/18.

I saw a great multitude, which no man could number, of all nations, and tribes, and peoples, and tongues: standing before the throne, and in the sight of the Lamb, clothed with white robes, and palms in their hands. Apoc. 7/9.

Q. 421.

What words should we bear always in mind?

We should bear always in mind these words of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ: "What doth it profit a man if he gain the whole world and suffer the loss of his own soul, or what exchange shall a man give for his soul? For the Son of man shall come in the glory of His Father with His angels: and then will He render to every man according to his works." (See Matt. 16/26, 27; Job 34/11; Ps. 61/12; Prov. 24/12; Rom. 2/6; 1 Cor. 3/8; Gal. 6/5.)

Blessed is the man who hath not walked in the counsel of the ungodly, nor stood in the way of sinners, nor sat in the chair of pestilence: but his will is in the law of the Lord, and on his law he shall meditate day and night. And he shall be like a tree which is planted near the running waters, which shall bring forth its fruit in due season. And his leaf shall not fall off: and all whatsoever he shall do shall prosper. Ps. 1/1-3.

Blessed be the man that trusteth in the Lord, and the Lord shall be his confidence. And he shall be as a tree that is planted by the waters, that spreadeth out its roots towards moisture: and it shall not fear when the heat cometh. And the leaf thereof shall be green, and in the time of drought it shall not be solicitous, neither shall it cease at any time to bring forth fruit. Jer. 17/7, 8.

I beseech you, therefore, brethren, by the mercy of God, that you present your bodies a living sacrifice, holy, pleasing unto God, your reasonable service. And be not conformed to this world, but be reformed in the newness of your mind, that you may prove what is the good, and the acceptable, and the perfect will of God. Rom. 12/1, 2.

For, behold, short years pass away, and I am walking in a path by which I shall not return. Job 16/23.

Keep thyself, therefore, and thy soul carefully. Forget not the words that thy eyes have seen, and let them not go out of thy heart all the days of thy life. Thou shalt teach them to thy sons and to thy grandsons. Deut. 4/9.

He that giveth testimony of these things saith, Surely I come quickly: Amen. Come, Lord Jesus. The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with you all. Amen. Apoc. 22/20, 21.

Date Due

SEP 17

NOV 13 '58

1126
238.1
C58
Cox, Thomas E.
AUTHOR
Biblical Treasury of the
TITLE